

अवाप्त स०
 ACC. No. 14316
 वर्ग स.
 Class No.
 लेखक
 Author... Sieff... Mark
 शीर्षक
 Title... Colloquial Russian.

निर्गम दिनांक | उधारकर्ता की स. | हस्ताक्षर
 Date of Issue | Borrower's No. |

491.7

Sie

LIBRARY

LAL BAHADUR SHASTRI

National Academy of Administration
MUSSOORIE

Accession No. 110193

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
5. Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.

Keep to keep this book fresh, clean & moving

**COLLOQUIAL
RUSSIAN**

By the same Author

A MANUAL OF RUSSIAN COMMERCIAL
CORRESPONDENCE
RUSSIAN ACCIDENCE IN TABLES
GUIDE TO THE RUSSIAN ACCENT, etc.

Uniform with this volume

COLLOQUIAL FRENCH
COLLOQUIAL GERMAN
COLLOQUIAL ITALIAN
COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE
COLLOQUIAL ARABIC
COLLOQUIAL PERSIAN
COLLOQUIAL SPANISH
COLLOQUIAL CHINESE
COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH
COLLOQUIAL HINDUSTANI

London
Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner
& Co. Ltd.

COLLOQUIAL RUSSIAN

By

MARK SIEFF

L.C.C. Instructor in Russian
(Senior Panel)

LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO. LTD.

BROADWAY HOUSE: 68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

First published 1943

Printed in Great Britain by T. and A. CONSTABLE LTD.
at the University Press, Edinburgh

CONTENTS

| | PAGES |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| PREFACE | xiii |
| SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT | xvii |
| BIBLIOGRAPHY | xix |
| THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET | xx |

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

SECTION I—SOUNDS

PRONUNCIATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS :

1. *The Vowels*, § 1. 2. *The Consonants*, § 3 . 1-6

CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS :

The Vowels, § 4. *Effect of the Stress-Accent on the Pronunciation of Vowels*, § 5. *Length of Stressed Vowels*, § 6. *Diphthongs*, § 7. *Soft Vowels and Palatalized Consonants*, § 8. *Pronunciation of Palatalized Consonants*, § 9. *Open and Close Vowels*, § 10. *The Stress-Accent*, § 11. *Voiced and Voiceless Consonants*, § 12. *Peculiarities in the Pronunciation of Consonants*, § 13. *Commutation of Russian Sounds*, § 13a. *Stress*, § 14 6-21

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| READING EXERCISES | 21-26 |
|-----------------------------|-------|

SECTION II—PARTS OF SPEECH

1. NOUNS :

PAGES

| | |
|--|-------|
| <i>Genders, Numbers, and Cases of Nouns</i> , § 15. | |
| <i>Functions of Cases</i> , § 16. <i>How to distinguish Gender of Nouns</i> , § 17. | |
| <i>Declension of Masculine Nouns</i> , § 18. <i>Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Masculine Nouns</i> , § 19. | |
| <i>Irregular Terminations in the Declension of Masculine Nouns</i> , § 20. | |
| <i>The Accent as it affects the Parts of Speech</i> , § 21. | |
| <i>The Accent in the Declension of Masculine Nouns</i> , § 22. | |
| <i>Declension of Neuter Nouns</i> , § 23. <i>Fleeting o and e in Neuter Nouns</i> , § 24. | |
| <i>Irregularities in the Declension of Neuter Nouns</i> , §§ 25-26. | |
| <i>The Accent in the Declension of Neuter Nouns</i> , § 27. | |
| <i>Declension of Feminine Nouns</i> , § 28. <i>Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Feminine Nouns</i> , § 29. | |
| <i>Irregularities in the Declension of Feminine Nouns</i> , §§ 30-31c. | |
| <i>The Accent in the Declension of Feminine Nouns</i> , § 32. | |
| <i>Nouns</i> : (1) <i>used only in Singular</i> ; (2) <i>used only in Plural</i> ; (3) <i>of Common Gender</i> , § 33. | |
| <i>The Diminutives</i> , § 33a. <i>Derivation-Suffixes in Nouns</i> , § 33b | 27-60 |

2. ADJECTIVES :

| | |
|---|-------|
| <i>Declension of Attributive Adjectives</i> , §§ 35-39. | |
| <i>Formation of the Predicative (Short) Form of Adjectives</i> , § 40. | |
| <i>Degrees of Comparison</i> , § 41. | |
| <i>The Superlative Degree</i> , § 42. | |
| <i>Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives</i> , § 43. | |
| <i>The Accent in Adjectives</i> , § 44. | |
| <i>A List of Adjectives in frequent use</i> , § 45. | |
| <i>Adjectives which have no Predicative or Comparative form</i> , § 46. | |
| <i>Participles as Adjectives</i> , § 46a | 60-82 |

3. PRONOUNS :

PAGES

Classes of Pronouns, § 47 82-84

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS :

1. *Personal*, § 48. 2. *Possessive*, § 49. 3. *Demonstrative*, § 50. 4. *Relative and Interrogative*, § 51.
5. *Definite*, § 52. 6. *Indefinite*, § 53 84-90

4. NUMERALS :

Classes of Numerals, § 54. *List of Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals*, § 54a. *Declension of Numerals*, § 55. *Numerals as they qualify nouns*, § 55a. *Collective (group) Numerals*, § 55b. *Fractional Numerals*, § 55c 90-99

5. VERBS :

Active and Neuter Verbs, § 56. *Reflexive Verbs*, § 56a. *Reflexive Verbs in Impersonal Sentences*, § 56b. *Reciprocal Verbs*, § 56c. *Tenses of the Indicative Mood*, § 57. *Aspects*, §§ 58-59. *Formation of Perfective Verbs*, § 60. *Definite and Indefinite Verbs*, § 61. *Iterative Verbs*, § 62. *Prepositional Prefixes which modify the meaning of a Verb*, § 63 99-117

List of Verb-Groups, § 64 117-128

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. говорить — казать. | 2. давать — дать. |
| 3. брать — взять. | 4. ставать — стать. |
| 5. бывать — быть. | 6. девать — деть. |
| 7. имать — ять. | 8. ходить — идти. |
| 9. ездить — ехать. | 9a. бежать — бегать. |
| 10. носить — нести. | 11. возить — везти. |
| 12. водить — вести. | 13. падать — пасть. |
| 14. кладывать — класть ; -лагать — ложить. | |

| | |
|--|---------|
| <i>Formation of Perfective Verbs from Imperfectives,</i> §§ 65-66. <i>List of Reflexive and Reciprocal Verbs,</i> § 67. <i>List of Neuter Verbs ending in</i> ся , § 68. <i>Reflexive Verbs used in a passive sense,</i> § 69. <i>Con-</i> <i>jugation of Verbs,</i> § 70. <i>Types of Conjugation,</i> § 71. <i>The Accent in the Conjugation of Verbs,</i> § 72 : 1. <i>The Accent in the Present Tense</i> ; 2. <i>The Accent</i> <i>in the Past Tense</i> | 128-139 |
| A. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (Categories I-V), § 73-79 | 140-149 |
| B. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION (Categories VI-VII), §§ 80-81 | 149-150 |
| <i>Formation of the Imperative Mood,</i> § 82. <i>Forma-</i> <i>tion of the Past Tense,</i> § 83. <i>The Accent in the Past</i> <i>Tense,</i> §§ 84-85. <i>Participles,</i> § 86 : I. <i>Forma-</i> <i>tion of Present and Past Active Participles,</i> § 86a. II. <i>Formation of Present and Past Passive Par-</i> <i>ticiples,</i> § 86b. <i>A List of Past Passive Participles,</i> § 86c. <i>The Accent in the Past Passive Participle,</i> § 87. <i>Gerunds,</i> § 88 | 150-164 |
| 6. ADVERBS | 164-171 |
| 7. PREPOSITIONS : <i>Meaning,</i> § 93. <i>Function,</i> §§ 94-95. <i>Prepositions</i> <i>and the cases which they govern,</i> §§ 96-96e. <i>The</i> <i>Accent of Prepositions,</i> § 96f | 171-179 |
| 8. CONJUNCTIONS | 180-182 |
| 9. INTERJECTIONS | 182 |

CONTENTS

SECTION III—SYNTAX

| ESSENTIALS OF RUSSIAN SYNTAX : | PAGES |
|---|---------|
| <i>Introduction</i> , § 99. <i>The Sentence</i> , § 100. <i>Relation between Words in the Sentence</i> , § 101. <i>The Subject</i> , § 102. <i>The Predicate</i> , §§ 103-104. <i>Irregular use of Tenses in Sentences</i> , § 105. <i>Peculiarities in the use of Moods</i> , § 106. <i>The Object</i> , §§ 107-108. <i>Direct object in the Genitive in Negative Sentences</i> , § 108a. <i>Indirect object in the Nominative plural</i> , § 108b. <i>Qualifying Words</i> , § 109. <i>The Apposition</i> , § 110 | 182-192 |
| ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS : | |
| <i>Of place</i> , § 111 ; <i>of time</i> , § 112 ; <i>of manner</i> , § 113 ; <i>of cause</i> , § 114 ; <i>of purpose</i> , § 115 | 193-194 |
| CO-ORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION : | |
| (1) <i>Co-ordination</i> , § 117. (2) <i>Subordination</i> , § 118. 1. <i>Peculiar cases of Co-ordination between Subject and Predicate</i> , § 119. 2. <i>Peculiar cases of Co-ordination between Qualifier and Qualified word</i> , § 120 | 194-199 |
| PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL SENTENCES : | |
| <i>Personal Sentences</i> , § 121. <i>Impersonal Sentences</i> , § 122 | 199-202 |
| NEGATIVE SENTENCES | 202-203 |
| USE OF THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT | 203 |
| USE OF THE IMPERATIVE | 203-204 |

COMPLEX SENTENCES :

PAGES

Principal Clause, Subordinate Clause, Inserted and Parenthetic Clauses, § 124. *Noun-clauses, Adjective-clauses, Adverb-clauses*, § 125. *Subject-clauses*, § 126. *Predicate-clauses*, § 127. *Qualifier-clauses*, § 128. *Adverb-clauses : of time*, § 129a ; *of place*, § 129b ; *of manner*, § 129c ; *of cause*, § 129d ; *of purpose*, § 129e. *Function of the Participle in the Complex Sentence*, § 130. *Function of the Gerund*, § 130a 204-213

THE PASSIVE VOICE. 214-215

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS :

(1) *Indirect narration*, (2) *Conditional sentences*,
(3) *Indirect sentences*, § 132 215-218

WORD ORDER 218-219

FUNCTIONS OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS :

1. БЫТЬ, § 134. 2. ИМѢТЬ, § 134a 219-222

TAUTOLOGICAL EXPRESSIONS AND PARTICLES USED
IN SENTENCES 222-228

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN : СВОЙ 228

PECULIARITIES IN USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS 229

FUNCTIONS OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS : СЕБѢ,
СЕБѢ 229-230

WORD SUBORDINATION :

The Meaning and Uses of Oblique Cases of Nouns, Pronouns, etc. :

Of Genitive, § 137 ; *of Dative*, § 138 ; *of Accusative*, § 139 ; *of Instrumental*, § 140 ;
of Locative, § 141 230-237

PUNCTUATION 237-238

PATRONYMICS 239-240

LESSONS

| | PAGES |
|---|---------|
| LESSON I | 241-244 |
| Easy words and expressions relating to the family, the home, food ; use of the verb <i>быть</i> as copula. | |
| LESSON II | 245-252 |
| A wider range of words and phrases about food and meals ; expressions of time ; some basic verbs and adverbs. Fuller treatment of the verb <i>быть</i> as copula and as an auxiliary verb. Construction of a simple negative sentence. | |
| LESSON III | 253-263 |
| Expressions of time ; Seasons. More basic verbs and adverbs. A few basic adjectives. Nationalities and countries. The home and the garden. Expressions with the verbs <i>быть</i> and <i>иметь</i> , showing how these verbs are interchanged in colloquial speech. | |
| LESSON IV | 263-273 |
| Expressions of time. Visiting. Days and months. Festivals. Entertainment. Travelling. Uses of the genitive case in the sentence. | |
| LESSON V | 273-276 |
| Easy impersonal sentences with adverbs which have a predi- cative meaning. Use of the auxiliary verbs <i>становиться</i> , <i>стать</i> . | |
| LESSON VI | 276-280 |
| Easy sentences which illustrate the use of the accusative. | |
| LESSON VII | 280-284 |
| Basic Verbs. Travelling. Sentences and idiomatic expres- sions which illustrate the use of the dative. Easy impersonal expressions in which the <i>logical</i> subject is in the dative (as an inverted object). | |

| | |
|--|---------|
| LESSON VIII | 285-288 |
| Simple idiomatic expressions with the use of the instrumental. Passive construction (passive voice). | |
| LESSON IX | 289-290 |
| Sentences illustrating the use of the locative. Expressions of time and place in the locative. | |
| LESSON X | 291-297 |
| Verbs and expressions dealing with the everyday round in the home. Furniture. Meals. Food and drink. Recreation and rest. Clothes (men's). | |
| LESSON XI | 297-301 |
| Words and expressions in everyday use. Home and school. Subjects of study. Wearing apparel (ladies'). The human body. Crockery, cutlery; utensils and implements in and round the house. | |
| LESSON XII | 302-307 |
| Expressions relating to outdoor life in the garden; in the field; in the forest; on the river and lake; vehicles; out- door winter sports; hunting and fishing. Fruit, vegetables, cereals. Domestic animals; poultry; beasts. The weather. | |
| APPENDIX I | 308-309 |
| APPENDIX II | 310 |
| APPENDIX III | 311-312 |
| APPENDIX IV | 313-315 |
| RUSSIAN INDEX | 316-318 |
| ENGLISH INDEX | 319-323 |

PREFACE

THIS manual has been written expressly for adult students who are unable to attend Russian classes, but who would like to acquire a knowledge of the language by self-tuition. As such students will experience greater difficulty in comprehending the elements of Russian than those who are instructed by a tutor, the author has endeavoured to present the subject-matter as lucidly as possible.

As the book is not intended for school use, the arrangement of its material differs from the usual pattern of a school manual, i.e. :

- (1) It does not contain translation-work.
- (2) The Grammatical Notes are set out in a compact and concise form, rather than dealt with piecemeal.

Experience has convinced the author that translation-work is not always conducive to the mastery of colloquial, everyday speech. Colloquial Russian does not always fit in with literal translations of English expressions. A 'translation bias' may prevent the student from assimilating idiomatic Russian in a natural way.

The compact arrangement of the Grammatical Notes will enable the student to acquire the indispensable minimum of grammar in an orderly way and will help him to gain quickly some insight into the 'mechanism' of Russian construction before taking up more advanced reading.

When he has learnt to wade through simple Russian, the student can attempt to master the **Essentials of Syntax**, which comprise a minimum of the most important elements of Syntax as they apply to the construction of a simple sentence, and the simpler forms of a **complex sentence**.

Russian **impersonal** and **negative** constructions, which present some difficulties to a foreigner, and which are not always easily explained by grammar, have been adequately treated in the **Syntax-Section**. Once the student has mastered these two characteristic modes of construction of a Russian sentence, he will have no difficulty in finding his way through more advanced Russian, or in comprehending spoken Russian.

In the **Lessons-Section** simple basic words and colloquial expressions are used which deal with the everyday round in the home and in the country.

The **Vocabulary**, though limited, includes the most important words in current use.

The **Verbs**, on the other hand, have been treated comprehensively. The conjugation-pattern of each verb is given throughout. The functions of **passive participles**, and the use of the **passive voice** in all its prevalent forms, have been adequately treated.

In both the **Grammar-Section** and the **Lessons-Section** are given selected examples which illustrate grammatical rules, and which exemplify the use of cases of declinable parts of speech. A complete statement of the **Governance of cases** is given in the **Syntax-Section**, which is reiterated in the **Lessons-Section**. The framework of a Russian sentence is made very clear and accessible to the student.

The general aim of this book is not so much to provide a full range of vocabulary and expressions, or a complete course of grammar, as to give comprehensive treatment to each essential peculiarity of the Russian language, and to consider the essential basic expressions that go to make up Russian everyday speech.

Both the **Grammar-** and **Lessons-Sections** have been amply provided with cross-references, and grammatical indexes in Russian and English are appended.

The book will thus help to lay a solid foundation for the student's knowledge of Russian, and will serve as a ' jumping-off ground ' for further study.

The **stress-accent** presents some difficulties to students of Russian. As some knowledge of its vagaries is indispensable, a few pointers are given here and there. Although the rules relating to the accent cannot be conveniently classified, or easily remembered by the student, they will, nevertheless, be found useful. The student is advised to take up at an early stage some accented (and annotated) reading matter to supplement his studies.

Phonetics.—The author has avoided illustrating Russian sounds by phonetic transcriptions. Not many students are acquainted with the accepted symbols. But, apart from this, the terminations and inflexions are learnt all the quicker in their natural Russian appearance. Garbed in phonetic symbols they will only be the more perplexing to the student. The **alphabet** is easily learnt, and the letters themselves are better suited to give the value of Russian sounds than are the best phonetic transcriptions.

In conclusion, the author would advise the student never to let himself be perplexed over the seeming difficulties of Russian. These are as easily overcome as in other languages. When he has mastered the initial difficulties, he will find that the construction of Russian is both lucid and exact. The verbal system, apart from the aspects and the personal terminations, which are easily learnt, is not so involved as is, for example, the verbal system of German. In Russian there is no subjunctive mood for all the tenses; there is no treble past tense, and no complicated future tenses. The simplicity of the Russian verb gives to the language elasticity and clarity. The Russian tongue has the sonorous grandeur of a classical language, and its vigour, grace, and flexibility combine to make it a great modern language.

MARK SIEFF.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT

(1) Master chapter on Sounds (§§ 1-14), and learn to read the words in §§ 14*a*-14*d*.

(2) After 2 to 3 weeks' study of the chapters dealing with nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals, and the paragraph on the conjugation of verbs (§ 70), start on **Lessons-Section** (pp. 241-307).

(3) All vocabularies must be thoroughly mastered. The Russian words to be read aloud, and written out *several times* to fix them in the mind.

(4) Grammatical forms (declensions and conjugations) must be assimilated by constant practice and 'drill,' and must keep pace with the vocabulary and the phrases of the **Lessons-Section**.

(5) The **Lessons** to be learnt *as Russian* without any mental reference to their English translation. The English columns are merely intended to help the student to understand the Russian columns *as Russian*. Having thoroughly mastered a page, the student can check up his knowledge by means of the English column.

(6) Note the fitness of prepositions as used in Russian expressions, without attempting to find their exact equivalent in English. (See Note on the vagaries of some prepositions at the end of the Russian Index, p. 318.)

(7) The student should master the material of the 12 **Lessons** before taking up Russian reading matter.

(8) Acquire the habit of thinking in Russian within the limits of what has been learnt, but not in terms of words translated from the English.

(9) The chapters on the Conjugation of Verbs (§§ 71-88) are to be taken up at the next stage of study when the student has gained some knowledge of the construction of simple Russian.

(10) Syntax can be taken up a little later. The beginner need only take up the paragraphs dealing with a simple sentence (§§ 99-115); those on co-ordination and subordination (§§ 116-120); on the Impersonal and Negative Sentences (§§ 121-123); on the verbs **БЫТЬ** and **ИМЕТЬ** (§§ 134-134a); on Expressions, etc. (§§ 135-136), and on the Governance of Cases (§§ 137-141). Complex Sentences, Clauses, the Passive Voice, etc., the student need not take up until he has learnt to read freely. The same applies to the paragraphs on the Stress-Accent, which are intended as a guide, but not as a subject of study. A closer acquaintance with the Stress-Accent can be made later.

(11) At a later stage the student can attempt to compile 'his own Russian Dictionary' of all the words contained in the book, particularly the verbs, giving their conjugation-patterns.

(12) As the Indexes (pp. 316-323) contain only those words which have some grammatical significance, the student is advised to compile 'his own Index' of the various subjects and expressions treated in the book. This will be of great benefit to his studies.

Of the Russian reading-books that have come under his notice, the author can recommend with confidence the following :

'Elementary Russian Reader,' by G. Z. PATRICK. (For beginners, published by Pitman.)

PUSHKIN'S 'The Captain's Daughter,' edited with Notes and Vocabulary, by ANNA H. SEMEONOFF. (For more advanced students, published by Dent.)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

THE following works have been chiefly consulted in the compilation of this manual :

В. А. Богородицкий, «Общий курс русской грамматики,»
4th edition. (Kazan, 1913.)

Ө. Буслаев, «Учебник русской грамматики,» 11th edition.
(Moscow, 1913.)

В. Нифонтов, «Синтаксис.» (Yuriev, 1915.)

E. BERNEKER, 'Russische Grammatik.' (Leipzig, 1897.)

S. C. BOYANUS, 'A Manual of Russian Pronunciation.'
(Sidgwick and Jackson, London, 1935.)

P. BOYER et N. SPÉRANSKI, 'Manuel pour l'étude de la
Langue Russe.' (Paris, 1905.)

HENRY SWEET, 'A New English Grammar.' (Clarendon
Press, London, 1900.)

The Notes on the Stress-Accent are from the author's
book, 'A Guide to the Russian Accent.' (David Nutt,
London, 1919.)










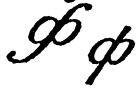


THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

| Ordinary Characters | Italic | Written. | Russian Name. | Normal Corresponding Sound in English. | Accidental Sound. |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|----------------------------|--|--------------------|
| А а | <i>Aa</i> | <i>А а</i> | ah | a in "father" | e, o |
| Б б | <i>Бб</i> | <i>Б б</i> | beh | b | p |
| В в | <i>Вв</i> | <i>В в</i> | veh | v | f |
| Г г | <i>Гг</i> | <i>Г г</i> | geh | g in "gate" | v, h, k, kh |
| Д д | <i>Дд</i> | <i>Д д</i> | deh | d | t |
| Е е | <i>Ее</i> | <i>Е е</i> | (y)eh | ye ore in "yet" | yo, o ¹ |
| Ж ж | <i>Жж</i> | <i>Ж ж</i> | zhch | sin "leisure" (French j) | sh |
| З з | <i>Зз</i> | <i>З з</i> | zeh | z | s |
| И и | <i>Ии</i> | <i>И и</i> | ee | ee | yee |
| І і | <i>Іі</i> | <i>І і</i> | ee (съ точкою, with a dot) | ee | yee |
| Й й | <i>Йй</i> | <i>Й й</i> | и краткое (short ee) | ee (short) ² | |
| К к | <i>Кк</i> | <i>К к</i> | kah | c in "cat" | |

¹ When e is printed ѣ, it is pronounced as yo or o.

² A very short i(ee).

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

| <i>Ordinary Characters.</i> | <i>Italic.</i> | <i>Written.</i> | <i>Russian Name.</i> | <i>Normal Corresponding Sound in English.</i> | <i>Accidental Sound.</i> |
|-----------------------------|----------------|---|----------------------|---|--------------------------|
| Л л | <i>Л л</i> |  | el | l | |
| М м | <i>М м</i> |  | em | m | |
| Н н | <i>Н н</i> |  | en | n | |
| О о | <i>О о</i> |  | o | o in "pot" | a |
| П п | <i>П п</i> |  | peh | p | |
| Р р | <i>Р р</i> |  | er | r (emphatic) | |
| С с | <i>С с</i> |  | ess | s in "seat" | z |
| Т т | <i>Т т</i> |  | teh | t | |
| У у | <i>У у</i> |  | oo | oo | |
| Ф ф | <i>Ф ф</i> |  | ef | f | |
| Х х | <i>Х х</i> |  | kha | ch in Scotch "loch" | |
| Ц ц | <i>Ц ц</i> |  | tseh | ts | |

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

| Ordinary Characters. | Italic. | Written. | Russian Name. | Normal Corresponding Sound in English. | Accidental Sound. |
|----------------------|---------|----------|---------------|--|-------------------|
| Ч ч | Чч | Чч | chch | chin "church" | sh |
| Ш ш | Шш | Шш | shah | sh | |
| Щ щ | Щщ | Щщ | shchah | sh + ch | |
| Ъ ъ | Ъ ъ | Ъ ъ | yer | See Notes on Pronunciation. | |
| Ы ы | Ы ы | Ы ы | yerü¹ (ерü) | | |
| Ь ь | Ь ь | Ь ь | yer² (ерь) | | |
| Ѣ ѣ | Ѣ ѣ | Ѣ ѣ | yat' (ять) | yeh, eh | yo |
| Э э | Э э | Э э | eh | ay in "nay" | |
| Ю ю | Ю ю | Ю ю | yoo | u in "use" | |
| Я я | Я я | Я я | yah | ya in "yard" | ye, yi, e, i |
| Ө ө | Ө ө | Ө ө | feetáh | f | |

¹ German *ü* followed by a short *i*, or *y* in *pity* sharply pronounced.

² The *ɾ* is to be pronounced softly and followed by a short *i*- or *y*-sound, indicated by ^².

V v (the so-called *йжица*) is now rarely used, being replaced by *и*. It was only employed in words borrowed from the Greek, to represent *υ* (upsilon). Care should be taken not to confuse в, н, р, с, у, х with the similarly formed letters of the English alphabet.

NOTE. In the new Russian Orthography the letters **І, Ъ, Ѡ** have been discarded. **И, Е, Ѳ** now take their place respectively.

In the prefixes **из, воз (вз), раз (роз), низ, без**, the **з** is commuted into **с** if they are prefixed to a word beginning with a voiceless consonant. (See § 63, note 1.)

The terminations **аго, яго** in the genitive of adjectives, participles, pronouns, and numerals, are now replaced by **ого, его**.

The feminine and neuter terminations **ья, ня** in the nominative and accusative of adjectives, participles, pronouns and numerals, are now replaced by **ые, ие** (to conform to the masculine terminations).

ей (genitive of **онѧ**, and when used as a possessive pronoun) is now replaced by **еѧ**.

The hard sign (**Ѣ**) is no longer used at the end of a word terminating in a hard consonant.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

SECTION I

SOUNDS

PRONUNCIATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS

§ 1. 1. *The Vowels.*

| | | |
|----------|------------------------------------|---|
| а | sounds as the English | <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> . |
| э | " " " | <i>e</i> in <i>emblem</i> . |
| ы | (For pronunciation see next page.) | |
| о | sounds as the English | <i>aw</i> in <i>raw</i> . |
| у | " " " | <i>u</i> in <i>put</i> . |
| и | " " " | { (1) <i>ee</i> in <i>eel</i> and (2) <i>yea</i> in <i>yeast</i> . |
| я | sounds as а | but with a fleeting 'jot' or и element fused with these sounds, that is as : |
| е | " э | |
| ё | " о | |
| ю | " у | |

$$\left. \begin{matrix} \text{ʲа} \\ \text{ʲэ} \\ \text{ʲо} \\ \text{ʲу} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{ or } \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{ʷа} \\ \text{ʷэ} \\ \text{ʷо} \\ \text{ʷу} \end{matrix} \right. \quad (\text{See § 4.})$$

The Russian **а** is produced with the mouth wide open ; the sound is articulated at the back of the mouth ; voiced breath is sent upwards.

For the pronunciation of the **о** the lips are protruded forward but in a downward movement, and the sound (also produced at the back of the mouth) is sent through the protruded lips downwards.

For the **у** the lips are well protruded in a forward movement, and the sound, produced at the back of the mouth,

is driven right forward. Care must be taken not to give the Russian *y* the slightly composite 'off-glide' quality of the English *oo* in the words *food, good, moon*.¹

The **и** is produced near the middle of the hard palate with the co-operation of the middle part of the tongue, with the mouth slightly open. It is a deep, close sound. The 'jot,' which is the phonetic term for the **и**, is not used in Russian as a separate letter.

The **э** is a middle sound between **а** and **и**. To produce this sound the mouth is opened a little wider than for the **и**. The position of the middle part of the tongue is much lower than for the **и**. This letter appears only in a few Russian pronouns, such as : *этот, эта, это, эти, этой -ая -ое -ие, этак*. It is mainly used in borrowed foreign words with an open **е** : *экономия, этаж, эмаль*, etc. When not stressed it sounds almost as an indistinct **и**.

The **ы** is produced with the central part of the tongue poised against the hard palate. The lips are even less open than for the **и**. At the place where the **ы** is articulated no **и** sound would be possible. It is not a deep sound as the **и**, and is pronounced almost as *y* in *pity*. It is suggested that the student should begin with the Russian *y* sound, but right at the start, without protruding the lips forward as for an *y* sound, end the half-begun *y* with an **и**. The articulation thus begun of the hard, open *y* will not allow the sound to finish with a close, deep **и** (as the Russian *y* does not readily *fuse* with an **и**), and so the correct sound **ы** will be the result. The student will get better results if he tries at first to produce the sound **ы** with labials (**б, п, м, ф, в**). The combination *мыи, пуи, буи, фуи, вуи*, quickly pronounced will produce the sound **ы**. The vowels **уи** must be well joined. (This experimental 'sound-trick' must not be confused with the legitimate diphthongs : *дуй, цуй, куй, муй, буй*, etc., where the *y* sound is well completed and the short **й** (see p. 4) just tacked on without any attempt at *fusing*.)

¹ As sometimes pronounced in the Midlands and in the North.

лы—this syllable is the easiest to pronounce if the sound of the hard **л** has been mastered (see p. 5).

The **е** is the soft (jotated) counterpart of the hard **э**. Frequently, when stressed, the open **е**¹ sounds as **ѐ** (yo)· (1) initially ; (2) in the middle of words after a vowel, or after **ь** and **ъ**; (3) before a hard consonant in purely Russian words.

Rule (3), however, admits of many exceptions. To give a list of these exceptions would be too confusing to the beginner. The student is advised to form the habit of pronouncing the correct **ѐ** sound through practice, and from texts provided with the diaeresis. Often after the non-palatalized **ж, ш, ц** and also after the soft **ч, щ**, the **ѐ** sounds as an **о**. An accented **ѐ** after these five consonants usually turns into an **о** automatically, with the exception of personal terminations of verbs, where the **ѐ** is retained, but is sounded as an **о**.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) ёж , hedgehog | (3) лёд , ice |
| ёлка , Christmas tree | мёд , mead |
| | овёс , oats |
| (2) наём , hire, loan | шёпот [шóпот], whisper |
| моё , mine | жёлоб [жóлоб], trough |
| житьё , living | течёт , runs |
| объём , size | печёт , bakes |
| | жжёт , burns |

NOTE. There are no mute vowels in Russian. Every vowel is sounded.

§ 2. The letters **ь, ъ, й**.

The **ь** (soft sign) indicates that the preceding consonant is palatalized. (See § 8.)

Examples :

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| дань , tribute | дверь , door |
| день , day | соль , salt |
| пень , stump of tree | коньяк , brandy |

¹ See § 10.

The consonants **ж, ш** are never palatalized by the soft sign, or soft vowels.

ц is never followed by **ь, и, ю, я**; it can be followed by **е**, but is not made soft by this vowel.

The **ъ** (hard sign) indicates that the preceding consonant is hard (non-palatalized). It can now be found in the middle of a word only, before a soft vowel (in compound words), where it shows that this soft vowel is sounded as a pure vowel, and that its softness (jotation) has not been absorbed by the consonant before the **ъ** :

объяснить, to explain
 объём, size, dimension
 субъект, worthless individual ; subject

In some texts this **ъ** is replaced by an apostrophe (').

Before the New Orthography came into force, the **ъ** always stood at the end of every word which ended in a hard consonant. It has now been discarded.

NOTE. Soft vowels, standing after **ь** or **ъ**, do not lose their 'jot' element. (See § 9e.)

The short и. This is marked **й**. It is used only for forming diphthongs in combination with other vowels :

| | |
|-------------|---------------|
| чай, tea | лей, pour |
| мой, mine | бей, beat |
| сарáй, shed | бédный, poor |
| читáй, read | грóмкий, loud |
| дуй, blow | |

§ 3. 2. *The Consonants.*

(a) The hard consonants : **п, б, м, ф, в, к, г** are similar to the English *p, b, m, f, v, k, g.* (See § 9.)

(b) The hard **т, д, н, л**, although broadly similar to the English *t, d, n, l*, yet have a shade of difference which makes them fit better into the 'vocal mechanism'

of Russian. They are dental and are formed with the tip of the tongue *against the upper teeth*, and not against the teeth-ridge. (See § 9a.)

The sound of the hard **л** is removed further from the sound-value of the English *l* by the characteristically Russian hollow sound (see § 9a). The nearest approximation to the sound of the Russian hard **л** is that of the English *l* in *apple, bubble, sample, purple*. But the Russian sound is more expanded and hollow.

(c) The hard **с, з** also deviate slightly from the English *s, z*. They are produced between the tip of the tongue and the upper teeth (by narrowing the air-passage), and not between the tip *and* blade, and the teeth-ridge. The Russian **с, з** are more sharply outlined than the English *s, z*. (See § 9b.)

(d) The hard **р** is similar to the English 'rolled' *r* as sounded in the north of England, but the 'trill' is a moderate one. (See § 9a.)

In **пот**, mouth } the **р** sounds as } in *ring, rotter*,
 рыка́, hand } the English *r* } *rubbish*.

(e) The hard **х** is similar to the Scottish and German sound *ch* in *loch*. It is produced with very weak friction, and sounds almost as a voiceless *h*. Its sound has no harsh, rasping quality (see § 9c):

хам (ill-bred fellow) sounds almost as a slightly thicker English *h* would sound in *hard*.

The **р** has a voiced¹ counterpart which sounds as *h*. It is used in a few words mainly of scriptural origin, such as:

Бо́га, of God; **Го́споди**! Oh Lord! **бла́го**, good; etc.

It is also used in a few foreign proper names which contain an *H*, such as:

Га́мбург, Hamburg; **Ге́йне**, Heine; etc.

As there is no special letter in Russian for the aspirate sound, **р** is used in such words.

¹ aspirate.

(f) The hard **ж**, **ш**, **ц** are pronounced :

ж as *s* in *measure* ;

ш as *sh* in *harsh* ;

ц as *ts* in *rats* (but more closely fused).

These three consonants have no palatalized counterparts. They are never followed by **ю**, **я**. They can be followed by **и**, **е**, and **ѣ**, but these sound as **ы**, **э**, **о** after them, and they impart no softened quality to the consonant.

(g) The **ч** and **щ** are always soft ; they have no hard counterparts ; **ч** sounds as *ch* in *church*, **щ** is a combination of **ш** and **ч** (finely fused), and sounds as *shch* in *fresh cheese*. It must be pronounced as one sound.

ч and **щ** are never followed by **ю**, **я**, **ы**. They have a palatalized sound even when followed by **а**, **о**, **у**.

CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS

§ 4. The Vowels.

Hard and Soft Vowels :

Pure { **а**, **э**, **ы**, **о**, **у** = hard,
 я, **е**, **и**, **ѣ**, **ю** = soft (jotated).

The soft (jotated) vowels, while having the same fundamental sound as their corresponding hard vowels, have the element of a 'jot' ¹ preceding them.

Thus the sound of **я** corresponds to that of *ya* in *yard* ;

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------|---|---|---|---|
| „ | „ | е | „ | „ | „ | <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; |
| „ | „ | и | „ | „ | „ | { (1) <i>ee</i> in <i>eel</i> ; |
| „ | „ | ѣ | „ | „ | „ | { (2) <i>yea</i> in <i>yeast</i> ; ² |
| „ | „ | ю | „ | „ | „ | <i>yo</i> in <i>yonder</i> ; |
| „ | „ | | „ | „ | „ | <i>yu</i> in <i>yuletide</i> . |

But in the Russian soft vowels the 'jot' element is not so open or pronounced as in analogous English sounds : it is more closely fused with the fundamental sound of the

¹ 'jot' is the term adopted in phonetics for the **и** element [or of a very close English *y*].

² Initially (stressed) in : **их**, **им**, **ѣм** (gen., dat., instr. of **они**, *they*).

corresponding hard vowel, and thus forms a pure sound of its own.

The soft vowel retains its softness only if it stands as an initial syllable at the beginning of words, or when it follows another vowel (or Ъ, Ы) in the middle of a word :

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| яма, pit | моё, mine (<i>neuter</i>) |
| еду, I go (travel) | мою, I wash |
| и́ва, willow tree | мою́, mine (<i>acc. fem.</i>) |

But in

ря́дом, abreast слепо́й, blind сли́ва, plum

the я, е, и have given up the 'jot' element to their preceding consonants. (See § 9e.)

Both hard and soft vowels retain their pure fundamental sound only when stressed (accented). Some of the vowels, when not stressed, sound fainter and become almost indefinite, and they deviate from their original cardinal sound-value, thus :

an unstressed а sounds as an indistinct ə (or the short unstressed English a in the words *alone*, *mortal*).

Example : кнѣ́га, book, sounds as кнѣ́гэ,
 ба́ба, peasant woman, ,, ба́бэ ;

an unstressed я sounds as an indistinct e :

за́яц, sounds as за́ец, hare,
мяснѣ́к, ,, меснѣ́к, butcher ;

an unstressed е often sounds as и :

поездá sounds almost as поиздá, trains ;

an unstressed о sounds as an indistinct unstressed а :

молоко́ sounds as малако́, milk.

The vowels ы, и, у, ю, when not stressed, do not very markedly differ from their cardinal sound-values.

It will be seen that the stress-accent plays a very important part in deciding how the vowels should be sounded in both *stressed* and *unstressed syllables*.

§ 5. *Effect of the Stress-Accent on the Pronunciation of Vowels.*
(See § 11.)

It has been established by phonetic research that vowels, when removed from the stressed syllable in the Russian word, both before and after the accented vowel, have a tendency to be further modified into slightly different variations of their original sound, in accordance with the respective distance from the stress-centre. Phoneticians have provided these variations with appropriate symbols; but for the beginner the multiplication of sounds and sound-symbols will only be confusing. The Russian sounds are best learned from a native, and the broad values of the fundamental vowel-sounds (and the few above-mentioned deviations) must always be borne in mind. By acquiring and fostering the habit of pronouncing the stressed syllables with a heightened tone and due resonance, the student will imperceptibly learn to pronounce the unstressed vowels almost as a native. In this connection three points must be remembered :

(1) The accented syllable is the most important part of a Russian word. It must be pronounced vigorously and with resonance. If all the 'vocal light' is focussed on the stressed syllable, the other syllables will automatically be left in the shade, and thus the unstressed vowels will assume their natural sound without the student being aware of it.

(2) There can only be one accented syllable in a Russian word. The student must aim at acquiring and fostering the habit of putting the proper stress on the accented syllable without giving vocal prominence to any other syllable in the word, that is to say : he must not create two stress-centres. A wrongly accented vowel will upset the pronunciation of the whole word.

(3) If the word ends in a consonant and the accent is on the last syllable, the student should take great care not to

‘hit’ that consonant: he should just pronounce the accented vowel with due resonance and then tack on the consonant lightly. Consonants when hit are usually doubled, and Russian does not tolerate doubled consonants. The only exceptions to this rule in Russian words are a double **н** and a double **е**, where the second **н** and **е** are inserted for morphological reasons.

(Further hints on the value and importance of the stress-accent will be given as we go along.)

§ 6. *Length of Stressed Vowels.*

There are no long or short vowels in Russian. Normally all vowels are of a medium length, that is to say: half-way between the English long and short vowels. But a stressed vowel sounds a little longer, owing to the extra strength of the stress. In a word pronounced with special *emphasis-intonation* the stressed syllable will, naturally, sound much longer than usual.

§ 7. *Diphthongs* (two vowels representing the sound of a single vowel).

All Russian vowels can form diphthongs by taking a short **н** (written: **н**), which is placed after the vowel. The result is a new sound, which resembles in some ways the English diphthong formed by a vowel when it is followed by a *y*. The Russian diphthongs are not so broad and open as the English variety, and they are shorter, when not stressed. They are really vowels to which has been added half of the sound-value of the **н** together with half of its ‘jotation.’ This makes the principal-vowel element of the diphthong very much closer than that of an English diphthong.

Compare : май, May, with *my*
 пей, drink, with *hey*
 бой, battle, with *boy*, etc.

(See § 14c.)

§ 8. *Soft Vowels and Palatalized Consonants.*

Soft vowels affect very strongly the consonants which precede them by giving them a modified, soft, character. The 'jot'-element of the soft vowel is communicated to the consonant, making it soft or palatalized. All such consonants receive a sound, slightly crushed, somewhat liquefied in some districts, and almost inwardly directed, with the element of a fleeting 'jot' lent to it. The initial consonants in the English words, *pew, few, tune, league, duty* can give some approximation to the pronunciation of Russian palatalized consonants. But the Russian palatalized consonants are much softer and closer. It would be very difficult to give precise guidance how to produce this soft (palatalized) variety of Russian consonants in one or two paragraphs: a whole booklet would be needed in order to give in detail the structure of the vocal organs, position of the tongue when uttering any given sound, etc. And even then the student would be much perplexed, and would never be certain whether he had pronounced this or that sound correctly or not. As the mastery of the soft consonants is of the utmost importance in learning Russian, the student is advised to learn the sounds from a native. For those who have already assimilated the vocal-value and functions of every Russian sound, a few hints about the palatalized consonants may be useful. These are set out in §§ 9-9e.

§ 9. *Pronunciation of Soft (palatalized) Consonants.*

The broad distinction between the pronunciation of hard consonants and their soft counterparts is this: that while the hard consonants are produced *without the participation of the middle part of the tongue*, those of the palatalized variety are pronounced *with the active participation of the middle part of the tongue* (nearer the front in the case of some consonants, and nearer the back in the case of others, as will be specified in each case). We will begin with the

sounds produced with the participation of the lips (labials), **п, б, м, ф, в**. The hard **п, б, м** (full-labials) are produced with both lips compressed, the sound going outwards. The hard **ф, в** (half-labials) are produced by the lower lip touching the tips of the upper teeth, the sound going outwards. In the case of the *palatalized* variety of these five labials, the sound, as it were, goes inwards, as if to pick up the 'jot' (or **н**) sound which makes them soft, while the middle part of the tongue (middle-front) simultaneously moves towards that spot of the hard palate where the 'jot' is produced.

The vocal organs of a Russian perform all these nice functions automatically. The English student will need some 'mouth-drill' at the beginning. When this 'trick' is learnt the student will have no further difficulty with the soft consonants. But learn it he must, otherwise his spoken Russian will never be really intelligible, or, at best, it will have a marked un-Russian flavour.

§ 9a. Next come the *dentals*: **т, д, н, л**, and the trilled (or rolled) **р**. The hard (non-palatalized) **т, д, н** are formed with the tip of the tongue against the upper teeth, the sound going outwards. For the palatalized set the lips are spread, the tip of the tongue is slightly lowered, leaving a clearance between tip of tongue and upper teeth, and the front of the tongue is simultaneously raised towards the hard palate (to infuse the 'jot' element into the consonant). In this process the blade of the tongue presses firmly against the teeth-ridge.

To produce a hard **л** the tip of the tongue is placed against the upper teeth, the middle of the tongue is lowered; the sound is produced by the back of the tongue against the soft palate. The soft **л** is produced in the same way as the soft **т, д, н**.

The non-palatalized hard **р** is produced by holding the tongue loosely near the teeth-ridge (of the upper teeth). The air stream causes the tip of the tongue to vibrate,

and produces the right trill. The soft (palatalized) **р** is produced by raising the tongue higher in the direction of the hard palate, with the mouth opened wider. The trill should not be overdone : just a momentary soft-pedalled vibration will do.

§ 9b. The hard **с** and **з** are produced by bringing the tip of the tongue very close to the upper teeth (without touching them).

For the soft **с** and **з** it is necessary to raise the front of the tongue towards the hard palate.

Thus the soft consonants **т, д, н, л, р, с, з**, have a middle-front (tongue) palatalization.

§ 9c. We now come to the *back-consonants* (usually called gutturals). They are formed between the back of the tongue and the soft palate :

к, г, х. Hard **к** is pronounced as the English *c* before a hard vowel (as in *cat*).

Hard **г** is pronounced as the English hard *g* in *go*.

Hard **х** is pronounced as *ch* in Scottish and German *loch* ; but the Russian **х** is not so harsh, it almost sounds as a thick English *h*.

The palatalized variety of these three back-consonants is produced by endeavouring to articulate them a little forward in the direction where the **н** is articulated.

The soft back-consonants can be described as having a middle-back (tongue) palatalization.

§ 9d. There remain **ж, ш, ъ**, which are not capable of palatalization, and **ч, щ**, which are pre-eminently soft (palatalized).

The student could practise the pronunciation of the soft consonants (except **ж, ш, ъ**) by pronouncing them together with an **н**. Having obtained a satisfactory result, he can drop the **н** and try to experiment without any vowel at

all. He will find that a soft **б** is really **б'** with only the fleeting 'jot' element of the **н** sounded, etc.

The palatalization of **к**, **г**, **х** is not so pronounced as in the other consonants.

NOTE. The position of the front part of the tongue, when producing a palatalized consonant, should always be close to the hard palate, except in the case of *labials*, when this is not quite possible.

§ 9c. It will be seen that the soft vowels create a new set of soft consonants which are distinct in pronunciation from the corresponding hard set. But having performed the function of palatalizing the preceding consonant the soft vowel has given up its 'jot' element (which has now been absorbed by the preceding consonant), and has only retained its cardinal sound-value, thus :

няня, nurse, is pronounced as н'ан'а ; ¹

дядя, uncle, is pronounced as д'ад'а.

It would be impossible to pronounce a palatalized consonant with the soft vowel retaining its 'jot' element. In cases where such retention is needed, the palatalized consonant is separated from the soft vowel by **ь**. (See § 2.)

A few examples of words, with both hard and soft consonants, are given below (see §§ 14a and 14b). After a little practice the pronunciation of palatalized consonants should become quite easy.

§ 10. *Open and Close Vowels.*

All vowels, both soft and hard, when they stand immediately before a palatalized consonant have a close, almost contracted, sound. This is effected automatically by the correct pronunciation of the palatalized consonant that follows the vowel. In the act of correctly fusing the vowel and the consonant, an almost new vowel is pro-

¹ The apostrophe indicates the softened, palatalized consonant.

duced which has a resemblance to a very close diphthong, with an imperceptible 'jot'-quality. By a process of assimilation the vowel absorbs a part of the palatalization of the soft consonant, and it now takes a shade of the 'jot' on the side nearest to the soft consonant. The following examples will illustrate this process of vocal fusion and assimilation :

| <i>Open vowels before hard consonants :</i> | <i>Close (contracted) vowels before soft consonants :</i> |
|---|---|
| брат, brother | братъ, } [бра'ѣтъ] } to take |
| дан, given | данъ, } [да'ѣнь] } tribute |
| лѣн, flax | лень, } [л'е'ѣнь] } state of laziness |
| кол, pile (pointed stake) | коль, } [ко'ѣль] } if |
| дал, he gave | даль, } [да'ѣль] } distance |
| надѹтъ, inflated | надѹтъ, } to inflate, [наду'ѣтъ] } to cheat |
| мат, checkmate | мать, } [ма'ѣтъ] } mother |

In all these examples the close vowels are produced by simply tacking on the well-articulated palatalized consonant, without any conscious effort being made by the student to render the vowel close. *The student's task is simply to sound the vowel correctly in accordance with its cardinal sound-value, and then to tack on, without any pause, the well-palatalized consonant.* The result will be the correct close vowel. If, however, he should aim at, or be conscious of, producing a close vowel, the result will be a *diphthong*, which will upset the euphony of the word.

§ 11. *The Stress-Accent.* (See § 5.)

One of the main difficulties in the study of Russian is the accent. It is a *stress*-accent, the accented (or stressed) syllable requiring a higher pitch, or ring, of the voice. As the accent is frequently shifted from one syllable to another in the declension, or conjugation, of the same word, or in the formation of derivatives, an early practical acquaintance with the position of the stress-accent in the word is necessary. As far as beginners are concerned there are no rigid rules that can be of any practical value, and so the student must form the habit of memorizing the place of the accent in the word from accented texts. This habit will help the learner to wade through the seemingly hopeless maze of the accent. It must be borne in mind that by putting the accent on the wrong syllable the meaning of the word is often altered. A few examples will illustrate this :

| | | | | |
|-------|--------|----------------|--------|----------------|
| while | до́ма | means at home, | дома́ | means houses ; |
| | за́мок | „ a castle, | замо́к | „ a lock ; |
| | му́ка | „ torment, | мука́ | „ flour. |

But, apart from this, unless the student has formed the habit of giving the accented syllable the proper stress, he will have greater difficulty in comprehending the sounds and meaning of Russian as spoken by a native, and his own Russian will not be easily understood.

The accented vowel should be stressed clearly and resonantly, without, however, lengthening the sound unduly. It must be remembered that there are no long or short vowel sounds in Russian (see § 6). If a stressed syllable ends in a consonant the full force of the stress should fall on the accented vowel, but never on the consonant. The consonant is tacked on lightly without being hit. It is alien to Russian to double a consonant by hitting it. (See § 5, note 3.)

Vowels without the stress-accent are almost reduced in

sound-value; they remain in the shade, and are not so clearly pronounced (see § 5, note 1). Unstressed vowels which stand immediately before the accented syllable are not quite so much reduced in sound-value as those standing after the accented syllable. The latter are heard indistinctly and the sound is often not clearly defined.

All these observations on the accent can, of necessity, give only an approximate idea about the manifold changes which unstressed vowels undergo in the process of sound-formation. But a careful study and application of the few hints given above will enable the student to pronounce the various sounds as near as possible to the living sounds of spoken Russian. An approximation to the exact shading of sounds will come with practice and knowledge. The main thing is to stress the accented syllable correctly, and to pronounce the palatalized consonants properly. The rich expressiveness of Russian can only be attained through paying meticulous attention to these rules and hints about the sounds and the accent.

§ 12. Voiced and Voiceless Consonants (*Sonants and Surds*).¹

(a) Voiced : б, в, г, д, з, ж, м, н, л, р, — — —

(b) Voiceless : п, ф, к, т, с, ш, — — — — ч, ц, х

(1) Voiced consonants are sounded as voiceless at the end of words after a vowel :

| | | | |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-----------|-------|
| лоб, | forehead, | sounds as | лоп |
| кровь, | blood, | „ | крофь |
| мог, | could, | „ | мох |
| стог, | haystack, | „ | стох |
| ног, | feet (<i>gen. pl.</i>), | „ | нох |
| режь, | cut (<i>imp. 2nd pers. sing.</i>), | „ | решь |
| клад, | buried treasure, | „ | клат |

(2) At the beginning of words, and often in the middle, consonants have a tendency to assimilate

¹ Voiced consonants are uttered with vocal vibration; voiceless consonants are uttered with the breath and not with the voice,

the voiced, or voiceless, quality of the preceding consonant by lending to it their own vocal quality (or timbre) :

(а) сде́лать, to make, sounds as зде́лать
 про́сьба, request, „ про́зьба
 та́кже, also, „ та́гже
 (both consonants are rendered *voiced*).

(б) ла́вка, shop, sounds as ла́фка
 вхо́д, entrance, „ ф́хот
 (both consonants are rendered *voiceless*).

(с) з, с, before ж sound as ж :

сже́чь, to burn, sounds as жже́чь
 изжо́га, heartburn, „ ижжо́га

з, с, before ш sound as ш :

сши́ть, to sew, sounds as шши́ть

с before ч sounds as ш :

сче́т, account, sounds as шче́т [or шѐт]

NOTE 1. If the second consonant in a word is **р, л, м, н, в**, these, although voiced, *do not* turn a preceding voiceless consonant into a voiced one :

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| пра́вда, truth | снег, snow |
| пла́тье, dress | свой, one's own |
| смотре́ю, I look | |

NOTE 2. Assimilation of consonants takes place even if the respective consonants are in two different words, if the first word has no stress of its own :

к де́лу, sounds as г де́лу, to the point
 с зо́лотом, „ з зо́лотом, with gold

NOTE 3. In all cases of assimilation of consonants the student should not make any conscious effort to assist the natural tendency of the sounds themselves. At the end of words, for example, all that he has to do is to sound the stressed vowel with proper emphasis and resonance, and then to tack on the final voiced

sound lightly, without any conscious effort. The result will be a voiceless consonant of the proper effortless quality, without unnatural exaggeration.

§ 13. *Some Peculiarities in the Pronunciation of Consonants.*

(1) In the combinations **эдн**, **етн**, the **д** and **т** are sounded faintly, or not at all :

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|---------|
| пóздно, late, | sounds as | пóзно |
| извѣстно, it is known, | „ | извѣсно |

(2) **л** is often sounded faintly, or not at all, particularly at the end of words after labials :

| | | |
|----------------|-----------|-------|
| сóлнце, sun, | sounds as | сонце |
| рубль, rouble, | „ | рупь |

(3) **г** before **к**, **ч**, sounds as **х** :

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------|--------|
| легко́, light, easy, | sounds as | лехко́ |
| мя́гко, softly, | „ | мя́хко |
| ле́гче, lighter, easier, | „ | ле́хче |
| мя́гче, softer, | „ | мя́хче |

(4) **г** sounds as **в** in the suffixes **еро**, **оро** (terminations of the genitive singular case for masculine and neuter of adjectives, some pronouns, and ordinal numerals) :

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------|---------|
| его́, his, | sounds as | евó |
| бе́лого, of white, | „ | бе́лово |

(5) **ч** before **н** is often sounded as **ш** :

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|------------|
| ску́чно, it's boring, | sounds as | ску́шно |
| конѣ́чно, of course, | „ | конѣ́шно |
| пра́чечная, laundry, | „ | пра́чешная |

NOTE. In some words, however, the **ч** in **чн** retains its sound :

| | |
|----------------------|---------|
| то́чный, exact, | precise |
| отли́чный, excellent | |
| конѣ́чный, terminal, | final |
| востóчный, oriental, | eastern |
| беспѣ́чный, carefree | |

- (b) The insertion of a euphonic *л* after labials *б, в, м, п, ф* before a 'jotated' vowel (mainly *ю, я, е*).
- (c) *л* preceded by a consonant is frequently dropped in the formation of the past tense of verbs if the *л* is not followed by a vowel.

NOTE 1. Besides the enumerated commutations of consonants, all consonants have a tendency to effect a change in the vocal quality of any other preceding consonant by assimilating it. This is explained in § 12.

NOTE 2. In this manual all the cases of commutation of sounds are clearly indicated throughout.

§ 14. *Stress.*

Having said all about the Russian sounds that the beginner will have to acquire before he sets out on his study of Russian, I must not omit to mention that a certain minimum knowledge of the simpler cases of sentence-stress will be useful to him. In the simplest sentence or word-group there are usually words of greater importance (head-words) and words of lesser importance, or what we shall call subordinate words. To such subordinate words belong prepositions (excepting those enumerated in § 96f), conjunctions, and many pronouns of the shorter type. These subordinate words are usually tacked on to the more important words, and in the process they lose their own stress. The same tendency also exists in English. But in Russian this is of greater importance, seeing that vowels which have no stress sound somewhat differently from the stressed variety. Apart from this, the law of assimilation, which makes a consonant sound either voiced or voiceless, in conformity with the type of consonant that follows it, will extend its operation

also to consonants of a subordinate word in the sentence (see § 13). It is, therefore, not enough to pronounce a word with meticulous care, and hope that by uttering the correct words one after another the whole Russian sentence will turn out correct. If the less important words are given undue prominence the vowel-values will be distorted and the sentence will probably sound very un-Russian. The bare correctness of the pronunciation of individual sounds and single words, without the effort to unify them into a coherent whole, will bear no resemblance to the co-ordinated, well-modulated, and well-knit sounds of living Russian speech.

Until the beginner has learnt a little more Russian it will be safe for him to assume that sentence-stress and sentence-intonation of a simple sentence are much alike in both Russian and English. He will, no doubt, commit blunders, but this will not matter so much as far as sentence-stress is concerned.

The observations on Russian pronunciation in the preceding pages are necessarily of limited scope. For those students who wish to acquaint themselves with a wider scientific treatment of Russian sounds, the excellent 'Manual of Russian Pronunciation,' by S. C. Boyanus (Sidgwick and Jackson), is recommended. The subject-matter of the work is treated on phonetic principles and is phonetically transcribed. It contains useful hints on word stress and sentence intonation.

§ 14a. *Hard Consonants and Open Vowels.* (See §§ 9-10.)

| | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|-------|-------|--------|
| ба | бо | бу | бы | ба́ба | ха́та | ма́ло |
| ва | во | ву | вы | бо́бы | изба́ | ло́ма |
| га | го | гу | — | гу́ба | па́па | са́жа |
| да | до | ду | ды | ду́бы | ма́ма | коза́ |
| жа | жо | жу | — | ду́ба | ма́ло | о́на |
| за | зо | зу | зы | возы́ | мы́ло | зако́н |
| ка | ко | ку | — | во́за | бра́т | па́ра |

| | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|-------|-------|-------|
| ла | ло | лу | лы | лугá | хват | порá |
| ма | мо | му | мы | гóды | лáпа | рáна |
| на | но | ну | ны | — | лáпы | рáно |
| па | по | пу | пы | дугá | пáла | нáра |
| ра | ро | ру | ры | дугú | пáло | норá |
| са | со | су | сы | водá | упáла | носú |
| та | то | ту | ты | бузá | мукá | судá |
| ха | хо | ху | — | кóла | кумá | судú |
| ца | цо | цу | цы | колы́ | му́ка | ма́ку |

| | | | | |
|--------|--------|----------|---------|-----------|
| то́-то | на́до | хúдо | плы́ла | вожу́ |
| са́ло | данó | худá | плы́ло | бужú |
| лосá | рукá | нож́и[ы] | выл | дул |
| ра́ды | кúры | ножá | слыл | гул |
| ра́да | худá | корá | ры́нок | тумáн |
| го́да | óба | ка́ра | пыла́л | болва́н |
| го́да | жук | ра́са | пыла́ла | ко́локол |
| два | лук | росá | куды́ | коло́кола |
| ры́ло | сук | суп | ра́ды | болóто |
| мы́ло | хам | глуп | рад | мо́лот |
| вы́ла | нам | мы́за | ра́да | хо́бот |
| дыбы́ | да́ром | мы́зы | кула́к | плуг |
| вы́бор | па́ром | копы́то | ду́мал | друг |
| двум | па́ром | лы́ко | ду́мала | слух |
| ры́ба | ду́ха | уны́ло | кудá | му́ха |
| дыра́ | ду́ху | плыл | дура́к | дух |

NOTE 1. Unstressed *a* and *o* have the indefinite sound of the first *o* in the English word *Morocco*. Unstressed *y* sounds as the English *u* in *put*. Stressed *a* sounds as the English *a* in *ah*; stressed *o* sounds as the English *aw* in *saw*; stressed *y* sounds as the English *oo* in *doom*. For the correct sound of *ы* see § 1.

NOTE 2. It is essential that the student should become thoroughly acquainted with the pronunciation of Russian sounds as set out in §§ 1-14 before he attempts to read the reading exercises.

NOTE 3. There is only one stress-centre in a Russian word: the accented vowel. This should be vigorously and *resonantly* sounded.

§ 14b. *Palatalized Consonants with Open and Close Vowels.*
(See §§ 8-9.)

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| бя = б'а ¹ | бе = б'э | бѐ = б'о | би = б'и |
| вя = в'а | ве = в'э | вѐ = в'о | ви = в'и |
| | | | ги = г'и |
| дя = д'а | де = д'э | дѐ = д'о | ди = д'и |
| | | | жи = ж'и |
| зя = з'а | зе = з'э | зѐ = з'о | зи = з'и |
| | | | ки = к'и |
| ля = л'а | ле = л'э | лѐ = л'о | ли = л'и |
| мя = м'а | ме = м'э | мѐ = м'о | ми = м'и |
| ня = н'а | не = н'э | нѐ = н'о | ни = н'и |
| пя = п'а | пе = п'э | пѐ = п'о | пи = п'и |
| ря = р'а | ре = р'э | рѐ = р'о | ри = р'и |
| ся = с'а | се = с'э | сѐ = с'о | си = с'и |
| тя = т'а | те = т'э | тѐ = т'о | ти = т'и |
| фя = ф'а | фе = ф'э | фѐ = ф'о | фи = ф'и |
| | | | хи = х'и |
| | | | ши = ш'и |

| | | |
|----------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| бю = б'у | ча = ч'а | } These consonants are always soft. |
| вю = в'у | ща = щ'а | |
| дю = д'у | чо = ч'о | |
| зю = з'у | що = щ'о | |
| лю = л'у | чу = ч'у | |
| мю = м'у | шу = ш'у | |
| ню = н'у | че = ч'э | |
| пю = п'у | ще = щ'э | |
| рю = р'у | | |
| сю = с'у | же = жэ | } Always hard. |
| тю = т'у | ше = шэ | |
| фю = ф'у | | |

¹ See footnote, p. 13.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| бѣа = б'ѣа | бѣѣ = б'ѣѣ | бѣе = б'ѣе | бѣю = б'ѣю |
| вѣа = в'ѣа | вѣѣ = в'ѣѣ | вѣе = в'ѣе | вѣю = в'ѣю |
| дѣа = д'ѣа | дѣѣ = д'ѣѣ | дѣе = д'ѣе | дѣю = д'ѣю |
| зѣа = з'ѣа | зѣѣ = з'ѣѣ | зѣе = з'ѣе | зѣю = з'ѣю |
| лѣа = л'ѣа | лѣѣ = л'ѣѣ | лѣе = л'ѣе | лѣю = л'ѣю |
| мѣа = м'ѣа | мѣѣ = м'ѣѣ | мѣе = м'ѣе | мѣю = м'ѣю |
| нѣа = н'ѣа | нѣѣ = н'ѣѣ | нѣе = н'ѣе | нѣю = н'ѣю |
| пѣа = п'ѣа | пѣѣ = п'ѣѣ | пѣе = п'ѣе | пѣю = п'ѣю |
| рѣа = р'ѣа | рѣѣ = р'ѣѣ | рѣе = р'ѣе | рѣю = р'ѣю |
| сѣа = с'ѣа | сѣѣ = с'ѣѣ | сѣе = с'ѣе | сѣю = с'ѣю |
| тѣа = т'ѣа | тѣѣ = т'ѣѣ | тѣе = т'ѣе | тѣю = т'ѣю |
| фѣа = ф'ѣа | фѣѣ = ф'ѣѣ | фѣе = ф'ѣе | фѣю = ф'ѣю |
| | чѣѣ = ч'ѣѣ | чѣе = ч'ѣе | чѣю = ч'ѣю |

NOTE. The soft vowels in the above examples retain their 'jot' element as the consonants derive their palatalization from the ѣ. (See §§ 4 and 9e.)

| | | | |
|---------|--------|-----------|------|
| берѣу | мѣсо | берѣза | дѣдю |
| бедѣа | мѣд | бельѣ | дѣди |
| вѣра | мѣта | беднѣак | дѣде |
| бюрѣо | нѣбо | бесѣтъ | тѣтя |
| идѣм | нѣбо | бѣднѣость | тѣти |
| дѣда | нет | — | тѣте |
| дѣду | лѣто | опѣнки | тѣтю |
| зернѣо | летѣа | котѣнок | нѣня |
| зѣрна | лѣг | — | нѣню |
| веснѣа | ряд | пятнѣо | нѣни |
| верстѣа | подрѣд | пятѣ | нѣне |
| ведрѣо | сѣду | опѣтъ | тѣтя |
| вѣдра | рѣдко | ведѣ | тѣтю |
| ковѣр | врѣт | вѣрить | тѣти |
| метлѣа | тѣук | вѣрю | тѣте |

| | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|--------|-------|
| мѣтла | утѣг | вѣрят | бѣли | дрѣбѣ |
| мѣна | Фѣдор | мель | лѣли | кладѣ |
| мелкѣа | фѣга | медѣ | вѣли | лазѣ |
| мѣла | фѣрма | лечѣ | зѣюзѣа | |

измѣна
фѣрма
хил
брюки
хрюкать

лень
врѣмя
весьма
вѣчер
—

Фѣдя
фѣя
филей
плѣмя
сѣмя

стать
молотъ
колотъ
пѣля
пѣли
лупить
купить
купля
курить
люблю

стали
молот
колот
пѣлю
пѣле
луплю
куплю
кури
курю
любя

дарить
варить
варю
дарю
палить
поле
курѣние
лечѣние
вранье

дарит
варит
варишь }¹
даришь }
палю
поля
море
моря
мытье

пыль
убыль

ковыль
прибыль

окунь
дунь
дуть
грудь
грусть
пусть
путь
мыть
ныть
плыть

корь
гарь
дурь
фонарь
янтарь
грань
верьте
мерьте
цель
мель
свирель
колыбель

знать
падать
пасть
класть
память
лошадь
морковь
церковь
кровь

конь
ось
брось
кость
боль
жаль
вдаль
нельзя

мазь
даль
тень
выпь
высь
лось
хоть

§ 14c. *Diphthongs.*
(See § 7.)

| | | |
|------|--------|----------|
| лай | дуй | дóлгий |
| май | куй | хорóший |
| пай | плюй | вечёрний |
| рай | жуй | сiний |
| лей | ночуй | |
| пей | буйный | |
| грей | густой | |
| шей | пустой | |
| брей | мелкий | |
| мой | мédный | |
| свой | плохой | |
| твой | гóлый | |
| | уйти | |
| | уйду́ | |

§ 14d. *-ться pronounced as -тся.*

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| мы́ться | = мы́тся |
| бри́ться | = бри́тся |
| купа́ться | = купа́тся |
| одева́ться | = одева́тся |
| оде́ться | = оде́тся |
| обу́ться | = обу́тся |
| | etc. |

SECTION II

PARTS OF SPEECH

1. NOUNS

§ 15. *Genders, Numbers, and Cases of Nouns.*

1. There are three Genders of Russian nouns : Masculine ; Feminine ; Neuter.
2. Two Numbers : Singular ; Plural.
3. Six Cases : (1) Nominative ; (2) Genitive ; (3) Dative ; (4) Accusative ; (5) Instrumental ; (6) Locative (also called Prepositional).

The cases answer to the questions :

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) <i>Nom.</i> | кто ? что ? | who ? what ? |
| (2) <i>Gen.</i> | кого ? чего ? | whom ? what ? |
| | от кого ? от чего ? | from whom ? from what ? |
| | у кого ? у чего ? | near [of] whom ? near what ? |
| (3) <i>Dat.</i> | кому ? чему ? | to whom ? to what ? |
| (4) <i>Acc.</i> | кого ? что ? | whom ? what ? |
| (5) <i>Instr.</i> | кем ? чем ? | by whom ? by what ? |
| | с кем ? с чем ? | with whom ? with what ? |
| (6) <i>Loc.</i> | в ком ? в чём ? | in whom ? in what ? |
| | на ком ? на чём ? | on whom ? on what ? |

The nominative case is called the direct case ; all the other cases are called the **oblique** cases. The vocative, or exclamation case, has now been merged in the nominative. Only a few nouns have retained the vocative case :

| | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|
| Бог, | God, | Бо́же ! |
| Госпо́дь, | Lord, | Го́споди ! |
| Христóс, | Christ, | Христé ! |

§ 16. *Functions of Cases.*

The **nominative** is the 'subject case,' its main function being to supply the subject of the sentence :

брат пи́шет пи́сьмо brother writes a letter

The **accusative** is the 'direct object case'; it serves to complete the meaning of a transitive verb :

я пишу́ письмó I write a letter

The **dative** serves as an **indirect object**, in the meaning of : where to, to whom, etc. :

я пишу́ к брáту I write to (my) brother

The **genitive** shows that the noun in this case is an adjunct to another noun :

я получи́л письмó брáта I have received (my) brother's letter

The **instrumental** case expresses the instrument or manner of action :

я пишу́ перóм I write with a pen

The **locative** case expresses place :

я живу́ в го́роде I live in town

Both the instrumental and locative cases can be regarded as 'adverb cases.'

§ 17. *How to distinguish the Gender of Nouns.*

The gender of inanimate nouns¹ is distinguished by the termination of the nominative case :

Masculine nouns terminate : (a) in a consonant, (b) in **ь**, (c) in **ъ** :

го́род, town день, day чай, tea

Feminine nouns terminate : (a) in **а**, (b) in **я**, (c) in **ь** :

кни́га, book земл́я, earth ло́шадь, horse

Neuter nouns terminate : (a) in **о**, (b) in **е**, (c) a few words in **мя** :

окно́, window мо́ре, sea и́мя, name

Also the word : дит́я, child

¹ Nouns denoting inanimate things.

Nouns of all genders can be either of the hard group, or of the soft group, according to their case-endings :

| <i>Hard Group</i> | | <i>Soft Group</i> | |
|------------------------------------|--|-------------------|-----|
| Masculine, ending in a consonant ; | | -Ь | -Й |
| Neuter, „ -о ; | | -е | -мя |
| Feminine, „ -а ; | | -я | -ь |

§ 18. Declension of Masculine Nouns.

The terminations of the masculine nouns according to their cases are :

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> | <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> |
| <i>Nom.</i> — | -Ь, -Й | <i>Nom.</i> -Ы | -И |
| <i>Gen.</i> -а | -Я | <i>Gen.</i> -ОВ | -ЕЙ, -ЕВ |
| <i>Dat.</i> -у | -Ю | <i>Dat.</i> -АМ | -ЯМ |
| <i>Acc.</i> ¹ — or -а | -Ь, -Й or -Я | <i>Acc.</i> ¹ -Ы or -ОВ | -И, -ЕЙ, -ЕВ |
| <i>Instr.</i> -ОМ | -ЕМ [-ЁМ] | <i>Instr.</i> -АМИ | -ЯМИ |
| <i>Loc.</i> -е | ^ | <i>Loc.</i> -АХ | -ЯХ |

¹ See note 1, p. 30.

examples :

| <i>Singular</i> | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | стол (table) | замок (lock) | кон-ь (horse) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | стол-а | замк-а | сар-а-й (shed) |
| <i>Dat.</i> | стол-у | замк-у | сар-а-ю |
| <i>Acc.</i> | стол | замок | сар-а-й |
| <i>Instr.</i> | стол-ом | замк-ом | сар-а-ем |
| <i>Loc.</i> | стол-е | замк-е | сар-а-е |

| <i>Plural</i> | | | |
|---------------|----------|----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | стол-ы | замк-и | кон-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | стол-ов | замк-ов | кон-ей |
| <i>Dat.</i> | стол-ам | замк-ам | кон-ям |
| <i>Acc.</i> | стол-ы | замк-и | кон-ей |
| <i>Instr.</i> | стол-ами | замк-ами | кон-ями |
| <i>Loc.</i> | стол-ах | замк-ах | кон-ях |

NOTE 1. The accusative of inanimate nouns is the same as the nominative in both singular and plural :

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> } | стол | сто́лы |
| <i>Acc.</i> } | | |

In animate nouns¹ the accusative has the same termination as the genitive in both singular and plural :

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ко́нь | ко́ни |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ко́ня | ко́не́й |

But if the accusative of an inanimate noun forms the direct object in a sentence having a **negative** predicate, the genitive takes the place of the accusative :

Я не купíл столá I did not buy the table

NOTE 2. Masculine nouns ending in **ь** have the termination **ей** in the genitive plural. But those ending in **ай, яй, ой, ей, уй** take the termination **ев** or **ёв**.

Example :

| <i>Masc. sing.</i> | <i>Gen. pl.</i> |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| ко́нь | ко́не́й |
| са́ра́й | са́ра́ев |
| ча́й | чаёв (of various sorts of tea) |

NOTE 3. As **г, к, х** cannot be followed by **ы**, this vowel is changed into **и** in the declension of nouns ending in these three letters :

| | | |
|---------------|--------|---------------------|
| кни́га, book, | кни́ги | { <i>Gen. sing.</i> |
| | | { <i>Nom. pl.</i> |

NOTE 4. Masculine nouns ending in **ч, щ**, although soft (ending in a soft consonant), cannot be followed by **я, ю** or **ё**. These are supplanted by **а, у, е** :

плащ, cloak, плаща́, плащу́, плащо́м
врач, physician, врача́, врачу́, врачо́м

¹ Nouns denoting living beings.

All nouns ending in **ж, ш, ч, щ** have the termination **ей** in the genitive plural. They are never followed by **ы, я, ю, ё**. The place of these vowels is taken by **и, а, у, о**.

| | | |
|-------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| плащ, | плащй, (<i>Nom. pl.</i>) | плащѣй (<i>Gen. pl.</i>) |
| врач, | врачй, | врачѣй |
| нож, knife, | ножй, | ножѣй |
| шалáш, hut, | шалаши́, | шалаши́ей |

NOTE 5. Masculine nouns ending in **ц** have the genitive plural termination **ев** if this syllable is not accented, but **ов** if it is accented :

| | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| пáлец, finger, | пáльцев ¹ |
| конѣц, end, | концѡв ² |

§ 19. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Masculine Nouns.*

Very often the **o** or the **e** in the final syllable of the nominative singular disappears in the oblique cases. (See § 13a.)

| пáлец | | конѣц | |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
| <i>Nom.</i> пáлец | пáльц-ы | <i>Nom.</i> конѣц | конц-ѣ |
| <i>Gen.</i> пáльц-а | пáльц-ев | <i>Gen.</i> конц-á | конц-ѡв |
| <i>Dat.</i> пáльц-у | пáльц-ам | <i>Dat.</i> конц-ý | конц-ám |
| <i>Acc.</i> пáлец | пáльц-ы | <i>Acc.</i> конѣц | конц-ѣ |
| <i>Instr.</i> пáльц-ем | пáльц-ами | <i>Instr.</i> конц-ѡм | конц-áми |
| <i>Loc.</i> пáльц-е | пáльц-ах | <i>Loc.</i> конц-ѣ | конц-áх |

NOTE 1. The **o** and **e** are retained in declension in words which would be difficult to pronounce if these vowels were dropped, thus :

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------|------------------|
| кузнѣц, blacksmith, | кузнеца́ | } -цý, -цѡм, -цѣ |
| мертвѣц, dead body, | мертвеца́ | |
| потѡк, stream, | потѡка | } -ку, -ком, -ке |
| уро́к, lesson, | уро́ка | |

¹ The **e** of the nominative singular is changed into **ь** (after an **л**).

² The **e** of the nominative singular disappears altogether.

NOTE 2. The vowel *e* after *л* in the last syllable of the nominative singular usually changes into *ь* in the oblique cases.

If the vowel *e* in the last syllable of the nominative singular is preceded by another vowel, it changes into *й* in the oblique cases :

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|-------------|
| наём, hire, | найма́ } | -ý, -óm, -é |
| заём, loan, | займа́ } | |
| боёц, fighter, | бойца́ } | |
| за́яц [за́ец], ¹ hare, | за́йца | |
| | | -y, -em, -e |

Nouns terminating in *ей* change the *e* into *ь* in the oblique cases :

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| воробѣй, sparrow, | воробѣ́я, -ью́, -ѣ́ем, -ѣ́е |
| соловѣй, nightingale, | соловѣ́я, -ью́, -ѣ́ем, -ѣ́е |
| ручѣй, stream, | ручѣ́я, -ью́, -ѣ́ем, -ѣ́е |
| муравѣй, ant, | муравѣ́я, -ью́, -ѣ́ем, -ѣ́е |

§ 20. *Irregular Terminations in the Declension of some Masculine Nouns.*

(1) Some masculine nouns, such as :

| | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| чай, tea | таба́к, tobacco |
| са́хар, sugar | минда́ль, almonds |

take an *y* or *ю* in the genitive singular if the noun is used in the sense of a portion of, or some of it :

| | | | |
|---------------|----------|------------|----------|
| some tea,- | ча́ю | instead of | ча́я |
| some sugar, | са́хару | „ | са́хара |
| some tobacco, | табако́у | „ | табака́ |
| some almonds, | миндалю́ | „ | миндаля́ |

This 'quantitative' form is only used when the noun is used in a partitive sense. Otherwise the legitimate ending of *а*, *я* for the genitive singular is retained.

¹ As an unaccented *я* sounds as *e*, this noun is classed in the same category by analogy.

A few other masculine nouns have also the tendency to take *y* in the genitive singular in the following expressions :

мнóго нарóду, many people
 без тóлку, without sense
 с вёрху, from the top
 с нíзу, from underneath
 (hence the adverbs : снíзу, свёрху)

(2) In a number of monosyllabic masculine nouns the locative case ends in *ý*, *ю* instead of *e*, but only when they are preceded by the prepositions **в** and **на** :

в лесý, in the forest на полý, on the floor
 в годý, in the year на льдý, on the ice
 в садý, in the garden на берерý, on the shore (of sea)
 в снегý, in the snow or bank of river
 в бою, in battle
 в раю, in heaven (paradise)

(3) A number of masculine nouns terminating in a consonant take an accented *á* as their case-ending for the nominative plural instead of **ы**, **и** :

| <i>Nom. Sing.</i> | | <i>Nom. Pl.</i> |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| рукáв, | sleeve | рукавá |
| бéрег, | shore, bank of river | берегá |
| глаз, | eye | глазá |
| рог, | horn | рогá |
| гóрод, | town | городá |
| лес, | forest | лесá |
| гóлос, | voice | голосá |
| дом, | house | домá |
| кóлокол, | bell | колоколá |

Also a few nouns of foreign origin :

| | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| дóктор, | doctor | докторá |
| профéссор, | professor | профессорá |
| кúчер, | coachman | кучерá |

(4) Some masculine nouns have both endings in the nominative plural : **ы** and **а**. The different endings usually denote different meanings :

| | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| хлѣбы, loaves of bread | хлебá, grain (various kinds) |
| цвѣты, flowers | цветá, colours |
| мехы, bellows | мехá, furs |

(5) Some masculine nouns take **ья** as the termination for nominative plural. The other cases also retain the **ь** :

Nom. -ья; *Gen.* -ьев; *Dat.* -ьям;

Instr. -ьями; *Loc.* -ьях

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| брат, brother, | брáт-ья, | брáт-ьев, | брáт-ьям |
| камень, stone, | камѣн-ья, | камѣн-ьев, | камѣн-ьям |
| стул, chair, | стúл-ья, | стúл-ьев, | стúл-ьям |
| сук, bough, | сúч-ья, | сúч-ьев, | сúч-ьям |
| уголь, coal, | úгол-ья, | úгол-ьев, | úгол-ьев |
| лист, leaf, | лíst-ья, | лíst-ьев, | лíst-ьям |

Instr. -ьями, *Loc.* -ьях

(6) The following masculine nouns are declined in the same manner, with the exception of genitive plural, which takes **ей** (not **ьев**) :

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| друг, friend, | друз-ья́, | друз-ей, | друз-ья́м |
| князь, prince, | княз-ья́, | княз-ей, | княз-ья́м |
| муж, husband, | муж-ья́, | муж-ей, | муж-ья́м |
| зять, son-in-law, | зят-ья́, | зят-ей, | зят-ья́м |

Instr. -ья́ми, *Loc.* -ья́х

The nouns : сын (son), кум (godfather, gossip) take the suffix **ов** besides **ья** in the plural :

| | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| сын-ов-ья́, | сын-ов-ей, | сын-ов-ья́м |
| кум-ов-ья́, | кум-ов-ей, | кум-ов-ья́м |

Instr. -ов-ья́ми, *Loc.* -ов-ья́х

(7) The nouns сосѣд (neighbour), чорт [чѣрт] (devil),

are declined as hard nouns in the singular, but as soft nouns in the plural :

| | | |
|---------------|------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | сосѣд-и, | чѣрт-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | сосѣд-ей, | чѣрт-ѣй |
| <i>Dat.</i> | сосѣд-ям, | чѣрт-ѣм |
| <i>Acc.</i> | сосѣд-ей, | чѣрт-ѣй |
| <i>Instr.</i> | сосѣд-ями, | чѣрт-ѣми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | сосѣд-ях, | чѣрт-ѣх |

(8) Most masculine nouns ending in **ин** (usually denoting a person of a certain nationality or calling) drop this termination in all the cases of the plural, taking **е** or **а** for the nominative plural (occasionally **ы**) :

| | | <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> |
|--------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| рѣмлян-ин, | Roman | рѣмлян-е | рѣмлян |
| англичѣн-ин, | Englishman | англичѣн-е | англичѣн |
| христиан-ѣн, | Christian | христиан-е | христиан |
| граждан-ѣн, | citizen | граждан-е | граждан |
| | | [граждѣн-е] | |
| крестьян-ин, | peasant | крестьян-е | крестьян |
| татѣр-ин, | Tartar | татѣр-ы | татѣр |
| | | [татѣр-е] | |
| болгѣр-ни, | Bulgarian | болгѣр-ы | болгѣр |
| | | [болгѣр-е] | |
| бѣр-ин, | squire | бѣр-е | бѣр |
| господ-ѣн, | master | господ-ѣ | господ |
| | gentleman | | |
| хозѣя-ин, | master | хозѣя-ев-а ¹ | хозѣя-ев |

Dat. -ам ; *Acc.* as *Gen.* ; *Instr.* -ами ; *Loc.* -ах

(9) A few masculine nouns have the same form in the genitive plural as in the nominative singular :

| <i>Nom. Sing.</i> | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| вѣлос, hair | волѣс |
| драгѣн, dragoon | драгѣн |
| тѣрок, Turk | тѣрок |

¹ The suffix **ев** is inserted throughout the plural.

| <i>Nom. Sing.</i> | | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|---|--|----------------------|
| солдát, soldier | | солдát |
| глаз, eye | | глаз |
| аршín, arshin (measure) | | аршín |
| сажéнь, 3 arshin measure | | сáжен (also саженéй) |
| человéк, man | | человéк ¹ |
| раз, time (in the sense : once, twice, etc.) | | раз |
| чулóк, stocking | | чулóк |
| цыгáн, gipsy | | цыгáн |
| кадét, cadet | | кадét |
| (10) <i>Nom.</i> Госпóд-ь (Lord) | | Христ-óс (Christ) |
| <i>Gen.</i> Господ-а | | Христ-á |
| <i>Dat.</i> Господ-у | | Христ-ý |
| <i>Acc.</i> Господ-а | | Христ-á |
| <i>Instr.</i> Господ-ом | | Христ-óm |
| <i>Loc.</i> Господ-е | | Христ-é |

§ 21. *The Russian Accent as it affects the Parts of Speech.*

In the chapter on Russian sounds (§§ 5, 11, 14) the student's attention has been drawn to the importance of the accent for the correct pronunciation of Russian words, and for the correct fusing of the individual sounds that go to make up the words themselves. As the accent has a tendency to shift from one syllable to another in the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs, the student will have to form the habit of pronouncing the words in each case with the right stress due to the respective form of the word. As it is impossible to give the numerous and various instances of accent-shifting within the scope of this work, the author has to confine himself to a few hints on the main types of accent-shifting, giving only a limited number

¹ This form of the genitive plural is used if it is preceded by a number:

пять человек, five people ; несколько человек, a few people ;
but : много людей, many people (*Nom.* люди). (See § 54b.)

of examples. For the rest the student will have to fall back on accented texts, and to make a point of memorizing the diverse changes of accents in words. As a more detailed guide to the Russian accent, relating to all the parts of speech, and containing extensive lists of the most essential words used in the Russian language, the author would recommend his work, 'A Guide to the Russian Accent' (published by David Nutt). This work shows at a glance the manifold variations of the accent as they affect the morphological changes of all parts of speech.

§ 22. *The Accent in the Declension of Masculine Nouns.*
(See §§ 18-20.)

A great number of masculine nouns retain the accent on the same syllable in all the cases of both singular and plural :

вóрон, raven, вóрона, -у, -ом, -ы, etc.
вопрóс, question, вопрóса, -у, -ом, -ы, etc.

In many instances, however, the accent is shifted in declension from the stem to the case-endings. The shifting of the accent in such instances is usually effected in this manner :

(1) Shifting begins with the genitive singular and extends to all the cases of both singular and plural (excepting accusative singular where the noun denotes an inanimate object, in which case the accusative is the same as the nominative).

Singular

| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| топóр, axe | топорá | -ý | -óм | -é |
| столя́р, joiner | столяра́ | -ý | -óм | -é |
| плод, fruit | плода́ | -ý | -óм | -é |

Plural

| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| топоры́ | -óв | -áм | -áми | -áх |
| столяры́ | -óв | -áм | -áми | -áх |
| плоды́ | -óв | -áм | -áми | -áх |

To this accent-type belong a number of simple, mainly monosyllabic, masculine nouns ; also nouns terminating in **уѣ, ж, ч, ш** ; and many nouns with an accented vowel before the final consonant, such as ending in : **ѣц, ѣк, ѣк, ѣж, ѣч.**

| | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| конѣц, end | старѣк, old man | дурѣк, fool |
| морѣк, sailor | мятѣж, mutiny | богѣч, rich man |

(2) Shifting begins with the nominative plural, extending to all the cases of the plural (the accent of the oblique cases of the singular remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular) :

| | <i>Nom. Pl.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| дар, gift | дарѣ } | -ѣв | -ѣм | -ѣми | -ѣх |
| вѣчер, evening | вѣчерѣ } | | | | |

NOTE. To this accent-type belong all the masculine nouns which take **ѣ, ѣ** as the termination of the nominative plural. (See § 20, group 3.)

(3) Shifting begins with the genitive plural, extending to the remaining cases of the plural. (All the cases of the singular, and nominative plural, have the accent on the stem ; if the noun denotes an inanimate object the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural) :

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|--|
| | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> | |
| волк, wolf | -ѣ | -у | -ѣм | -ѣ | |
| голубѣ, pigeon | -ѣ | -ю | -ѣм | -ѣ | |

| | <i>Plural</i> | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|--|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> | |
| вѣлки | -ѣв | -ѣм | -ѣми | -ѣх | |
| голубѣи | -ѣѣ | -ѣм | -ѣми | -ѣх | |

(4) Shifting begins with the genitive singular, extending to all the cases of singular and plural, *but with the exception of nominative plural* :

| | | <i>Singular</i> | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|--|
| | | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> | |
| ГВОЗДЬ, nail | } | -Я | -Ю | -ѢМ | -Ѣ | |
| КОНЬ, horse | | | | | | |
| | | <i>Plural</i> | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> | | |
| ГВОЗДИ | } | -ѢЙ | -ЯМ | -ЯМИ | -ЯХ | |
| КОНИ | | | | | | |

23. Declension of Neuter Nouns.

Neuter nouns terminate in **о**, **е**, **ѣ**, and a few in **мя** :

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> | <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> |
| <i>Nom.</i> -о | -е, -ѣ | -а | -я |
| <i>Gen.</i> -а | -я, -ѣ | — | -ей |
| <i>Dat.</i> -у | -ю, -ѹ | -ам | -ям |
| <i>Acc.</i> -о | -е, -ѣ | -а | -я |
| <i>Instr.</i> -ом | -ем, -ѣм | -ами | -ями |
| <i>Loc.</i> -е | -е, -ѣ | -ах | -ях |

Note that the terminations of the **oblique** cases of both singular and plural of neuter nouns are identical with those of masculine nouns.

Examples :

| | | <i>Singular</i> | |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | дѣл-о (affair) | пѡл-е (field) | ружь-ѣ (rifle) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | дѣл-а | пѡл-я | ружь-ѣ |
| <i>Dat.</i> | дѣл-у | пѡл-ю | ружь-ю |
| <i>Acc.</i> | дѣл-о | пѡл-е | ружь-ѣ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | дѣл-ом | пѡл-ем | ружь-ѣм |
| <i>Loc.</i> | дѣл-е | пѡл-е | ружь-ѣ |

Plural

| | | | |
|---------------|---------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | дел-á | пол-я́ | ру́жь-я |
| <i>Gen.</i> | дел | пол-е́й | ру́же-й |
| <i>Dat.</i> | дел-áм | пол-я́м | ру́жь-ям |
| <i>Acc.</i> | дел-á | пол-я́ | ру́жь-я |
| <i>Instr.</i> | дел-áми | пол-я́ми | ру́жь-ями |
| <i>Loc.</i> | дел-áх | пол-я́х | ру́жь-ях |

§ 24. NOTE 1. *Fleeting o, e.*

The vowels **o**, **e** are occasionally inserted in the genitive plural before the end-consonant of the stem for the sake of euphony :

| <i>Nom. Sing.</i> | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|----------------------|---|
| зло, evil | зол |
| дно, bottom | дон |
| кольцо́, ring | ко́лец (note : ь changes into e) |
| окно́, window | о́кон |
| се́рдце, heart | се́рдце |
| око́шко, window | око́шек |
| сте́кло, glass, pane | сте́кол |
| крéсло, arm-chair | крéсел |
| ведро́, bucket | ве́дер |
| письмо́, letter | пи́сем (ь changes into e) |

§ 25. NOTE 2.

Neuter nouns ending in **ие** (mainly belonging to the large class of abstract nouns derived from verbs) have the terminations **ии** for locative singular and **ий** for genitive plural :

| | <i>Loc. Sing.</i> | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| гуля́н-ие, walk, promenade | гуля́н-ии | гуля́н-ий |
| име́н-ие, estate | име́н-ии | име́н-ий |
| жела́н-ие, wish | жела́н-ии | жела́н-ий |

Neuter nouns ending in **ье** have the termination of **ьев** for their genitive plural :

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
| плáть-е, clothes | плáть-ев |
| кúшань-е, food | кúшань-ев |

§ 26. NOTE 3.

Some neuter nouns take the termination of masculine nouns in the nominative plural :

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| плечó, shoulder | плéчи, плеч, плечáм, -áми, -áх |
| дно, bottom | дны [also дóнья] |
| я́блоко, apple | я́блоки (<i>gen.</i> я́блок and я́блоков) |
| словéчко, little word, mot | словéчки (<i>gen.</i> словéчек) |
| очкó, eye, bud; point in games | очки (<i>gen.</i> очкóв), eye-glasses |

Augmentative masculine nouns terminating in **ище** are treated as masculine nouns, and they follow the soft masculine declension. An exception forms the word **кладбище** (churchyard), which is a pure neuter noun and belongs to the soft neuter class.

§ 26a. NOTE 4.

A few neuter nouns have some irregularities in the declension of their plural :

| | <i>Nom. Pl.</i> | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Inst.</i> | <i>Loc.</i> |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| (1) óко, eye (only used in poetic expressions) | óчи | очéй, | -áм, | -áми, | -áх |
| ýхо, ear | ýши | ушéй, | -áм, | -áми, | -áх |
| колéно { 1. tribe | 1. колéна | колéн, | -ам, | -ами, | -ах |
| 2. knee | 2. колéни | колéней, | -ям, | -ями, | -ях |
| 3. link | 3. колéнья | колéньев, | -ьям, | -ьями, | -ьях |

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------|----------|---------------------|
| дерево, tree | дерёвья | дерёвьев | } -ьям, -ьями, -ьях |
| перо, pen, nib | пёрья | пёрьев | |
| крыло, wing | крылья | крыльев | |
| шило, awl | шилья | шильев | |

(2) *не́бо* (heaven) and *чу́до* (miracle) have the suffix *ec* inserted in all the cases of the plural :

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------|-----------------|---------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | не́б-о | чу́д-о | неб-ес-а́ | чуд-ес-а́ |
| <i>Gen.</i> | не́б-а | чу́д-а | неб-е́с | чуд-е́с |
| <i>Dat.</i> | не́б-у | чу́д-у | неб-ес-а́м | чуд-ес-а́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | не́б-о | чу́д-о | неб-ес-а́ | чуд-ес-а́ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | не́б-ом | чу́д-ом | неб-ес-а́ми | чуд-ес-а́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | не́б-е | чу́д-е | неб-ес-а́х | чуд-ес-а́х |

(3) A few soft neuter nouns ending in *мя*, and *дитя́* (child), have irregular case-endings both in the singular and plural :

| (a) | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Pl.</i> | (b) | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Pl.</i> |
|---------------|--------------|------------|-----|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | дитя́ | де́т-и | | вре́м-я | врем-ен-а́ |
| <i>Gen.</i> | дитя́-ти | дет-е́й | | вре́м-ен-и | врем-е́н |
| <i>Dat.</i> | дитя́-ти | де́т-ям | | вре́м-ен-и | врем-ен-а́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | дитя́ | дет-е́й | | вре́м-я | врем-ен-а́ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | дитя́-тею | дет-ьми́ | | вре́м-ен-ем | врем-ен-а́ми |
| | [дитёй] | [дет-я́ми] | | | |
| <i>Loc.</i> | дитя́-ти | де́т-ях | | вре́м-ен-и | врем-ен-а́х |

To group (a) can be added a number of nouns denoting the young offspring of animals. They have the suffix *ёнок* [or *онок* after a root ending in *к* or *д*, which are commuted into *ч* or *ж*]. Their plurals take *ята́* or *ата́*. The singular is declined as a masculine noun, dropping the *о* before the *к*; the plural is treated as that of a neuter noun :

Singular

| | (foal) | (wolf cub) | (bear cub) | (puppy) |
|---------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | жереб-ёнок | волч-ёнок ¹ | медвеж-ёнок ¹ | щ-ёнок |
| <i>Gen.</i> | жереб-ёнк-а | волч-ёнк-а | медвеж-ёнк-а | щ-ёнк-а |
| <i>Dat.</i> | жереб-ёнк-у | волч-ёнк-у | медвеж-ёнк-у | щ-ёнк-у |
| <i>Acc.</i> | жереб-ёнк-а | волч-ёнк-а | медвеж-ёнк-а | щ-ёнк-а |
| <i>Instr.</i> | жереб-ёнк-ом | волч-ёнк-ом | медвеж-ёнк-ом | щ-ёнк-ом |
| <i>Loc.</i> | жереб-ёнк-е | волч-ёнк-е | медвеж-ёнк-е | щ-ёнк-е |

Plural

| | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | жереб-ят-а | волч-ят-а | медвеж-ят-а | щ-ен-ята [щенки] |
| <i>Gen.</i> | жереб-ят | волч-ят | медвеж-ят | щ-ен-ят |
| <i>Dat.</i> | жереб-ят-ам | волч-ят-ам | медвеж-ят-ам | щ-ен-ят-ам |
| <i>Acc.</i> | жереб-ят | волч-ят | медвеж-ят | щ-ен-ят |
| <i>Instr.</i> | жереб-ят-ами | волч-ят-ами | медвеж-ят-ами | щ-ен-ят-ами |
| <i>Loc.</i> | жереб-ят-ах | волч-ят-ах | медвеж-ят-ах | щ-ен-ят-ах |

NOTE. By analogy a child is also called ребёнок, *pl.* ребята. It conforms to the above mode of declension.

To this class belong :

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| поросёнок, sucking pig | цыплёнок, chicken |
| ослёнок, foal of an ass | телёнок, calf |
| ягнёнок, lamb | котёнок, kitten |
| | etc. |

According to group (3) (*b*) are declined the following neuter nouns ending in *мя* :

| |
|---|
| бремя, burden (used only in the singular) |
| плёмя, tribe |
| тёмя, crown of the head (used only in the singular) |
| сёмя, seed (<i>gen. pl.</i> семян) |
| стрёмя, stirrup (<i>gen. pl.</i> стремьян) |
| знамя, banner |
| пламя, flame (used only in the singular) |
| имя, name |
| вымя, udder |

¹ Also : волчёнок, медвежёнок.

§ 27. *The Accent as it affects the Declension of Neuter Nouns.*

(1) (a) Polysyllabic nouns terminating in **о** and **е**, with the last syllable unaccented, retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of both singular and plural :

| | |
|----------------|---|
| заня́тие, | occupation, -я, -ю, -ем, -и |
| му́жество, | manliness, -а, -у, -ом, -е |
| | courage |
| жили́ще, | habitation, -а, -у, -ем, -е |
| простра́нство, | space, -а, -у, -ом, -е |
| зе́ркало, | mirror (shifts the accent to the case-ending in the plural) |
| о́зеро, | lake (shifts the accent to the second syllable in the plural) |

| | | |
|---------------|------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | зеркала́ | озёра |
| <i>Gen.</i> | зерка́л | озёр |
| <i>Dat.</i> | зеркала́м | озёрам |
| <i>Acc.</i> | зеркала́ | озёра |
| <i>Instr.</i> | зеркала́ми | озёрами |
| <i>Loc.</i> | зеркала́х | озёрах |

(b) If the terminations **о** and **е** in polysyllabic neuter nouns are accented, the accent is on the case-endings in declension :

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| боже́ство, Deity | } <i>Sing.</i> -а́, -у́, -о́м, -е́ |
| серебро́, ¹ silver | |
| лезве́, sharp edge | |
| | <i>Pl.</i> -а́, -а́м, -а́ми, -а́х |
| | -я́, -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х |

Exceptions are the following nouns, terminating in accented **о** and **е**, which shift the accent back by one syllable in the entire plural :

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|---------|-------------------|
| веретенó, spindle, | веретёна, | веретён | } -ам, -ами, -ах |
| долото́, chisel, | долота́, | долот | |
| колесо́, wheel, | колёса, | колёс | |
| решето́, sieve, | решёта, | решёт | |
| ружьё́, rifle, | ру́жья, | ру́жей | -ьям, -ьями, -ьях |

¹ Has no plural.

(2) (a) Dissyllabic nouns in **o** and **e**, with the accent on the first syllable in the nominative singular, retain the accent on the same syllable in all the cases of the singular ; in the plural the accent is shifted to the case-ending :

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| слѡво, word, слѡва | } -у, -ом, -е | словá, слов | } -ám, -áми, -áх |
| мѣсто, place, мѣста | | местá, мест | |
| пѡле, field, пѡля | } -ю, -ем, -е | полjá, полéй | } -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х |
| мѡре, sea, мѡря | | морjá, морéй | |

(b) Dissyllabic nouns in **o** and **e**, with the accent on the last syllable in the nominative singular, retain the same accent in all the cases of the singular ; in the plural the accent is shifted back to the first syllable :

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| селѡ, village | } -á, -ý, -óm, -é | сѣла | } -ам, -ами, -ах |
| гнездѡ, nest | | гнезда | |
| лицѡ, face | | лица | |

(3) Neuter nouns terminating in **мя** retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular ; in the plural the accent falls on the case-endings. (See § 26a.)

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|------------------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> ѡм-я | плѣм-я | им-ен-á | плем-ен-á |
| <i>Gen.</i> ѡм-ен-и | плѣм-ен-и | им-ѣн | плем-ѣн |
| <i>Dat.</i> ѡм-ен-и | плѣм-ен-и | им-ен-ám | плем-ен-ám |
| <i>Acc.</i> ѡм-я | плѣм-я | им-ен-á | плем-ен-á |
| <i>Instr.</i> ѡм-ен-ем | плѣм-ен-ем | им-ен-áми | плем-ен-áми |
| <i>Loc.</i> ѡм-ен-и | плѣм-ен-и | им-ен-áх | плем-ен-áх |

Exception :

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> знáм-я (banner) | знам-ѣн-а |
| <i>Gen.</i> знáм-ен-и | знам-ѣн |
| <i>Dat.</i> знáм-ен-и | знам-ѣн-ам |
| <i>Acc.</i> знáм-я | знам-ѣн-а |
| <i>Instr.</i> знáм-ен-ем | знам-ѣн-ами |
| <i>Loc.</i> знáм-ен-и | знам-ѣн-ах |

§ 28. Declension of Feminine Nouns.

Feminine nouns terminating in **а**, **я** take the following case-endings in singular and plural :

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| | <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> | <i>Hard</i> | <i>Soft</i> |
| <i>Nom.</i> | -а | -я | -ы | -и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | -ы | -и | — ¹ | -ь |
| <i>Dat.</i> | -е | -е | -ам | -ям |
| <i>Acc.</i> | -у | -ю | -ы | -и |
| <i>Instr.</i> | -ою [-ой] | -ею [-ей] | -ами | -ями |
| | | -ёю [-ѐ] | | |
| <i>Loc.</i> | -е | -е | -ах | -ях |

Examples :

| | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | вод-á (water) | ба́н-я (bath) | во́д-ы | ба́н-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | вод-ы́ | ба́н-и | вод | ба́н-ь |
| <i>Dat.</i> | вод-é | ба́н-е | вод-áм | ба́н-ям |
| <i>Acc.</i> | вод-у | ба́н-ю | во́д-ы | ба́н-и |
| <i>Instr.</i> | вод-о́ю [-о́й] | ба́н-ею [-ей] | вод-а́ми | ба́н-ями |
| <i>Loc.</i> | вод-é | ба́н-е | вод-а́х | ба́н-ях |

NOTE 1. Animate feminine nouns have the same case-ending in the accusative plural as in the genitive plural :

| | | | |
|----------|---------------|--|--------|
| ба́ба, | peasant woman | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{gen. pl.} \\ \textit{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$ | баб |
| ры́ба, | fish | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{gen. pl.} \\ \textit{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$ | рыб |
| коза́, | she-goat | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{gen. pl.} \\ \textit{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$ | коз |
| сестра́, | sister | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{gen. pl.} \\ \textit{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$ | сестѐр |

NOTE 2. As no **ы** can stand after **г**, **к**, **х**, **ж**, **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, its place is taken by **и** in genitive singular and nominative plural :

¹ As the stem.

| | | <i>Gen. Sing.</i> | <i>Nom. Pl.</i> |
|---------|--------|-------------------|-----------------|
| рука́, | hand | руки́ | ру́ки |
| нога́, | leg | ноги́ | но́ги |
| рубáха, | shirt | рубáхи | рубáхи |
| свечá, | candle | свечи́ | свечи́ |
| но́ша, | load | но́ши | но́ши |
| ро́ща, | copse | ро́щи | ро́щи |

NOTE 3. Feminine nouns terminating in **ая**, **ея** have the case-endings **ий** and **ей** in genitive plural :

| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| ста́я, flock, esp. birds | стай |
| змея́, snake | змеи́ |
| шея́, neck | шей |

NOTE 4. Instrumental terminations **ою**, **сю**, **ёю** are frequently shortened into **ой**, **ей**, **ёй**, and are pronounced as a diphthong.

§ 29. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.*

If the stem¹ of a feminine noun ends in a double consonant, **о** or **е** is inserted in the genitive plural before the end-consonant for ease of pronunciation :

| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| овца́, sheep | овец |
| доска́, board | досок |
| ру́чка, penholder, or small hand | ручек |
| ко́шка, cat | кошек |
| игла́, needle | игол |
| сосна́, pine-tree | сосен |
| ку́кла, doll | кукол |
| земля́, earth | земель |
| пáлка, stick | пáлок |
| сестра́, sister | сестёр |

When a feminine noun ends in **ня**, the genitive plural often

¹ Word without case-ending or other inflexion.

has an inserted **о** or **е** before the **н**; the soft sign **ь** is dropped and the final **н** is hard :

Gen. Pl.

| | | |
|--------|-----------|-------------------------|
| бáсна, | fable | бáсен |
| пéсна, | song | пéсен |
| кúхня, | kitchen | кúхон (but also кúхонь) |
| сóтня, | a hundred | сóтен |
| бáшня, | tower | бáшен |

but: { бáрышня, young lady бáрышень
дерéвня, village деревéнь

й and **ь** in penultimate syllable of nominative singular are changed into **е** in genitive plural :

Gen. Pl.

| | |
|----------------------|--------|
| свáдьба, wedding | свáдеб |
| судьбá, fate | судéб |
| ня́нька, nursemaid | ня́нек |
| ше́йка, little neck | ше́ек |
| ле́йка, watering-can | ле́ек |
| копéйка, copeck | копéек |
| ча́йка, sea-gull | ча́ек |

§ 30. Some Irregularities in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.

(1) A number of masculine nouns have terminations of feminine nouns. These are declined as feminine nouns, although they retain their masculine character and meaning :

| | |
|---|----------------|
| дядя, uncle | юноша, youth |
| судья, judge | слугá, servant |
| Ко́ля ¹ : diminutive of Никола́й | |
| Са́ша ¹ : diminutive of Алекса́ндр; etc. | |

When such nouns are used with an adjective or pronoun the adjective or pronoun takes the respective masculine terminations: **ый, ий, ой** :

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| мой дядя, my uncle | ста́рый слугá, old servant |
| наш судья, our judge | |

¹ Diminutives of names of persons (*masc.* and *fem.*) end in **я** (or **а** after **ж, ч, ш, щ**).

(2) A large number of feminine nouns terminating in **ия** have the case-ending **ии** for dative and locative singular and **ий** for genitive plural :

| | <i>Dat. and Loc. Sing.</i> | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| ли́ния, line | ли́нии | ли́ний |
| импе́рия, empire | импе́рии | импе́рий |
| ли́лия, lily | ли́лии | ли́лий |
| мо́лния, lightning | мо́лнии | мо́лний |
| рели́гия, religion | рели́гии | рели́гий |
| Англи́я, England | Англи́и | } No plural |
| Росси́я, Russia | Росси́и | |

(3) Feminine nouns ending in **ья́** (**я́** accented) have the case-ending **ей** in genitive plural :

| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| сви́нья, swine | сви́ней |
| ска́мья, bench | скаме́й |
| ста́тья, item, article | стате́й |
| се́мья, family | семе́й |

But those feminine nouns which end in **ья** (**я** not accented) have **ий** as the case-ending of genitive plural :

| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|------------------------|---|
| лгу́нья, liar (female) | лгу́ний |
| гос́тья, lady visitor | гос́тий (to distinguish this form from госте́й, which is gen. pl. of гость) |

болту́нья, chatterbox болту́ний

(4) Some feminine nouns terminating in **жа, ша, ча, ща** have **ей** in genitive plural :

| | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|---|-----------------|
| вожжа́, horse's lead | вожже́й |
| при́тча, parable | при́тчей |
| ханжа́, hypocrite (<i>masc and fem.</i>) | ханже́й |
| юноша́, youth (<i>masc.</i>) | юношей |
| свеча́, candle | свече́й |

A few other feminine nouns (in я) also have ей as the case-ending of genitive plural :

| | | <i>Gen. Pl.</i> |
|------------------|---------|-----------------|
| до́ля, | part | долéй |
| за́ря, | dawn | за́ре́й |
| дядя, | uncle | дяде́й |
| (<i>masc.</i>) | | |
| ноздря́ | nostril | ноздрéй |
| запа́дня, | trap | запа́днéй |
| кле́шня, | claw | кле́шнéй |

§ 31. *Feminine Nouns terminating in ь.*

Feminine nouns ending in ь have a distinctive mode of declension. They are characterized by the case-ending и in genitive, dative, and locative singular. To this class belong a number of simple [original] nouns, such as кость (bone); смерть (death), весть (news, message), etc., as well as the vast class of derivative abstract nouns with the suffix ость (mainly derived from adjectives and corresponding to the English suffix *ness*).

Example :

| | | |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | двер-ь (door) | двéр-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | двéр-и | двéр-éй |
| <i>Dat.</i> | двéр-и | двéр-я́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | двер-ь | двéр-и |
| <i>Instr.</i> | двéр-ью | двер-я́ми [двер-ьми́] |
| <i>Loc.</i> | двéр-и | двер-я́х |

Fleeting о. In feminine nouns ending in ь, the letter о before the final consonant of the stem is dropped only in a few nouns. In the singular the only cases affected are genitive, dative, locative, and in the plural all the cases :

Singular

| | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | цѣрков-ѣ (church) | любѡв-ѣ (love) | лож-ѣ (falsehood) | рож-ѣ (rye) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | цѣркв-и | любв-и | лж-и | рж-и |
| <i>Dat.</i> | цѣркв-и | любв-и | лж-и | рж-и |
| <i>Acc.</i> | цѣрков-ѣ | любѡв-ѣ | лож-ѣ | рож-ѣ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | цѣрков-ѣю | любѡв-ѣю | лож-ѣю | рож-ѣю |
| <i>Loc.</i> | цѣркв-и | любв-и | лж-и | рж-и |

Plural

Plural not used

| | | |
|---------------|-----------|--|
| <i>Nom.</i> | цѣркв-и | } The dative, instrumental, and locative cases are declined according to the hard declension |
| <i>Gen.</i> | цѣркв-ѣй | |
| <i>Dat.</i> | цѣркв-ѣм | |
| <i>Acc.</i> | цѣркв-и | |
| <i>Instr.</i> | цѣркв-ѣми | |
| <i>Loc.</i> | цѣркв-ѣх | |

NOTE 1. When Любѡвъ denotes the name of a woman, the **o** is retained in all the cases.

NOTE 2. Feminine nouns of the abstract class with the suffix **ость** never drop the **o** in declension.

§ 31a. There is one masculine noun in this class, terminating in **ь** :

| | | |
|---------------|---------------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | пут-ѣ (road, way) | пут-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | пут-и | пут-ѣй |
| <i>Dat.</i> | пут-и | пут-ѣм |
| <i>Acc.</i> | пут-ѣ | пут-и |
| <i>Instr.</i> | пут-ѣм ¹ | пут-ѣми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | пут-и | пут-ѣх |

¹ In this case only there is a masculine case-ending.

§ 31b. A number of feminine nouns of the Ъ class throw their accent on to the case-ending in the locative case if the noun is preceded by the prepositions **в** (in) or **на** (on). The most frequently affected nouns of this class are :

| | <i>Locative</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| глушь, thicket, wilderness | в глуши́ |
| грудь, breast | на груди́ |
| грязь, mud | в грязи́ |
| дверь, door | на двери́ |
| кровь, blood | в крови́ |
| мель, sandbank | на мели́ |
| печь, stove | {на } печи́ |
| пыль, dust | в пыли́ |
| Русь, Russia | на Руси́ |
| связь, tie | в связи́ |
| соль, salt | в соли́ |
| степь, steppe | в степи́ |
| тень, shade | в тени́ |
| цепь, chain | на цепи́ |

§ 31c. Two feminine nouns ending in Ъ—мать, дочь—have the suffix **ер** inserted in all the cases of both singular and plural, with the exception of nominative and accusative singular :

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | доч-ь мат-ь | дóч-ер-и мáт-ер-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | дóч-ер-и мáт-ер-и | доч-ер-éй мат-ер-éй |
| <i>Dat.</i> | дóч-ер-и мáт-ер-и | доч-ер-я́м мат-ер-я́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | доч-ь мат-ь | доч-ер-éй мат-ер-éй |
| <i>Instr.</i> | дóч-ер-ью мáт-ер-ью | доч-ер-ьми́ мат-ер-ьми́ |
| | | [доч-ер-я́ми] [мат-ер-я́ми] |
| <i>Loc.</i> | дóч-ер-и мáт-ер-и | доч-ер-я́х мат-ер-я́х |

§ 32. *The Accent in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.*

(1) Most feminine nouns ending in *а, я*, in which the accent of the nominative singular does not fall on the case-ending, have a *fixed* accent which remains on the same syllable in all the cases of both singular and plural. In many feminine nouns the accent is not shifted in declension even when the accent is on the case-ending in nominative singular, particularly in derivative nouns with various inflexions, but also in many simple nouns.

Examples :

| | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| княжнá, princess | госпожá, mistress |
| клеветá, slander | толпá, crowd |

(2) When the accent shifts it usually conforms to one of two modes :

(a) The accent remains on the case-endings in both singular and plural, with the exception of nominative plural, where it goes back to the vowel of the stem :

| | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> | <i>Singular</i> | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | вдовá (widow) | вдóвы | свечá (candle) | свéчи |
| <i>Gen.</i> | вдовы́ | вдов | свечи́ | свеч |
| <i>Dat.</i> | вдовé | вдова́м | свечé | свеча́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | вдову́ | вдов | свечу́ | свéчи |
| <i>Instr.</i> | вдово́ю | вдова́ми | свечо́ю | свеча́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | вдовé | вдова́х | свечé | свеча́х |

To this group belong the nouns : волнá, wave ; звездá,¹ star ; игрá, play ; иглá, needle ; овцá, sheep ; рекá, river ; свиньjá, pig ; сестрá,¹ sister ; слугá, servant ; травá, grass ; судья́, judge.

¹ Can also have the accent on the stem throughout the plural.

- (b) The accent remains on the case-ending in both singular and plural, *with the exception of accusative singular, nominative and accusative plural* :

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | борода́ (beard) | вода́ (water) | боро́ды | во́ды |
| <i>Gen.</i> | борода́ | вода́ | боро́д | вод |
| <i>Dat.</i> | бороде́ | воде́ | борода́м | вода́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | боро́ду | во́ду | боро́ды | во́ды |
| <i>Instr.</i> | бородо́ю | водо́ю | борода́ми | вода́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | бороде́ | воде́ | борода́х | вода́х |

To this group belong : голова́, head ; гора́, mountain ; губа́, lip ; доска́, board ; зима́, winter ; нога́, leg ; рука́, hand ; спина́, back ; and many others.

NOTE. The nouns жена́ (wife), тюрьма́ (prison), стрела́ (arrow) have the accent on the case-endings of the singular, but on the first syllable throughout the plural :

| | <i>Singular</i> | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | жена́ | стрела́ | тюрьма́ |
| <i>Gen.</i> | жены́ | стрелы́ | тюрьмы́ |
| <i>Dat.</i> | жене́ | стреле́ | тюрьме́ |
| <i>Acc.</i> | жену́ | стрелу́ | тюрьму́ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | жено́ю | стрело́ю | тюрьмо́ю |
| <i>Loc.</i> | жене́ | стреле́ | тюрьме́ |

| | <i>Plural</i> | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | жѐны | стрѐлы | тю́рьмы |
| <i>Gen.</i> | жѐн | стрел | тю́рем |
| <i>Dat.</i> | жѐнам | стрѐлам | тю́рьмам |
| <i>Acc.</i> | жѐн | стрѐлы | тю́рьмы |
| <i>Instr.</i> | жѐнами | стрѐлами | тю́рьмами |
| <i>Loc.</i> | жѐнах | стрѐлах | тю́рьмах |

- (3) In a few feminine nouns terminating in **ь**, the accent remains, in all the cases of both singular and plural, on

the same syllable as in the nominative singular, particularly if they are polysyllabic :

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| нóвость, news | благодáрность, gratitude |
| крóвaть, bedstead | |

But in the greater number of feminine nouns with the **ь** termination, the accent is on the same syllable as in the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular, and nominative plural ; in all the other cases of the plural (excepting the accusative of inanimate nouns) it falls on the case-endings :

Plural

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| вещь, thing, object | вѣщи, -ѣй, -ám, -áми, -áх |
| власть, power, authority | влáсти, -ѣй, -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х |
| гость, guest | гóсти, -ѣй, -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х |
| лóшадь, horse | лóшади, -ѣй, -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х |

§ 33. *Nouns* : (1) *used only in Singular* ; (2) *used only in Plural* ; (3) *of common gender*.

(1) *Used only in Singular*

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| картóфель (<i>m.</i>), | potatoes | крыжóвник, | gooseberries |
| капúста, | cabbage | мали́на, | raspberries |
| моркóвь (<i>f.</i>), | carrot(s) | смóрòдина, | currants |
| редй́ска, | radish(es) | мóлокó, | milk |
| редь́ка, | black radish(es) | мáсло, | butter |
| рéпа, | turnip(s) | соль (<i>f.</i>), | salt |
| земля́ника, | wild strawberries | пéрец, | pepper |
| зóлото, | gold | рожь (<i>f.</i>), | rye |
| серебрó, | silver | пшени́ца, | wheat |
| желе́зо, | iron | ячмéнь (<i>m.</i>), | barley |
| медь (<i>f.</i>), | copper, brass ¹ | овёс, | oats |
| клубнй́ка, | strawberries | горóх, | pear |
| брусй́нка, | red bilberries | гречи́ха, | buckwheat |

(2) *Used only in Plural*

(a) *Masculine*

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| близне́ц-ы́ [óв], | twins | обó-и [ев], | wallpaper |
| вес-ы́ [óв], | scales, weights | подштáпник-и [ов], | pants |
| дух-ы́ [óв], | scent | час-ы́ [óв], | clock, watch |
| коньк-ы́ [óв], | skates | штан-ы́ [óв], | trousers |
| носк-ы́ [óв], | socks | щи́щ-ы́ [óв], | pincers, tongs |

¹ жёлтая медь.

(b) *Feminine*

| | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| брюки [брюк], | trousers | подтяжки [подтяжек], | braces |
| вилы [вил], | garden fork | похороны [похорон], | funeral |
| враки [врак], | idle talk | прятки [пряток], | hide-and-seek |
| деньги [денег], | money | сливки [сливок], | cream |
| жмурки [жмуток], | blind-man's buff | сумерки [сумерек], | twilight |
| именины [именийн], | name's day | сутки [суток], | a day and a night (24 hours) |
| каникулы [каникул], | vacations, holidays | грабли [грабель], | garden rake |
| ковзлы [ковзел], | driver's seat | сани [саней], | sleigh |
| макароны [макарон], | macaroni | сени [сеней], | entrance-hall |
| ножницы [ножниц], | scissors | щи [щей], | cabbage |
| носилки [носилок], | stretcher | | soup |

(c) *Neuter*

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------|
| ворота [ворот], | gate | чернила [чернил], | ink |
| дрова [дров], | fire-wood | очки [очков], | spectacles |
| перила [перил], | hand-rail, parapet | | |

NOTE. The termination of genitive plural of the words enumerated in (a), (b), (c) is given in brackets.

The terminations of dative, instrumental, and locative are :

-ам, -ами, -ах of hard nouns ;

-ям, -ями, -ях of soft nouns.

The accent is on the same syllable as in the genitive in all the other oblique cases. Inserted *o* or *e* of the genitive cases is dropped in the other cases.

(3) *Of Common Gender*

| | | | |
|----------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| бродяга, | vagabond | плакса, | whimperer |
| бедняга, | poor creature, poor soul | поручка, | bail, surety |
| зайка, | stammerer | пьяница, | drunkard |
| калека, | cripple | разиня, | gaping fool |
| лакомка, | sweet-toothed person | рбвня, | equal |
| левша, | left-handed person | самоубийца, | suicide |
| малютка, | baby | самоучка, | self-taught person |
| невёжда, | ignoramus | сирота, | orphan |
| неряха, | untidy person | умница, | good boy or girl |
| обжора, | glutton | ханжа, | hypocrite, bigot |

NOTE. These are declined as feminine nouns.

§ 33a. *The Diminutives.*

1. Nearly every Russian noun (and some adjectives) can have a diminutive form. The diminutive can express :

(1) The diminutive value alone :

дом, house, (dim.) до́мик

(2) The diminutive, used in a sense of endearment :

го́лос, voice ; голосо́чек, dear little voice

(3) The diminutive, used in a sense of disdain :

голоси́шко, poor sort of voice

(1) The diminutive terminations of nouns are usually :

ик, ок, ек, ец for **masculine nouns** :

| | | | |
|---------|-------|-----------|--------------|
| дом, | house | до́мик, | little house |
| го́лос, | voice | голосо́к, | small voice |
| огóнь, | fire | огонёк, | little fire |
| хлеб, | bread | хлѐбец, | small loaf |

о, о, цо for **neuter nouns** :

| | | | |
|----------|--------|------------|---------------|
| окно́, | window | око́шко, | little window |
| письмо́, | letter | письмецо́, | little letter |

ка for **feminine nouns** :

| | | | |
|---------|------|----------|-------------|
| нога́, | leg | но́жка, | little leg |
| кни́га, | book | кни́жка, | little book |
| рука́, | hand | ру́чка, | little hand |

NOTE. **г, к** are commuted into **ж, ч**.

(2) The diminutive terminations for expressing endearment are :

ичек, очек for **masculine nouns** :

| | | | |
|---------|-------|-------------|---------------------|
| нож, | knife | но́жичек, | pretty little knife |
| го́лос, | voice | голосо́чек, | pretty little voice |

ичка, очка, ечка, енъка, ушка, юшка for **feminine nouns** :

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| сестра́, sister | сестри́чка, dear little sister |
| ма́ма, mother | маме́нька, dear mother |
| те́тя, aunt | те́тушка, dear auntie |
| ло́жка, spoon | ло́жечка, just a little spoon |
| дед, ¹ grandfather | де́душка, dear grandfather |
| дядя, ¹ uncle | дядю́шка, dear uncle |

ечко, ышко for **neuter nouns** :

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| кольцо́, ring | коле́чко, little ring |
| пе́рьо, feather | пе́рышко, little feather |

(3) The diminutive terminations expressing disdain are :

ишка, ишко for **masculine nouns** :

мальчи́шка, little boy, urchin
 городи́шко, little town (of no importance)

ёнка, онка for **feminine nouns** :

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| коро́ва, cow | корове́нка, poor sort of a cow |
| ла́вка, shop | лавчо́нка, poor sort of a shop |
| стару́ха, old woman | старушо́нка, insignificant old woman |

ишко for **neuter nouns** :

де́ло, affair, matter дели́шко, a trifling business [affair]

2. The most used diminutive terminations of adjectives are :

ова́тый, ева́тый, онький, енъкий :

| | |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| бе́лый, white | белова́тый, whitish |
| | беле́нький, white little . . . |
| си́ний, blue | синева́тый, bluish |
| | си́ненький, blue little . . . |
| мя́гкий, soft | мя́коне́кий, soft little . . |

The terminations **онький, енъкий** give the diminutive idea to the qualified noun rather than to the adjective itself.

¹ Masculine.

§ 33b. *Derivation-Suffixes in Nouns.*

Besides the termination-suffixes of diminutives, enumerated in § 33a, there are other suffixes which are used for the formation of derivative nouns from roots or from other words. While it is impossible to give here a list of all the derivation-suffixes of nouns, or to treat in detail of their functions in all cases, a few of the most important suffixes are given below.

ец [ица]

чик [чица]

щик [щица]

ник [ница]

тель [тельница].

In nouns formed from adjectives and verbs, which signify trade, calling, profession, etc.

любимец [ица],¹ favourite, from любить, to love.

купёц, merchant, from купить, to buy [купчиха].

разносчик [чица], hawker, from разносить, to carry round.

пильщик [щица], sawyer, from пилить, to saw.

огородник [ница], gardener, from огород [огородный], garden.

житель [тельница], inhabitant, from жить, to live.

ние [нье]) In verbal nouns (often with an abstract
тие [тье]) meaning) which signify action or state.

терпение, patience, from терпеть, to suffer.

учение [ученье], learning, study, from учить[ся], to learn.

(Derived from verbs whose past passive participle terminates in **нный**.)

понятие, conception, from понять, to understand.

жизнь, living, from жить, to live.

(Derived from verbs whose past passive participle terminates in **тый**. (See § 86b, B.)

¹ [ица] for feminine nouns; occasionally: [иха].

ство { In nouns formed from nouns, adjectives, and
ствие { verbs which signify :
 calling, trade, act or state.

рабство, slavery, from раб, slave.

действие, action, act, from действовать, to act.

(In abstract nouns formed from adjectives which
 (о)сть signify :

- (е)сть (1) property, quality, state ;
 (2) act, object.

бедность, poverty, from бедный, poor.

робость, timidity, from робкий, timid.

милость, grace, favour, from милый, charming,
 pleasing.

молодость, youth, from молодой, young.

свежесть, freshness, from свежий, fresh.

NOTE. For the function and meaning of *prefixes* in
 derivative nouns see § 63, note 4.

2. ADJECTIVES

§ 34. Russian adjectives have two forms :

- (1) The attributive (long) form.
 (2) The predicative (short) form.

Long form

но́вый дом, new house

но́вая кни́га, new book

ста́рое ви́но, old wine

ста́рые дома́, old houses

Short form

дом но́в, the house is new

кни́га но́ва, the book is new

ви́но ста́ро, the wine is old

дома́ ста́ры, the houses are old

The attributive (long) form stands in the same relation
 to other words in the sentence as the noun which it quali-
 fies, and, consequently, conforms with its noun as regards
 number, gender, and case :

В НОВЫЙ ДОМ, into the new house
 ОТ НОВОГО ДОМА, from the new house
 К НОВОМУ ДОМУ, towards the new house
 С НОВЫМ ДОМОМ, with the new house
 В НОВОМ ДОМЕ, in the new house

§ 35. Declension of Attributive Adjectives.

There are two classes of adjectives :

(1) the hard ; (2) the soft.

Their nominative terminations are :

| <i>Hard</i> | | | <i>Soft</i> | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|---------------------|
| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | | |
| <i>Sing.</i> | { -ый -ой | { -ое -е | { -ая -я | <i>Sing.</i> | { -ий -ей -ея |
| <i>Plur.</i> | { -ые [-ые]} | | | | { -ие |

Adjectives have six cases, as nouns. Their respective terminations are :

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|---------------|--|--------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> -ый, -ой <i>Soft.</i> -ий | { -ое -е | { -ая -яя | { -ые -ие |
| <i>Gen.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> -ого <i>Soft.</i> -его | | { -ой -ей | { -ых -их |
| <i>Dat.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> -ому <i>Soft.</i> -ему | | { -ой -ей | { -ым -им |
| <i>Acc.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> { as nom. ¹ or gen. } <i>Soft.</i> { for masc. } | as nom. for neuter | { -ую -ую | { as nom. ¹ or gen. } as nom. for for masc. neuter and fem. |
| <i>Instr.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> -ым <i>Soft.</i> -им | | { -ою [-ой] -ею [-ей] | { -ими -ими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | { <i>Hard.</i> -ом <i>Soft.</i> -ем | | { -ой -ей | { -ых -их |

NOTE. If the nominative terminations are *ой, ии, ее, ые*, the accent in declension will fall on the case-endings throughout.

¹ See § 18, note 1.

Examples :

| <i>Hard.</i> | <i>Masc. and Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|----------------|---|--------------|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> | бѣл-ый (white) бѣл-ое | бѣл-ая | бѣл-ые |
| <i>Gen.</i> | бѣл-ого | бѣл-ой | бѣл-ых |
| <i>Dat.</i> | бѣл-ому | бѣл-ой | бѣл-ым |
| <i>Acc. M.</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{бѣл-ый} \\ \text{ог} \\ \text{бѣл-ого} \end{array} \right\}$ <i>N.</i> бѣл-ое | бѣл-ую | <i>as</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{бѣл-ые} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{бѣл-ых} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | бѣл-ым | бѣл-ою [-ой] | бѣл-ыми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | бѣл-ом | бѣл-ой | бѣл-ых |

| <i>Soft.</i> | <i>Masc. and Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|----------------|---|--------------|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> | сѣн-ий сѣн-ее | сѣн-яя | сѣн-ие |
| <i>Gen.</i> | сѣн-его | сѣн-ей | сѣн-их |
| <i>Dat.</i> | сѣн-ему | сѣн-ей | сѣн-им |
| <i>Acc. M.</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{сѣн-ий} \\ \text{ог} \\ \text{сѣн-его} \end{array} \right\}$ <i>N.</i> сѣн-ее | сѣн-юю | <i>as</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{сѣн-ие} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{сѣн-их} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| <i>Instr.</i> | сѣн-им | сѣн-ею [-ей] | сѣн-ими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | сѣн-ем | сѣн-ей | сѣн-их |

NOTE 1. After **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ**, the vowel **ы** is supplanted by **и** in the case-endings :

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| тѣх-ие (soft, quiet) | свѣж-ие (fresh) |
| тѣх-их | свѣж-их |
| тѣх-им | свѣж-им |

After **ж, ч, ш, щ**, a non-accented **о** is changed into **е** :

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| свѣж-его (fresh) | горяч-его (hot) |
| свѣж-ему | горяч-ему |
| свѣж-ею | горяч-ею |
| свѣж-ей | горяч-ей |

NOTE 2. A number of nouns have terminations of adjectives. In declension they are treated as adjectives :

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|
| ни́ций, -ая, | beggar | пиро́жное, | sweet (pastry) |
| ко́рмчий | helmsman, | подлежа́щее, | subject |
| рулево́й | steersman | сказу́емое, | predicate |
| лесо́ничий, | forester | дополне́ние, | object |
| портно́й, | tailor | бу́лочная, | baker's shop |
| рядо́вой, | soldier (private) | вселе́нная, | universe |
| по́дданный, -ая, | subject | го́рничная, | chamber-maid |
| часово́й, | sentry | запя́тая, | comma |
| уче́нный, | savant | кладово́я, | store-room |
| сумасше́дший, | insane person | масте́рская, | workshop |
| -а́я | | мостово́я, | paved street |
| жа́ркбе, | roast beef | на́бережная, | quay |
| моро́женое, | ice-cream | пере́дняя, | entrance-hall |
| насеко́мое, | insect | сто́ловая, | dining-room |

§ 36. Predicative (short) adjectives are distinguished by genders and numbers, but are not declined according to cases ; their terminations are :

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Hard.</i> | — ¹ | -а | -о | -ы |
| <i>Soft.</i> | -ь | -я | -е | -и |
| | но́в | но́ва | но́во | но́вы |
| | си́нь | си́ня | си́не | си́ни (see § 40) |

§ 37. *Possessive Adjectives formed from Nouns.*

These are formed by adding **ов, ев, ёв, ин** (ын after ц) after the name of the person who possesses the object for which this form of adjective has been coined.

Examples :

| | |
|------|----------------------------|
| Пётр | Петро́в дом, Peter's house |
| дядя | дя́дин сад, uncle's garden |

For feminine and neuter the possessive adjectives end in :

| <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|-------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| -ова | -ово | -овы |
| -ева | -ево | -евы |
| -ёва | -ёво | -ёвы |
| -ина | -ино | -ины |
| -ына | -ыно | -ыны |

¹ Stem ending in a consonant.

Possessive adjectives are declined as follows :

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Петрѡв | Петрѡв-о | Петрѡв-а | Петрѡв-ы |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Петрѡв-а | Петрѡв-а | Петрѡв-ой | Петрѡв-ых |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Петрѡв-у | Петрѡв-у | Петрѡв-ой | Петрѡв-ым |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | Петрѡв-о | Петрѡв-у | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | Петрѡв-ым | Петрѡв-ым | Петрѡв-ою [-ой] | Петрѡв-ыми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | Петрѡв-ом | Петрѡв-ом | Петрѡв-ой | Петрѡв-ых |
| | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ильин | Ильин-ѡ | Ильин-а | Ильин-ы |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ильин-а | Ильин-а | Ильин-ой | Ильин-ых |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ильин-у | Ильин-у | Ильин-ой | Ильин-ым |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | Ильин-ѡ | Ильин-у | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | Ильин-ым | Ильин-ым | Ильин-ою [-ой] | Ильин-ими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | Ильин-ѡм | Ильин-ѡм | Ильин-ой | Ильин-ых |

NOTE. Nouns denoting proper names (mainly surnames) which have the terminations **ов**, **ев**, **ѣв**, **ин**, etc., are declined as possessive adjectives, except in the locative case, which has the case-ending of **е** in masculine and neuter (feminine has the ending **ой** in the locative).

Locative

| | |
|----------|-----------|
| Пушкин | Пушкин-е |
| Петрѡв | Петрѡв-е |
| Бородинѡ | Бородин-ѣ |
| Никѣтин | Никѣтин-е |

This form of possessive adjective frequently gives place to the genitive case of the person to whom the object belongs :

дом Петра́ instead of Петрѡв дом
сад дяди „ дядин сад

§ 38. A number of generic adjectives, or those pertaining to species, are formed by adding the terminations **ий**,

ья, ъе, ъи to the stem of the noun from which they are formed :

баран, ram, баран-ий, баран-ья, баран-ье, баран-ьи
 птица, bird, птич-ий, птич-ья, птич-ье, птич-ьи
 рыба, fish, рыб-ий, рыб-ья, рыб-ье, рыб-ьи

Adjectives of this class are declined as soft adjectives, with this difference, that the suffix **ь** is retained in the oblique cases before the case-endings.

Examples :

| | <i>Masc.</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Pl. (all genders)</i> |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | птич-ий | птич-ье | птич-ья | птич-ьи |
| <i>Gen.</i> | птич-ьего | птич-ьего | птич-ьей | птич-ьих |
| <i>Dat.</i> | птич-ьему | птич-ьему | птич-ьей | птич-ьим |
| <i>Acc.</i> | птич-ий | птич-ье | птич-ью | птич-ьи |
| <i>Instr.</i> | птич-ьим | птич-ьим | птич-ьєю | птич-ьими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | птич-ьем | | | птич-ьих |

(See § 51 (3), Pronouns : *чей, чья, чьё*.)

§ 39. Nearly all qualitative (attributive) adjectives have a short (predicative) form.

The following classes of adjectives lack the short form :

- (1) 'Species' or generic adjectives, ending in **чий, чья, чье**. (See § 38.)
- (2) Possessive adjectives, ending in **ов, ев, ын, ин**. (See § 37.)
- (3) A number of adjectives ending in **ский** :

| | | |
|--------------|---------|-------------------|
| ру́сский, | Russian | неме́цкий, German |
| англи́йский, | English | etc. |

(4) Material-adjectives :

| | |
|-------------|----------------|
| серебряный, | made of silver |
| золотой, | made of gold |
| медный, | made of copper |
| деревянный, | made of wood |
| железный, | made of iron |

NOTE 1. The qualitative adjective большóй has no short form of its own: that of великий is borrowed for the predicative form :

| | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| великий, great | велик, great, big |
|----------------|-------------------|

NOTE 2. The adjectives рад (glad) and горазд (capable, handy) have no long form.

§ 40. *Formation of the Predicative (short) form of Adjectives.*

The short form is obtained by dropping the termination of the long form $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ый} \\ \text{ой} \\ \text{ий} \end{array} \right.$, ой , in the masculine gender, and я and е in the feminine and neuter genders :

| | | |
|--------------|-------|---|
| живóй (live) | жив | } The short form of this adjective is not in frequent use |
| живáя | живá | |
| живóе | живó | |
| сíний (blue) | синь | |
| сíняя | синя́ | |
| сíнее | сине́ | |

Fleeting o or e. Occasionally o or e is inserted in the masculine short form for euphony where too many consonants remain on dropping the case-ending :

| | | |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------|
| мéлкий | } petty, small, | мéлок, мелка́ |
| мéлкая | | |
| корóткий | } short, | корóток, коротка́ |
| корóткая | | |

| | | | |
|----------|------------------|---------|---------|
| лёгкий | } light, | лёгок, | легка́ |
| лёгкая | | | |
| ло́вкий | } smart, | ло́вок, | ловка́ |
| ло́вая | | | |
| го́рький | } bitter, | го́рек, | горька́ |
| го́рная | | | |
| злой | } evil, vicious, | зол, | зла |
| злая | | | |
| по́лный | } full, | по́лон, | полна́ |
| по́лая | | | |
| кислый | } sour, | кисел, | кисла́ |
| кислая | | | |
| те́мный | } dark, | те́мен, | темна́ |
| те́мая | | | |
| у́мный | } clever, | уме́н, | умна́ |
| у́мая | | | |

§ 41. Degrees of Comparison.

When forming the comparative degree of an adjective from the positive degree, the following rules have to be observed :

(1) The terminations **ый, ой, ий, ая, яя, ое, ее** of the positive degree give place to the ending **ее** for all genders and numbers.

| <i>Positive</i> | <i>Comparative</i> |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| бе́лый, -ая, -ое, -ые | беле́е |
| си́ний, -ая, -ее, -ие | синее́ |

NOTE. The comparative degree also has two forms : the long (attributive) and the short (predicative).

The short comparative form has a predicative meaning, that is to say, it supplies the predicate of the sentence in which it appears. The short comparative is not declined.

The long (attributive) form of the comparative degree has the terminations **ейший, ейшая, ейшее, ейшие**.¹

¹ Or: айший, -ая, -ее, -ие, when stem ends in г, к, х.

This form is declined according to all cases of both singular and plural, and has three genders :

| | | |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| прям straight | { -ой -ая -ое | прям-ее, прям-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| бѣл white | { -ый -ая -ое | бел-ее, бел-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| слаб weak | { -ый -ая -ое | слаб-ее, слаб-ейший, -ая, -ее |

(2) If the stem of the adjective (adjective minus the case-ending) ends in **г, к, х**, the short (predicative) form takes **е** instead of **ее**, and the **г, к, х** are changed (commuted) respectively into **ж, ч, ш** ; **ск** is changed into **щ**. (See § 13a.)

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| крѣпк-ий, strong, -ая -ое | крѣпч-е, крепч-айший, -ая, -ее |
| стрѣг-ий, strict, -ая exacting -ое | стрѣж-е, стрѣж-айший, -ая, -ее |
| тѣх-ий, quiet, -ая soft -ое | тѣш-е, тиш-айший, -ая, -ее |
| лѣгк-ий, light, -ая easy -ое | лѣгч-е, легч-айший, -ая, -ее |
| плѣск-ий, flat, | плѣщ-е, плѣщ-айший, -ая, -ее |

Often **ь** is inserted, usually after an **л** :

| | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| мѣлк-ий, petty, -ая small, -ое shallow, | мѣльч-е, мельч-айший, -ая, -ее |
|---|--------------------------------|

There are, however, a few exceptions to the above rule :

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| бóйк-ий, lively, | бойч-ée, ¹ бойч |
| -ая | |
| -ое | |
| дiк-ий, wild, | дич-ée, ¹ дич |
| -ая | áйший, -ая, -ее ¹ |
| -ое | |
| лóвк-ий, smart, | ловч-ée, ¹ ловч |
| -ая | |
| -ое | |

(3) Adjective stems ending in д, т, frequently have these letters commuted into ж and ч; ет into щ, in the short form only :

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| твѣрд-ый, hard, | твѣрж-е, тверд-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| -ая | |
| -ое | |
| худ-óй, bad, lean, | хúж-е, хúд-ший, -ая, -ее |
| -ая | худ-ée, худ-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| -ое | |
| молóд-óй, young, | молóж-е, млáд-ший, -ая, -ее |
| -áя | |
| -óе | |
| чiст-ый, clean, | чiщ-е, чист-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| -ая | |
| -ое | |

Exceptions to this rule are :

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| богáт-ый, rich, | богáч-е, богат-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| -ая | also |
| -ое | богат-ée |
| гóрд-ый, haughty, | гóрд-ée, гóрд-ейший, -ая, -ее |
| -ая | |
| -ое | |

¹ Not frequently used; бóлее бóйкий, бóлее лóвкий, etc., are more often used.

(4) A few adjectives with the stem ending in **к** form their comparative degree (both in the short and the long forms) a little irregularly : they drop the **к** for the short form, and commute the **к** into **ч** for the long form :

рѣдк-ий, infrequent, рѣж-е, рѣдч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

слáдк-ий, sweet, слáщ-е, сладч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

корóтк-ий, short, корóч-е, кратч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

тóнк-ий, thin, тóньш-е, тонч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

узк-ий, narrow, ўж-е (long form lacking) or
-ая бóлее ўзкий¹
-ое

глубóк-ий, deep, глúб-же, глубоч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

ширóк-ий, wide, шíр-е, широч-айший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

дешѣв-ый, cheap, дешѣвл-е, дешев-ѣйший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

(5) A few adjectives shorten the attributive form of their comparative :

высóк-ий, high, выш-е, выс-ший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

¹ The adverbs : бóлее (more) and мѣнее (less) are occasionally used in colloquial speech with the positive, instead of the long comparative.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| низк-ий, low, -ая -ое | ниж-е, низ-ший, -ая, -ее |
| стар-ый, old, -ая -ое | стар-ше, стар-ший, (of persons only) стар-ее, стар-ейший, (of objects and persons) -ая, -ее |

(6) A few adjectives take their comparative form from another adjective with a similar meaning :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| велик-ий, great, -ая -ое | больше, больший, -ая, -ее |
| мал-ый, small, -ая -ое | меньше, меньший, -ая, -ее |
| хорош-ий, good, -ая -ее | лучше, лучший, -ая, -ее |
| далёк-ий, far distant, -ая -ое | дальше, дальнейший, -ая, -ее |

If the short (predicative) form is used without any object of comparison, the particle **но** is added to it :

| | | |
|----------|-------|------------------------------------|
| получше | means | a little better |
| побольше | „ | a little more, or a little larger |
| поменьше | „ | a little less, or a little smaller |
| подальше | „ | a little further |
| поближе | „ | a little nearer |

§ 42. The Superlative Degree.

The superlative degree of Russian adjectives has no form of its own. It usually takes the long comparative form. (See § 41.)

Occasionally to the long comparative form is added the superlative particle **наи** :

наилу́чший, -ая, -ее, the best

наиме́нший, -ая, -ее, the least (the smallest)

More often the pronoun **са́мый** (the very) is placed before the positive form of the adjective. This gives a less complicated form of superlative :

са́мый стро́гий, the most strict, exacting

са́мый can also precede the long comparative :

са́мый лу́чший, the very best. (See § 41 (5).)

Also in adverbial expressions :

са́мое бо́льшее, at the very most

са́мое ме́ньшее, at the very least

Frequently when forming a **predicative** superlative, the pronouns **всего́**, **всех** are placed after the short comparative :

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| лу́чше всего́, | better than anything | } best of all |
| лу́чше всех, | better than all | |
| ме́ньше всего́, | less than anything | } least of all |
| ме́ньше всех, | less than all | |

The particle **пре** before the positive enhances the quality of the adjective :

предо́брый, -ая, -ое, most kind

прескве́рный, -ая, -ое, most rotten, bad

It is used in a predicative sense, and is not usually declined.

§ 43. *Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives.*

Adverbs formed from adjectives take the neuter predicative (short) form :

но́вый — но́во, new

хоро́ший — хорошо́, well, good

ужа́сный — ужа́сно, awful

по́здний — по́здно, late

кра́йний — кра́йне, extremely

Adverbs formed from adjectives ending in **ский** take **ски**, often preceded by the particle **по** :

| | |
|-----------------|------------|
| человѣческий, | human |
| по-человѣчески, | humanly |
| по-ру́ски, | in Russian |
| по-англи́йски, | in English |

§ 44. *The Accent in Adjectives.*

(1) Attributive adjectives in which the stress is *not* on the last syllable retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular and the plural.

(2) If the accent falls on the last syllable in the nominative singular, it goes to the case-endings in both singular and plural.

(3) Predicative (short) adjectives, with few exceptions, have the accent on the same syllable as in the long form for the masculine ; for the feminine, neuter, and plural the accent is shifted to the last syllable :

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| вели́кий | вели́к, велика́, велико́, велики́ |
| big, great, large | |
| высо́кий | высо́к, высока́, высоко́, высоки́ |
| high, tall | |
| тяжё́лый | тяжё́л, тяжела́, тяжело́, тяжелы́ |
| heavy | |

There are, however, exceptions to this rule, but the general tendency is for the feminine and the plural to shift the accent to the last syllable, particularly in dissyllabic adjectives.

(4) In the predicative (short) comparative the tendency is for the last syllable *but one* to take the accent—particularly in dissyllabic adjectives, but also in a few with three syllables :

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| весё́лый | веселе́е, gay, cheerful, joyful |
| здоровы́й | здоровее́, sound, healthy |
| зе́лёный | зелене́е, green |

In adjectives of more than two syllables the accent in the comparative (short) form is usually on the same syllable as in the positive.

§ 45. *A list of Adjectives in frequent use, showing the Short (predicative) form in each case, also the Short Comparative (predicative) form.*

NOTE. The accent in adjectives remains on the same syllable throughout in the long (attributive) form. In the predicative form the accent is nearly always shifted to the last syllable in the feminine and the plural. Where the accent varies in the short neuter and the plural, according to popular usage in different parts of the country, the alternative accent is indicated (б́ [о]; б́ [ы]).

In the short comparative form the accent is always on the last syllable but one, with the exception of polysyllabic adjectives. (See § 44.)

| <i>Positive</i> (attributive) | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| бѣдный, -ая, -ое, -ые poor | бѣден, бедна́, -о́ [-о], -ы́ [-ы] | бѣднѣе |
| богáтый, -ая, -ое, -ые rich | богáт, -а, -о, -ы | богáче |
| небогáтый, -ая, -ое, -ые of moderate means | не богáт, -а, -о, -ы | no comparative form |
| бѣлый, -ая, -ое, -ые white | бел, -а́, -о́ [-о], -ы́ [-ы] | белѣе |
| чѣрный, -ая, -ое, -ые black | чѣрен, черна́, -о́, -ы́ | чернѣе |
| больно́й, -ая, -ое, -ые sick, ill | бóлен, больна́, -о, -ы́ | больнѣе |
| здоровýй, -ая, -ое, -ые healthy | здоров, -а, -о, -ы | здоровѣе |
| близкíй, -ая, -ое, -ие near | блízок, близка́, -о, -ы́ | блízже |
| далѣкíй, -ая, -ое, -ие far, distant | далѣк, далека́, -о́, -ы́ | далѣше |
| дáльный, -ая, -ое, -ие distant | has no short forms | |

| <i>Positive</i> (attributive) | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| большой, -ая, -ое, -ие big | { велик, -а, -о, -и | { больше |
| великий, -ая, -ое, -ие great | | { более |
| небольшой, -ая, -ое, -ие not big | не велик, -а, -о, -и | no comparative form |
| малый, -ая, -ое, -ие small | мал, малá, -ó, -и | { меньше |
| маленький, -ая, -ое, -ие small, tiny | has no short form | { менее |
| будущий, -ая, -ее, -ие future | - have no short forms | no comparative form |
| прошлый, -ая, -ое, -ие past | | |
| весёлый, -ая, -ое, -ие gay, joyful | вёсел, веселá, -о, -и | веселее |
| грустный, -ая, -ое, -ие sad, melancholy | грустен, грустнá, -о, -и | грустнее |
| скучный, -ая, -ое, -ие weary, tedious | скучен, скучнá, -о, -и | скучнее |
| невесёлый, -ая, -ое, -ие sad, weary | не вёсел, -а, -о, -и | no comparative form |
| видный, -ая, -ое, -ие visible, apparent | виден, виднá, -о, -и | |
| вкусный, -ая, -ое, -ие tasty | вкусен, вкуснá, -о, -и | вкуснее |
| невкусный, -ая, -ое, -ие tasteless | не вкусен, -а, -о, -и | no comparative form |
| вёрхний, -ая, -ее, -ие top | { | have no short or comparative forms |
| нижний, -ая, -ее, -ие bottom | | |
| высокий, -ая, -ое, -ие high | высок, -а, -ó [-о], -и́ [-и] | выше |
| низкий, -ая, -ое, -ие low | низок, низкá, -о, -и | ниже |
| глубокий, -ая, -ое, -ие deep | глубок, -а, -ó, -и | глубже |
| неглубокий, -ая, -ое, -ие shallow | не глубок, -а, -ó, -и | no comparative form |
| глупый, -ая, -ое, -ие foolish, stupid | глуп, -а, -о, -и | глупее |
| умный, -ая, -ое, -ие wise | умен, умнá, -ó, -и | умнее |

| <i>Positive (attributive)</i> | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| глухой, -ая, -ое, -ие deaf | глух, -а, -о, -и | глуше |
| слепой, -ая, -ое, -ие blind | слеп, -а, -о, -и | слепее |
| голодный, -ая, -ое, -ие hungry | голоден, голодна, -о, -и | голоднее |
| сытый, -ая, -ое, -ие fed | сыт, сыта, -о, -и | сытее |
| горький, -ая, -ое, -ие bitter | горек, горька, -о, -и | { горче горчее слаще |
| сладкий, -ая, -ое, -ие sweet | сладок, сладка, -о, -и | |
| горячий, -ая, -ое, -ие hot | горяч, -а, -о, -и | более горячий -ая, -ое, -ие |
| тёплый, -ая, -ое, -ие warm | тёпл, тепла, -о, -и | теплее |
| холодный, -ая, -ое, -ие cold | холоден, холодна, -о, -и | холоднее |
| громкий, -ая, -ое, -ие loud | громок, громка, -о, -и | громче |
| тихий, -ая, -ое, -ие quiet | тих, тиха, -о, -и | тише |
| грязный, -ая, -ое, -ие dirty | грязен, грязна, -о, -и | грязнее |
| чистый, -ая, -ое, -ие clean, pure | чист, чиста, -о, -и | чище |
| нечистый, -ая, -ое, -ие unclean, impure | не чист, -а, -о, -и | no comparative form |
| дешёвый, -ая, -ое, -ие cheap | дешев, дешева, -о, -и | дешевле |
| дорогой, -ая, -ое, -ие dear | дорог, дорога, -о, -и | дороже |
| недорогой, -ая, -ое, -ие inexpensive | не дорог, -а, -о, -и | no comparative form |
| длинный, -ая, -ое, -ие long (in distance) | длинн, длинна, -о, -и | длиннее |
| долгий, -ая, -ое, -ие long (in sense of time) | долг, долга, -о, -и | дольше |
| короткий, -ая, -ое, -ие short | короток, коротка, -о, -и | короче |
| краткий, -ая, -ое, -ие short, brief, concise | краток, кратка, -о, -и | кратче |
| добрый, -ая, -ое, -ие good, kind | добр, -а, -о, -и | добрее |

| <i>Positive (attributive)</i> | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|--|---|-------------------------------|
| хоро́ший, -ая, -ое, -ие good, of good quality | хоро́ш, -á, -ó, -í | лучше |
| худой, -áя, -óе, -íе bad | худ, худá, -о, -ы | хуже |
| плохой, -áя, -óе, -íе bad | плох, -á, -о, -и | плoще |
| злой, -áя, -óе, -íе bad, malicious | зол, зла, зло, злы | злее |
| зелёный, -ая, -ое, -ые green | зеле́н, -á, -о, -ы | зелене́е |
| жёлтый, -ая, -ое, -ые yellow | жёлт, желта́, -о, -ы | желтее |
| красный, -ая, -ое, -ые red | красе́н, красна́, -о, -ы | красне́е |
| синий, -яя, -ее, -ие blue | синь, синя, -е, -и (not in frequent use) | синее |
| живой, -áя, -óе, -íе live | жив, живá, -о, -ы | живее |
| мёртвый, -ая, -ое, -ые dead | мёртв, мёртва́, -о, -ы | no comparative form |
| красивый, -ая, -ое, -ые pretty | краси́в, -а, -о, -ы | { красивее кра́ше |
| некрасивый, -ая, -ое, -ые ungainly | не краси́в, -а, -о, -ы | no comparative form in use |
| крепкий, -ая, -ое, -ие strong, hardy | кре́пок, крепка́, -о, -и | крепче |
| сильный, -ая, -ое, -ые strong, powerful | силён, сильна́, -о, -ы | сильнее |
| слабый, -ая, -ое, -ые weak | слаб, -á, -о, -ы | слабее |
| лёгкий, -ая, -ое, -ие light, easy | лёгк, легка́, -ó, -и | легче |
| тяжёлый, -ая, -ое, -ые heavy | тяжел, -а, -ó, -ы | тяжелее |
| трудный, -ая, -ое, -ые hard (not easy) | трудо́н, трудна́, -о, -ы | труднее |
| медленный, -ая, -ое, -ые slow | медлене́н, медленна́, -о, -ы | медленнее |
| скóрый, -ая, -ое, -ые fast, quick | скор, -á, -о, -ы | скорее |
| мокры́й, -ая, -ое, -ые wet | мокр, мокра́, -о, -ы | мокрее |
| сухой, -áя, -óе, -íе dry | сух, сухá, су́хо, су́хи | суше |

the predicative form of **нужный** is used without a verbal infinitive.

- (2) The predicative form of *должный* is much used in personal sentences in the sense of (a) to have to, (b) to owe :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) я должен ехать | I must go |
| я должен был ехать | I had to go |
| мы должны будем оставаться | we shall have to remain, stay |
| [нам надо будет оставаться] | |
| (b) я ему должен пять рублей | I owe him five roubles |
| я ему был должен пять рублей | I owed him five roubles |
| я ему буду должен пять рублей | I shall owe him five roubles |

Note the reverse order in :

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| я должен был | I had to |
| я был должен | I owed |
| я должен буду | I shall have to |
| я буду должен | I shall owe |

All the personal sentences in sub-division (a) can be turned into impersonal ones by the use of *нужно* [надо]:

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| я должен | = мне нужно |
| я должен был | = мне нужно [надо] было |
| я должен буду | = мне нужно будет |

должно [должно] is used in the meaning : one must . . . , it ought to . . . , it must . . .

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| это должно быть так | this must be so |
| это должно было случиться | this had to happen |

должно быть used alone, adverbially, means : possibly, probably, it would seem.

| <i>Positive</i> (attributive) | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|---|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| правый, -ая, -ое, -ые right, just | прав, -á, -о, -ы | правее (more to the right) |
| неправый, -ая, -ое, -ые unjust | не прав, -á, -о, -ы | no comparative form |
| левый, -ая, -ое, -ые left | | левее (more to the left) |
| полный, -ая, -ое, -ые full, complete | полон, полна́, -о, -ы | полнее |
| неполный, -ая, -ое, -ые incomplete | не полон, -á, -о, -ы | no comparative form |
| пустой, -áя, -ое, -ые empty | пуст, -á, -о, -ы | пустее |
| прямой, -áя, -ое, -ые straight | прям, -á, -о, -ы | прямее |
| кривой, -áя, -ое, -ые crooked | крив, кривá, -о, -ы | кривее |

| <i>Positive (attributive)</i> | <i>Predicative</i> | <i>Short Comparative</i> |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| свѣжій, -ая, -ее, -ие fresh | свеж, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ій | свежѣе |
| несвѣжій, -ая, -ее, -ие not fresh | не свеж, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ій | по comparative form |
| свѣтлій, -ая, -ое, -ые light | свѣтел, светлѣ, -ѳ, -ій | свѣтлѣе |
| тѣмній, -ая, -ое, -ые dark | тѣмен, темнѣ, -ѳ, -ій | тѣмнѣе |
| тѳнкій, -ая, -ое, -ие thin | тѳнок, тонкѣ, -ѳ, -ий | тѳньше |
| толстій, -ая, -ое, -ые thick | толст, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | толще |
| узкій, -ая, -ое, -ие narrow | узок, узкѣ, -ѳ, -ий | уже |
| широкій, -ая, -ое, -ие broad | широк, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | шѳре |
| цѣлій, -ая, -ое, -ые whole | цел, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | по comparative form |
| чѣстній, -ая, -ое, -ые honest | чѣстен, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | чѣстнѣе |
| нечѣстній, -ая, -ое, -ые dishonest | не чѣстен, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | по comparative form in use |
| ясній, -ая, -ое, -ые clear | ясен, яснѣ, -ѳ, -ий | яснѣе |
| неясній, -ая, -ое, -ые not clear, indistinct | не ясен, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | по comparative form |

In adjectives with the negative particle не (which gives a reduced meaning) the negative form can also be used predicatively, but the particle не is then written separately :

| | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| небогатій | but он не богат | |
| not rich | | |
| немолодой | „ он не молод | |
| no longer young | | |
| нестарій | он не стар | |
| not very old | | |
| небольшой дом | дом не велик | |
| a house of moderate size | | |
| неинтересній | онѣ не интересна | } no comparative form |
| uninteresting | | |
| незнакомій | он не знаком мне | |
| unknown | | |

Exception :

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| нездоровій | я нездоров, -ѣ, -ѳ, -ий | / |
| unhealthy, ailing | I am unwell | |

§ 46. *A few Adjectives which have no Predicative or Comparative form :*

| | | |
|--------------|------------------|--|
| вечёрный | } -ая, -ее, -ие, | of the evening |
| утренний | | of the morning |
| дневной | } -ая, -ое, -ые, | of the day |
| ночной | | of the night |
| ежедневный | | daily |
| еженедельный | | weekly |
| ежемесячный | -ая, -ое, -ые, | monthly |
| ежегодный | | yearly |
| годовой | | annual |
| северный | } -ая, -ое, -ые, | northern, northerly |
| южный | | southern, southerly |
| западный | | western, westerly |
| восточный | | eastern, easterly |
| вчерашний | | of yesterday, yesterday's |
| сегодняшний | | of to-day, to-day's |
| завтрашний | -ая, -ее, -ие, | of to-morrow, to-morrow's |
| теперешний | | of the present day |
| нынешний | | of this time |
| всегдашний | | usual, habitual |
| верхний | } -ая, -ее, -ие, | top one |
| нижний | | bottom one |
| разный | -ая, -ое, -ые, | various, diverse |
| домашний | -ая, -ее, -ие, | home-made, of the house, of the household |
| чужой | -ая, -ое, -ие, | a stranger (in this sense used as a noun) |

§ 46a. *Participles as Adjectives.*

A number of participles, both active and passive, have by popular usage been turned into adjectives :

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. настоящий | | present |
| прошедший | | past |
| будущий | -ая, -ее, -ие, | future |
| сведущий | | learned, skilled |
| имущий | | wealthy |

Some adjectives, derived from participles, have changed their termination into **чий** :

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 2. могу́чий | mighty |
| стоя́чий | standing, stagnant |
| кипу́чий | boiling, boiling hot |
| ходя́чий | current |
| горя́чий | hot |
| плаку́чий) | weeping |

3. Derived from past passive participles :

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| варё́ный, | boiled |
| учё́ный (<i>noun</i>), | learned |
| жа́ренный, | roasted |
| прида́ное (<i>noun</i>), | dowry |
| почтё́нный, | esteemed |
| соверше́нный, | perfect |
| просвещё́нный, | enlightened |
| etc. | |

3. PRONOUNS

§ 47. *Classes of Pronouns.*

1. **Personal pronouns**: я, I ; ты, thou ; он, he ; она́, she ; оно́, it ; мы, we ; вы, you ; они́, they.

2. **Possessive pronouns**: мой, -я́, -ё́, -и́, my, mine ; тво-й, -я́, -ё́, -и́, thy, thine ; сво-й, -я́, -ё́, -и́, one's own ; его́, his ; её, her, hers ; наш, -а, -е, -и, our, ours ; ваш, -а, -е, -и, your, yours ; их, their, theirs.

3. **Demonstrative pronouns**: э́тот, э́та, э́то, э́ти, this, these ; то́т, та, то, те, that, those ; та́к-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such ; та́ков-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, the mentioned ; се́й, си́я, си́е, си́й, this, these ; о́ный, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, the named.

4. **Relative-Interrogative pronouns**:

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| кото́р-ый, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, | which |
| ка́к-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, | what sort of, which |
| че́й, чья́, чьё́, чьи́, | whose |
| како́в, -а́, -о́, -и́, | what sort of, how |

NOTE. All the enumerated relative pronouns are also used as interrogative pronouns by adding the question mark.

5. Definite pronouns: сам, himself; самá, herself; самó, itself; са́ми, themselves.

са́м-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, the very one (ones)

ка́жд-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, each, every

вся́к-ий, -ая, -ое, -ие, each, every one, any one

так-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such a one

тако́в-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such a one, that, the mentioned

6. Indefinite pronouns:

кто́-то, someone, somebody

не́кто, a certain one

ко́е-кто } someone or other

кто́-нибу́дь }

что́-то, something

не́что, a certain thing

ко́е-что } something or other

что́-нибу́дь }

никто́, no one

ничто́, nothing

как-о́й-то, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, a certain

ника́к-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, not anyone

не́котор-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, a certain, some

и́но-й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, some other

друг-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, another

NOTE. To indefinite pronouns belong the adverbial pronouns:

ско́лько, how much, how many

сто́лько, so much, so many

не́сколько, a few

мно́гое, many a thing, many things

(used only in the singular)

мно́гие, many (many a man)

With the exception of мно́гое, they are used only in the plural and are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

скóлько, стóлько, нéсколько are occasionally used in the dative singular with the preposition по ; they are then treated as neuter nouns :

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| по скóлку ? | how many to each ? |
| (поскóлку), ¹ | (in so far as) |
| по стóлку, | so many to each |
| (постóлку), ¹ | (insomuch, to that extent) |
| по нéсколько, | a few to each |

(The nouns which follow these are, however, in the genitive plural) :

я дал им по нéсколько рублѣй,
I gave them a few roubles each

In the declension of these pronoun-adverbs the *accent* remains on the stem in нéсколько, мнóгое, мнóгие ; in скóлько, стóлько it is shifted to the case-endings :

| | |
|-----------|-----------|
| сколькѣх | столькѣх |
| сколькѣм | столькѣм |
| сколькѣми | столькѣми |

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

§ 48. 1. *Personal.*

Singular

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|------|----------|------|
| <i>Nom.</i> я | ты | он | она́ | онó |
| <i>Gen.</i> меня́ | тебя́ | его́ | еѣ́ | его́ |
| <i>Dat.</i> мне | тебе́ | ему́ | ей | ему́ |
| <i>Acc.</i> меня́ | тебя́ | его́ | еѣ́ | его́ |
| <i>Instr.</i> мною́ [-ой] | тобою́ [-ой] | им | ею́ [ей] | им |
| <i>Loc.</i> мне | тебе́ | ѣм | ей | ѣм |

Plural

| | | |
|---------------------|-------|------|
| <i>Nom.</i> мы | вы | они́ |
| <i>Gen.</i> нас | вас | их |
| <i>Dat.</i> нам | вам | им |
| <i>Acc.</i> нас | вас | их |
| <i>Instr.</i> на́ми | ва́ми | и́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> нас | вас | их |

¹ Used adverbially.

NOTE 1. Instrumental of *мно́ю, тобо́ю, ё́ю* can be shortened into *мно́й, тобо́й, ё́й*. (See § 28, note 4.)

NOTE 2. The personal-reflexive pronoun *себе́я* (one-self) has no nominative case, and no plural. It can stand both for singular and plural.

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | (none) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>себе́я</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>себе́</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>себе́я</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | <i>собо́ю [-о́й]</i> |
| <i>Loc.</i> | <i>себе́</i> |

NOTE 3. Accusative of *он* and *оно́* is *always* *его́*.

NOTE 4. The oblique cases of the personal pronouns *он, она́, оно́, онѝ* have an inserted *н* (for euphony) if they are used with a preposition :

| | | | | |
|---------------|------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>у,</i> | <i>от,</i> | <i>негó,</i> | <i>неѣ́,</i> | <i>них</i> |
| <i>перед,</i> | <i>с,</i> | <i>ним,</i> | <i>не́ю,</i> | <i>ни́ми</i> |
| <i>о,</i> | <i>на,</i> | <i>не́м,</i> | <i>не́й,</i> | <i>них</i> |
| | | | <i>etc.</i> | |

§ 49. 2. Possessive.

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>мо-ѝ</i> | <i>мо-ѣ́</i> | <i>мо-ѝ</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>мо-его́</i> | <i>мо-еѝ́</i> | <i>мо-ѝх</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>мо-ему́</i> | <i>мо-еѝ́</i> | <i>мо-ѝм</i> |
| <i>Acc. N. or G.</i> | <i>мо-ѣ́</i> | <i>мо-ю́</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | <i>мо-ѝм</i> | <i>мо-е́ю [-еѝ́]</i> | <i>мо-ѝми</i> |
| <i>Loc.</i> | <i>мо-ѣ́м</i> | <i>мо-еѝ́</i> | <i>мо-ѝх</i> |

It will be noted that the case-endings of most possessive pronouns are similar to those of the oblique cases of *он, она́, оно́, онѝ*. (See § 48.)

твой, -ѝ́, -ѣ́, -ѝ́
свой, -ѝ́, -ѣ́, -ѝ́ } are similarly declined,

so are : *наш, -а, -е, -и*
ваш, -а, -е, -и

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | эт-от | эт-о | эт-а | эт-и |
| <i>Gen.</i> | эт-ого | | эт-ой | эт-их |
| <i>Dat.</i> | эт-ому | | эт-ой | эт-им |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>N. or G</i> | эт-о | эт-у | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | эт-им | | эт-ою [-ой] | эт-ими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | эт-ом | | эт-ой | эт-их |

NOTE 1. так-ой, таков-ой, он-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

NOTE 2. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{с-ей} \\ \text{с-ия} \\ \text{с-ие} \\ \text{с-ий} \end{array} \right\} \text{ are declined as он, она, оно, они.}$
(See § 48.)

The oblique cases are merely preceded by с.

Accusative of neuter is *сие* (popularly *сѣ*); of fem. : *сию*.

This pronoun is not frequently used now, but it occurs in everyday speech in the expressions :

сию мину́ту, this minute
то и сѣ, this and that
сейча́с, in a minute
сего́дня, to-day

NOTE 3. тот, та, то, те mean 'that,' 'those,' but often denote 'the one,' 'the ones,' etc.

тот, кото́рый . . . the one that . . .

NOTE 4. тот, та, то, те, followed by the particle **же**, have the meaning of 'the same' (or 'the very same,' if followed by **же са́мый**) :

тот-же, the same
тот-же са́мый, the very same
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{так-ой-же} \\ \text{-ая-же} \\ \text{-ое-же} \\ \text{-ие-же} \end{array} \right\} \text{ mean : exactly as}$

§ 51. 4. *Relative and Interrogative.*

- (1) котор-ый, как-ой
 -ая, -ая } are declined as adjectives. (See
 -ое, -ое } § 35.)
 -ые, -ие }

| <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> |
|--------------------|--------|----------------------|---------|-----------------|
| (2) <i>N.</i> к-то | ч-то | (3) че-й | чь-ё | чь-я |
| <i>G.</i> к-огó | ч-егó | | чь-егó | чь-ей |
| <i>D.</i> к-ому́ | ч-ему́ | | чь-ему́ | чь-ей |
| <i>A.</i> к-огó | ч-то | <i>N. or G.</i> чь-ё | чь-ю | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>I.</i> к-ем | ч-ем | чь-им | чь-ёю | чь-ими |
| | | | [-ей] | |
| <i>L.</i> к-ом | ч-ём | чь-ём | чь-ей | чь-их |

NOTE 1. Relative *кто, что* are occasionally interchanged with *котор-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые* (particularly in popular speech):

человéк, котор-ый был здесь вчерá
 человек, что был здесь вчерá
 человек, кто был здесь вчерá

NOTE 2. The particle *же* [ж] after *кто ? что ?* denotes accentuation: *кто же ?* who, then ?; *что же ?* what, then ?; *кто же это видел ?* who, then, saw this ?

что is also used in the meaning of a conjunction. (See § 97.)

§ 52. 5. *Definite.*

- (1) вс-який, кáждый, -ая, -ое, -ие, -ые are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------|--------------|---------------|
| (2) <i>Nom.</i> | сам | сам-ó | сам-á | сáм-и |
| | himself | itself | herself | themselves |
| <i>Gen.</i> | сам-огó | | сам-ой | сам-их |
| <i>Dat.</i> | сам-ому́ | | сам-ой | сам-им |
| <i>Acc.</i> | сам-огó | сам-ó | сам-оё | сам-их |
| <i>Instr.</i> | сам-им | | сам-ою [-ой] | сам-ими |
| <i>Loc.</i> | сам-óm | | сам-ой | сам-их |

NOTE. *сам* is distinct from the definite adjective-pronoun *сáмый*. The latter means 'the very,' and has the same meaning as *же*; the former means 'himself.'

| | | |
|-------|---------------|------------------|
| | ТОТ ЖЕ | } the same |
| | ТОТ СÁМЫЙ | |
| | ТОТ ЖЕ СÁМЫЙ, | the very same |
| but : | ОН САМ, | he himself |
| | ОНÁ САМÁ, | she herself etc. |

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------|------|-------------|-----------------|
| (3) <i>Nom.</i> | вс-ь | вс-ѣ | вс-я | вс-е |
| <i>Gen.</i> | вс-его | | вс-ей | вс-ех |
| <i>Dat.</i> | вс-ему | | вс-ей | вс-ем |
| <i>Acc. N. or G.</i> | вс-ѣ | | вс-ю | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | вс-ем | | вс-ѣю [-ей] | вс-ѣми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | вс-ѣм | | вс-ей | вс-ех |

§ 53. 6. Indefinite.

Some negative and indefinite pronouns are formed from interrogative-relative pronouns :

(1) By prefixing the particle **ни** :

| | | | |
|--------|---|-----------|-------------|
| что | — | ничтó, | nothing |
| кто | — | никтó, | no one |
| како́й | — | никако́й, | not any one |

(See § 135 (6), as **ни** affects adverbs.)

(2) By prefixing the particle **не** :

| | | | |
|----------|---|----------------------|----------------------------|
| кто | — | не́кто, ¹ | a certain man |
| что | — | не́что, ¹ | a certain thing |
| ко́торый | — | не́который, | a certain person or object |

(See § 135 (7).)

¹ Not declined.

(3) By adding the particle **то** :

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|---|---|
| | | (not quite certain who or what, | |
| кто-то, | someone | someone or something whose | |
| что-то, | something | name, or what exactly, is | |
| | | immaterial) | |
| какой-то | } | some person or thing (not quite certain | |
| какая-то | | | who or what, giving the person or thing |
| какие-то | | | a slightly contemptuous estimation) |

(4) By adding the words **нибудь, либо**, or by prefixing **кое** [кой] :

| | | |
|-------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| кто-нибудь, | someone or other, anyone | } with a certain degree |
| что-нибудь, | something or other, anything | |
| кое-кто, | someone | |
| кое-что, | something | |
| | | of definiteness |
| кто-либо, | someone, anyone | { (certainty imma- |
| что-либо, | something, anything | |
| | | terial or prob- |
| | | lematical) |

(See § 135, sub-section 3, in adverbial forms.)

4. NUMERALS

§ 54. *Classes of Numerals.*

There are two classes of numerals :

- (a) **Cardinal** : один, one ; два, two ; etc.
 (b) **Ordinal** : первый, first ; второй, second ; etc.

§ 54a. *List of Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals :*

| <i>Cardinal</i> | <i>Ordinal</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 один, одна, одно | 1st перв-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 2 два, две, два | 2nd втор-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 3 три | 3rd трет-ий, -ья, -ье, -ьи |
| 4 четыре | 4th четвёрт-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 5 пять | 5th пят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 6 шесть | 6th шест-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 7 семь | 7th седьм-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 8 восемь | 8th восьм-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые |

| <i>Cardinal</i> | <i>Ordinal</i> |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 9 дѣвѣять | 9th девѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 10 дѣсѣть | 10th десѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 11 одѣннѣдцѣть | 11th одѣннѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 12 двѣнѣдцѣть | 12th двѣнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 13 трѣнѣдцѣть | 13th трѣнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 14 чѣтърнѣдцѣть | 14th чѣтърнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 15 пятнѣдцѣть | 15th пятнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 16 шѣстнѣдцѣть | 16th шѣстнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 17 семнѣдцѣть | 17th семнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 18 вѣсемнѣдцѣть | 18th вѣсемнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 19 девѣтнѣдцѣть | 19th девѣтнѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 20 двѣдцѣть | 20th двѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые |
| 21 двѣдцѣть одѣн, однѣ, однѣ, etc. | 21st двѣдцѣть пѣрв-й, -ая, -ое etc. |
| 30 трѣдцѣть etc. | 30th трѣдцѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 40 сѣрок etc. | 40th сѣроков-ѣй, -ѣя, -ѣе, -ѣе etc. |
| 50 пятнѣдѣсѣтъ etc. | 50th пятнѣдѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 60 шѣстнѣдѣсѣтъ etc. | 60th шѣстнѣдѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 70 сѣмнѣдѣсѣтъ etc. | 70th сѣмнѣдѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 80 вѣсемнѣдѣсѣтъ etc. | 80th вѣсемнѣдѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые, etc. |
| 90 девѣнобѣсто etc. | 90th девѣнобѣст-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 100 стѣ etc. | 100th сѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое, -ые etc. |
| 101 стѣ одѣн, однѣ, однѣ, etc. | 101st стѣ пѣрв-й, -ая, -ое etc. |
| 110 стѣ десѣтъ etc. | 110th стѣ десѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое etc. |
| 200 двѣстѣ | 200th двѣхсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |
| 300 трѣстѣ | 300th трѣхсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |
| 400 чѣтърѣстѣ | 400th чѣтърѣхсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |
| 500 пятнѣсѣтъ | 500th пятнѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |
| 600 шѣстнѣсѣтъ | 600th шѣстнѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |
| 700 сѣмнѣсѣтъ | 700th сѣмнѣсѣтъ-й, -ая, -ое |

| <i>Cardinal</i> | | <i>Ordinal</i> | |
|-----------------|--|---------------------|---|
| 800 | восемьсо́т | 800th | восьмисо́т-ый, -ая, -ое |
| 900 | девя́тьсо́т | 900th | девятисо́т-ый, -ая, -ое |
| 1000 | ты́сяча | 1000th | ты́сячн-ый, -ая, -ое |
| 1453 | { ты́сяча четы́реста пятьдеся́т три | 1453rd ¹ | ты́сяча четы́реста пять- деся́т трёт-ий, -ья, -ье, -ьи |

NOTE 1. Ordinal numerals take the termination **тый** or **то́й**, **ая**, **ое** if the cardinal ends in **ть** :

| | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| пять, five, | пя́тый, -ая, -ое |
| шесть, six, | шесто́й, -ая, -ое |
| де́вять, nine, | девя́тый, -ая, -ое |
| деся́ть, ten, | деся́тый, -ая, -ое |

NOTE 2. The numbers 11-19 are formed by adding **на́дцать** to the first part of the numeral, which denotes the number above 10 (**на-дцать** is a contraction of **на де́сять**) :

| | <i>Cardinal</i> | <i>Ordinal</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| eleven (1 + 10), | оди́ннадцат-ь | -ый |
| twelve (2 + 10), | двена́дцат-ь | -ый |
| thirteen (3 + 10), | трина́дцат-ь | -ый |

§ 54b. Nouns used with the numbers 2, 3, 4 stand in the genitive singular :

| | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| два стола́, | two tables |
| три окна́, | three windows |
| четы́ре кни́ги, | four books |

Nouns with numbers above 4 stand in the genitive plural :

| | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| пять столо́в, | пять о́кон, | пять книг |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|

If a number above 4 precedes the noun **челове́к** the genitive plural used is **челове́к** (not **люде́й**) : **пять**

¹ In ordinals only the last number is declined : thus in this example only the word **трети́й** is declined according to all the cases.

человѣк, шесть человек, сѣмьдесят, etc., человек, but много людей.¹

With 21, 31, etc., the noun stands in either nominative or accusative :

двадцать одна кнѣга (if subject of sentence)

двадцать одну кнѣгу (if object)

With 22, 23, 24, 32, 33, 34, etc., the noun stands in genitive singular :

двадцать два фунта

двадцать три кнѣги

двадцать четыре дня

but : двадцать пять дней

оба (both) requires genitive singular :

оба брата, both brothers

(See § 137, note to sub-section 7.)

§ 55. Declension of Numerals.

(1) Ordinal numerals are declined as adjectives in all genders and cases, and they conform in gender, case, and number to that of the noun which they qualify. (See § 35.)

первый дом (first house) второй день (second day)

первого дома второго дня

первому дому второму дню etc.

NOTE. трѣтій, -ья, -ье, -ьи is declined as an adjective of species. (See § 38.)

(2) Cardinal numerals are declined in accordance with their terminations, respectively as masculine, feminine or neuter, some as nouns and some with predominantly adjectival terminations in the oblique cases.

¹ *Nom. pl.* люди, people.

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | один | один-о́ | один-а́ | один-и́ (some) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | | один-ого́ | один-о́й | один-и́х |
| <i>Dat.</i> | | один-ому́ | один-о́й | один-и́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | один-о́ | один-у́ | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | | один-и́м | один-о́ю [-о́й] | один-и́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | | один-о́м | один-о́й | один-и́х |
| | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | два | две | три | четы́ре |
| <i>Gen.</i> | | двух | трёх | четырёх |
| <i>Dat.</i> | | двум | трём | четырёх |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | | <i>N. or G.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> |
| <i>Instr.</i> | | двумя́ | тремя́ | четырьмя́ |
| <i>Loc.</i> | | двух | трёх | четырёх |

(3) 5-30 and 50-80 are declined as feminine nouns ending in **ь**. (See § 31):

| | | | | |
|---------------|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | пять | шесть | семь | во́семь |
| <i>Gen.</i> | пяти́ | шести́ | семи́ | восьми́ |
| <i>Dat.</i> | пяти́ | шести́ | семи́ | восьми́ |
| <i>Acc.</i> | пять | шесть | семь | во́семь |
| <i>Instr.</i> | пятью́ | шестью́ | семью́ | восемью́ |
| <i>Loc.</i> | пяти́ | шести́ | семи́ | восьми́ |

NOTE. In cardinal numbers consisting of two parts (denominations), each part is declined in accordance with its own mode of declension:

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| два́дцать один | два́дцать два | три́дцать три |
| двадцати́ одного́ | двадцати́ двух | тридцати́ трёх |
| двадцати́ одному́ | двадцати́ двум | тридцати́ трём |
| etc. | etc. | etc. |

(4) In the numerals 50-80 both parts are likewise declined as feminine nouns ending in **ь**, although *пятьдесят*, *шестьдесят*, *семьдесят*, *восемьдесят* do not terminate in **ь**:

| | | |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | пятьдесят | шестьдесят |
| <i>Gen.</i> | пятидесяти | шестидесяти |
| <i>Dat.</i> | пятидесяти | шестидесяти |
| <i>Acc.</i> | пятьдесят | шестьдесят |
| <i>Instr.</i> | пятьюдесятью | шестьюдесятью |
| <i>Loc.</i> | пятидесяти | шестидесяти |
| | etc. | |

(5) сорок has a in all oblique cases, except accusative :

| | |
|---------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | сорок |
| <i>Gen.</i> | сорока́ |
| <i>Dat.</i> | сорока́ |
| <i>Acc.</i> | сорок |
| <i>Instr.</i> | сорока́ |
| <i>Loc.</i> | сорока́ |

сто and девяносто change the o into an a in all oblique cases of singular, except accusative :

| | |
|-----|------------|
| сто | девяно́сто |
| ста | девяно́ста |
| ста | девяно́ста |

сто, when used with the numbers 2-9, is declined as a neuter noun in the plural (joined in one word) :

| | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | двѣсти | три́ста | четы́реста | пятьсо́т |
| <i>Gen.</i> | двухсо́т | трѣхсо́т | четырёхсо́т | пятисо́т |
| <i>Dat.</i> | двумста́м | трѣмста́м | четырёхмста́м | пятиста́м |
| <i>Acc.</i> | двѣсти | три́ста | четы́реста | пятьсо́т |
| <i>Instr.</i> | двумяста́ми | тремяста́ми | четырьмяста́ми | пятьюста́ми |
| <i>Loc.</i> | двухста́х | трѣхста́х | четырёхста́х | пятиста́х |

(6) ты́сяча is declined as a feminine noun.

миллио́н is declined as a masculine noun.

| | | |
|-----|-----------------------|-------------|
| | <i>Masc. Neut.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
| (7) | <i>Nom.</i> оба | обе |
| | <i>Gen.</i> обо́их | обе́их |
| | <i>Dat.</i> обо́им | обе́им |
| | <i>Acc.</i> N. or G. | N. or G. |
| | <i>Instr.</i> обо́ими | обе́ими |
| | <i>Loc.</i> обо́их | обе́их |

NOTE. One oblique case only of *оба* is used in the singular—the genitive—in the expression :

обо́его по́ла, of both sexes

§ 55a. NOTE 1. Numerals, both ordinal and cardinal, precede the noun which they qualify :

пе́рвый уро́к, first lesson

два часá, two hours etc.

Ordinals occasionally follow the noun, but only in cases where special emphasis is desired.

If cardinals follow the noun, an approximate number is implied :

два дня, two days

дня два, about two days

три го́да, three years

го́да три, about three years

NOTE 2. When 2, 3, 4 qualify a noun which is preceded by an adjective, the adjective can stand either in the genitive plural or, occasionally, in the nominative plural (but not in the genitive singular, although the noun is in the genitive singular) :

два кре́пких столá, two strong tables

два ста́ршие бра́та, two eldest brothers

(The latter form is not frequently used.)

NOTE 3. In giving the year of some event, only the last member of the number is declined :

in the year 1923 в ты́сяча девяты́х трéтьем году́

This rule applies to all ordinal numerals, where the last member only is declined.

Dates (in the meaning of : on a certain date) are usually given in the genitive :

on the 10th May 1923 де́сятого ма́я ты́сяча девяты́х
два́дцать трéтьего го́да

But in the expression 'to-day is the 10th of May' the nominative is used : сегодня десятое мая.

NOTE. The form of question when asking 'what is to-day's date?' is : какое сегодня число? The answer implies : число (*neuter*).

§ 55b. Collective (group) Numerals.

In Russian there are collective (group) numerals up to ten, besides the cardinals. They are :

двое, трое, четверо, пятеро, шестеро, семеро,
восьмеро, девятеро, десятеро

They denote a collective completed group. Their declensions are :

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | двое | трое | четверо | пятеро | шестеро |
| <i>Gen.</i> | двоих | троих | четверых | семеро | восьмеро |
| <i>Dat.</i> | двоим | троим | четверым | } девятеро десятеро are declined as четверо | |
| <i>Acc. N. or G.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | <i>N. or G.</i> | | |
| <i>Instr.</i> | двоими | троими | четверыми | | |
| <i>Loc.</i> | двоих | троих | четверых | | |

NOTE 1. Collective numerals are used mainly with masculine nouns designating persons (also with the neuter noun, дети, children) :

двое мужиков, two peasants
трое детей, three children

двое, трое, четверо are also employed with nouns (all genders) which are used only in the plural. (See § 33, sub-section (2).)

двое ворот, two gates
двое суток, two days and two nights

but : пять ворот (not пятеро ворот)
пять суток (not пятеро суток)

In all oblique cases the simple series of numerals is used :
двух суток (not двоих суток)

When used with such articles as носки́ (socks), сапоги́ (boots), it means pairs :

дво́е носко́в, two *pairs* of socks

дво́е сапо́г, two *pairs* of boots

NOTE 2. While collective numerals can be used without a noun as a predicate complement :

нас было́ трое́, there were three of us,

the simple series of cardinal numerals must always be accompanied by a noun :

нас было́ пять челове́к, де́сять челове́к etc.

there were five, ten of us etc.

§ 55c. *Fractional Numerals.*

The most in use are полови́на (half) and полтора́¹ (one and a half). Полови́на is declined as a feminine noun in **a** ; in полтора́¹ the oblique cases have an inserted **y** after пол (except accusative), and the case-endings are **a** throughout :

Masculine and Neuter.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> полтора́ рубля́ | полтора́ста |
| (1½ roubles) | (150) |
| <i>Gen.</i> полу́тора рублёй | полу́тораста |
| <i>Dat.</i> полу́тора рубля́м | полу́тораста |
| <i>Acc.</i> полтора́ рубля́ | полтора́ста |
| <i>Instr.</i> полу́тора рубля́ми | полу́тораста |
| <i>Loc.</i> полу́тора рубля́х | полу́тораста |

Feminine.

| |
|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> полторы́ страни́цы |
| (1½ pages) |
| <i>Gen.</i> полу́торы страни́ц |
| <i>Dat.</i> полу́торе страни́цам |
| <i>Acc.</i> полторы́ страни́цы |
| <i>Instr.</i> полу́торою страни́цами |
| <i>Loc.</i> полу́торе страни́цах |

Masculine.

| |
|----------------|
| полчасá |
| (half an hour) |
| получáса |
| получáсу |
| полчасá |
| получáсом |
| получáсе |

¹ полторы́, when used with feminine nouns.

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> |
|---------------|---|-----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | пóлдень (noon) | пóлночь (midnight) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | полúдня | полúночи |
| <i>Dat.</i> | полúдню | полúночи |
| <i>Acc.</i> | пóлдень | пóлночь |
| <i>Instr.</i> | полúднем | полúночью |
| <i>Loc.</i> | { полúдне but по полúдни = p.m. } полúночи | |

NOTE. полбуты́лки (half a bottle) is declined as полторы́; полфúнта (half a pound) is declined as полчасá. As пóлдень, пóлночь are declined полднѣ (half a day), полно́чи (half a night).

5. VERBS

§ 56. Active and Neuter Verbs.

Russian verbs are divided into **active** and **neuter**, corresponding to the English **transitive** and **intransitive** verbs. Some Russian neuter verbs can be turned into active verbs by the use of a prefix :

жить, to live, but *нажѣть,¹ to gain, to acquire
 быть, to be, „ *забыть,¹ to forget

§ 56a. Reflexive Verbs.

Verbs, both transitive and intransitive, can be made reflexive by tacking on the reflexive pronoun-particle **ся** (the Slavonic form for себя́, oneself) after the inflexion **ть** of the infinitive. If the inflexion of the infinitive is **тѣ**, **ся** is shortened into **сь**.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| мыть, to wash | мы́ться, to wash oneself |
| брить, to shave | бри́ться, to shave oneself |
| одева́ть, to dress | одева́ться, to dress oneself |

NOTE. In the verbs ending in **ся** (or **сь** after a vowel), the **ся** or **сь** is retained in all the tenses and all the persons in conjugation.

¹ See note to § 60, p. 104.

A few verbs have a reflexive termination without being proper reflexive verbs or having any reflexive meaning :

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ошибаться, to err | гордиться, to be proud |
| бояться, to fear | нравиться, to please, to be liked |
| надёяться, to hope | смеяться, to laugh |

In modern Russian these verbs express no meaning without *ся*.

§ 56b. A number of verbs in the reflexive form are used only in impersonal sentences :

| | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| нравиться ¹ | —мне нравится, | it pleases me, I like |
| хотеться | —мне хочется, | I should like, I want |
| спаться | —мне не спится, | I cannot sleep |
| нездоровиться | —мне нездоровится, | I do not feel well |
| сниться | —мне снится [снилось], | I see [saw] in my dream (see § 122). |

The termination *ся* is usually not accented. There are, however, a few exceptions when *ся* is accented in the past tense :

| | |
|----------|------------|
| звался, | was called |
| брался } | took up |
| взялся } | |
| начался, | began |

Many verbs of the reflexive form in *ся* can be classed as verbs describing a more or less passive state, hence the tendency to use them for impersonal sentences in which the grammatical subject becomes an inverted object. The expressions in the above examples could all be transcribed (paraphrased) so as to turn the sentences into personal ones :

| <i>Impersonal Sentence</i> | <i>Personal Sentence</i> |
|----------------------------|---|
| мне нравится | я люблю, I like |
| мне хочется | я хочу, I want |
| мне не спится | я не могу спать, I cannot sleep |
| мне нездоровится | я нездоров, I am unwell |
| мне снится [снилось] | я вижу [видел] сон, I see [saw] a dream |

¹ This verb can also be used in personal sentences.

But the psychological meaning (or purpose) of the impersonal sentence to express primarily a passive, vague, or not quite clearly defined state, would be defeated by turning an impersonal sentence into a personal one; the latter would express too much individual and defined volition. This observation holds good in the case of nearly all Russian impersonal sentences. (See § 122.)

§ 56c. *Reciprocal Verbs.*

Some verbs of the reflexive form ending in *ся*, *сь* have a reciprocal meaning :

| | | |
|------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| драться | — мы дерёмся | } we fight |
| биться | — мы бьёмся | |
| ругаться | — они ругаются | they swear at each other |
| бороться | — они борются | they wrestle |
| целоваться | — они целуются | they kiss (one another) |

Many of these reciprocal verbs are often used in a neuter sense, where no reciprocal meaning can be traced at all :

| | |
|----------|--|
| я борюсь | means : I struggle |
| я бьюсь | „ I fight (against hard circumstances) |

NOTE. The particle *ся* is pronounced *са*; *ться* is pronounced *теа*.

§ 56d. A few Russian verbs, both transitive and intransitive, can be used side by side with their reflexive forms, both verbs expressing almost the same meaning :

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------------|
| (a) стучать, | to knock | стучаться, | to knock at the door |
| признавать, | to admit | признаваться, | to confess |
| слушать, | to listen | слушаться, | to obey |

In the above verbs the reflexive form accentuates the personal element of the performance.

- (b) белѣть — белѣться, to appear white
 чернѣть — чернѣться, to appear black
 серѣть — серѣться, to appear grey

In each of these examples the two verbs express the idea in equal degree. The reflexive form is, however, more frequently used.

- But : (c) *побелѣть means to turn white
 *почернѣть „ to turn black
 *посерѣть „ to turn grey etc.

These three verbs, and others of a similar meaning, are not used in a reflexive form.

§ 57. *Tenses of the Indicative Mood.*¹

Russian verbs can have three tenses :

1. The present. 2. The past. 3. The future.

The future tense can be either a compound one, formed with the help of the present form of the auxiliary verb БЫТЬ (to be) and the infinitive of the principal verb in imperfective verbs, or it can be a simple future in perfective verbs which is expressed by the present form of the verb itself, but has a future meaning (see § 58) :

- писать (*imp.*) я буду писать, I shall be writing
 *написать (*perf.*) я напишѹ, I shall write

§ 58. *Aspects.*

Russian verbs have two main aspects :

- (1) **Imperfective** (verbs denoting an incomplete action or state).
 (2) **Perfective** (verbs denoting a completed action or state).

Verbs of imperfective aspect describe an action, or a state, which is still going on at whatever time (tense) we refer to it (and which is not completed at that time). Imperfective verbs have three tenses : present, past, and future.

¹ For the conditional and the subjunctive moods see §§ 106, 132.

Verbs of perfective aspect describe an action, or just the moment of its commencement, which is already completed, or will be completed, at whatever time (tense) we refer to the action or state. Verbs of this class have only two tenses : past and future (simple).¹

To the imperfective class also belong verbs which describe an action or a state which took place more than once in the past. These verbs are usually referred to as **iterative**. They are only used in the past tense :

писывал, used to write
говаривал, used to say
хаживал, used to go, etc. (See § 62.)

§ 59. Every verb is capable of expressing many ideas of action or state.

1. (a) Repetition, or (b) continuity, of action or state :

читать, to read
писать, to write
спать, to sleep

2. Beginning of action or state :

*начать, to begin
*запеть, to start singing

3. Completion (termination) of action or state :

*сделать, to make (to have made)
*спеть, to sing something (a single song)

4. Performance of action on a single occasion :

*дунуть, to blow once
*тронуть, to touch once

5. Momentary character of action :

*сверкнуть, to flash

The first two ideas : repetition and continuity (No. 1), are conveyed by the aspect of the verb which denotes incomplete (unfinished) action or state, namely, by the **imperfective aspect**.

¹ The present *form* of their conjugation serves as the future tense.

✱ The other ideas (Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5) are conveyed by the aspect of the verb which denotes completed action or state; namely, by the **perfective aspect**.

It follows that when the moment of inception, or termination, of the action or state is not uppermost in our mind, the aspect to be used is the imperfective, which gives merely the general idea of the action or state. The perfective aspect is used when the question of the beginning, or completion, of an action or state comes into play. The perfective is also used when the action is performed on a single occasion, or is only of a momentary character.

он приехал [пришёл] вчера, he arrived [came] yesterday (and remained)—**perfective**;

он приезжал [приходил], he came (but did not stay and went back; or, he came more than once)—**imperfective**; etc.

§ 60. *Formation of Perfective Verbs.*

The student is advised to learn to recognize the structure of the infinitive of verbs. This will help him to discriminate between the aspects. He will learn by observation that the infinitive of derivative verbs usually consists of a stem (infinitive without the termination **ТЬ, ТИ**) which comprises root, and often a suffix, and some prepositional prefix. Gradually he will also learn to distinguish the meaning of the prepositional prefixes and the changes which they effect in the meaning of the verb itself.

(Note.—All perfective verbs in this book are marked *.)

Perfective Verbs.

(1) Many simple (primary) imperfective verbs can be turned into perfectives by the use of a prepositional prefix:

| | |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| éхать, | to go on a journey |
| *по-éхать, | to start on a journey |
| *при-éхать, | to arrive |
| *пере-éхать, | to travel across |
| *у-éхать, | to go away etc. |

Here the prefixes, besides giving the verbs a perfective meaning, also impart an idea of direction.

The function of certain prepositional prefixes is merely to lend to the imperfective verb the character of a perfective, and thus to give its present form a future meaning, without altering it fundamentally. To such prefixes belong **по, на, с, у**. But these and many other prepositional prefixes, besides turning the imperfective verb into a perfective, can also give it a modified meaning and direction, in accordance with the basic meaning of the directing prefix. The student will learn from experience and observation the exact changes in the meaning of the verb which are effected by various prepositional prefixes :

| | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| дѣлать, | to do, to make | <i>(imperfective)</i> |
| *с-дѣлать, | to do, to make | |
| *пере-дѣлать, | to alter | <i>(perfective)</i> |
| *при-дѣлать, | to attach, to fix | |
| *на-дѣлать, | to make in a quantity | |
| *за-дѣлать, | to stop up, block up | |
| *под-дѣлать, | to forge | |

(See detailed statement about prefixes in § 63.)

(2) Although the greater number of primary verbs are of the imperfective aspect, there are a few primary verbs which are of the perfective aspect :

The corresponding imperfective verbs are :

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| *бросить, | to throw | бросать |
| *кончить, | to finish | кончать |
| *стать, | to become | становиться |
| *пасть [пад-ть], | to fall | падать |
| *пустить, | to let (go) | пускать |
| *лечь [лег-ть], | to lie down | ложиться |
| *сесть [сед-ть], | to sit down | садиться |
| *взять, ¹ | to take | брать |
| *хватить, | to snatch, to seize | хватать |

¹ This is a derivative verb. (See § 64, 7.)

(3) Many perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by changing the accented suffixes **а́**, **я́**, **ва́** of the latter into **и**, **е**, **ну**, or by shifting the accent :

| | | |
|------------|------------------|--------------|
| пленя́ть, | to captivate | *плени́ть |
| пуска́ть, | to let (go) | *пусти́ть |
| проща́ть, | to forgive | *прости́ть |
| дава́ть, | to give | *да́ть |
| покупа́ть, | to buy | *купи́ть |
| па́дать, | to fall | *пасть [*у-] |
| стоя́ть, | to stand | *ста́ть |
| дева́ть, | to put | *де́ть |
| надева́ть, | to put on | *наде́ть |
| избегáть, | to avoid | *избе́гнуть |
| ду́ть, | to blow | *ду́нуть |
| крича́ть, | to shout, to cry | *кри́кнуть |
| кида́ть, | to throw | *ки́нуть |
| гляде́ть, | to glance | *гля́нуть |
| двига́ть, | to move | *двину́ть |
| трога́ть, | to touch | *тро́нуть |

NOTE 1. The perfective verbs ending in **нуть** signify that the action is only performed once. (See § 79 (b).)

NOTE 2. A number of verbs ending in **нуть** have an inchoative character (which is quite distinct from the meaning of one performance only). These are of the imperfective aspect and can be turned into perfectives by a prefix. (See § 79 (a).)

Perfective

| | | | |
|------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| тону́ть, | to be drowning | *уто́ну́ть, | to be drowned |
| ги́бнуть, | to be perishing | *ноги́бнуть, | to perish |
| гáснуть, | to be extin- guished | *погáснуть, | to become ex- tinguished |
| ме́рзнуть, | to be freezing | *заме́рзнуть, | to get frozen |
| со́хнуть, | to turn dry | *засо́хнуть, | to become dry |
| тяну́ть, | to draw, to drag | *дотяну́ть, | to draw to the end etc. |

NOTE 3. Some imperfective verbs have their perfective counterpart in verbs of a different root :

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| ловить, to catch | *поймáть |
| говорить, to speak | *сказáть, to say |
| брать, to take | *взять |
| класть, to put | *положítь |
| бить, to beat | *удáрить, to strike |
| (besides | *побítь, to give a beating) |

§ 60a. A few verbs have both an imperfective and a perfective meaning (double aspect) :

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| велéть, to bid | я велю́, I bid, I shall bid |
| казнítь, to execute | он казнít, he executes, he will execute |
| рáнить, to wound | он рáнит, he wounds, he will wound |

§ 60b. A few verbs have no imperfective aspect and are used in the perfective only :

| |
|---|
| *опóмниться, to come to oneself again, to recover |
| *очнúться, to come back to consciousness |
| *погодítь, to wait |
| *поймáть, to catch |
| *сжáлиться, to take (have) pity |

§ 60c. A number of verbs have no perfective aspect, and are only used in the imperfective. They are mainly neuter verbs which describe a general state :

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| завísеть (от + <i>gen.</i>), | to depend on |
| недомогáть, | to be ailing |
| нуждáться (в + <i>loc.</i>), | to be in need (of) |
| обладáть (<i>instr.</i>), | to be in possession of |
| обоня́ть, | to smell |
| опасáться (<i>gen.</i>), | to fear, to be apprehensive (of) |
| отсу́тствовать, | to be absent |
| повиновáться (<i>dat.</i>), | to obey |
| подражáть (<i>dat.</i>), | to imitate |

| | |
|--|---|
| предвидеть, | to foresee |
| принадлежать (<i>dat.</i>), | to belong |
| присутствовать, | to be present |
| преследовать (<i>acc.</i>), | to persecute |
| сожалеть (<i>o + loc.</i>), | to regret |
| содержать, | to keep, maintain |
| состоять { (<i>из + gen.</i>) (<i>при + loc.</i>) } | to consist of ; to be (in the capacity of) |
| стоять, | to cost |
| участвовать (<i>в + loc.</i>), | to participate |
| etc. | |

§ 61. *Definite and Indefinite Verbs.*

In Russian nearly all verbs can imply both a definite (applied) meaning and an indefinite (general) meaning :

я учу can mean 'I teach now' and 'I teach habitually.'

However, the distinction between these two meanings is often expressed by two different verbs, or by the same verb in a different form (mostly in verbs conveying the idea of movement) :

| | |
|----------------|--|
| летать, | to fly habitually |
| лететь, | to fly now on a definite occasion and in a definite direction |
| птица летает, | a bird flies (habitually) |
| человек ходит, | a man goes („), walks |
| рыба плавает, | a fish swims („) |
| птица летит, | the bird flies (over the roof) |
| человек идёт, | the man goes (down the street) |
| рыба плывёт, | the fish swims (towards the boat) |

NOTE 1. The definite verbs of this class are mostly simple (primary) verbs ; the indefinite are derivatives (usually with the insertion of a suffix).

NOTE 2. Verbs in the indefinite class are always of the imperfective aspect, and their aspect is not altered even when a prepositional prefix is added for direction.

Definite verbs, on the other hand, become perfective by the addition of a prepositional prefix. (See § 63.)

| <i>Imperfective</i> | <i>Perfective</i> |
|--|-------------------|
| прилетать, to come flying | *прилететь |
| приходить, to come (here) | *придти |
| переносить, to carry across ; to suffer | *перенести |

§ 61a. The most frequently used verbs, of both the indefinite and definite class, are :

| <i>Indefinite</i> | <i>Definite</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| видать, to see | видеть |
| слыхать, to hear | слышать |
| бегать, to run | бежать |
| гонять, to drive | гнать |
| сажать, to plant | садить |
| носить, to carry ; to wear | нести |
| ходить, to go, to walk | итти [идти] |
| водить, to lead | вести |
| возить, to cart | везти |
| летать, to fly | лететь |
| плавать, to swim | плыть |
| ездить, to travel | ехать |

NOTE 1. The respective shade of meaning of the indefinite and definite forms of a Russian verb can be approximately conveyed in English as :

| | | | |
|--------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| I do | } (<i>indefinite</i>) | I am doing | } (<i>definite</i>) |
| I read | | I am reading | |

NOTE 2. видать, слыхать are never used in the present tense. They are used in the past only in an iterative sense :

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| не видал, | не слыхал | |
| видал, | слыхал | (See § 62.) |

NOTE 3. The indefinite verbs бѣгать, сажать, плá-вать, ѣздить are not used for the formation of new imperfectives with a directional prefix; their iterative forms бегать, сáживать, пливáть, езжáть take their place in such cases. (See §§ 63-64.)

§ 62. *Iterative Verbs.* (See § 58.)

The **imperfective-iterative** verbs are usually formed from imperfective verbs by changing the vowel of the stem in the infinitive (before **ть**) into **ыва**, **ива**, **ва**, or an accented **á** or **й**.

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| быть, | to be | { бывáть, бывáл [бывáло], | used to be [used to] |
| дѣлать, | to do | { дѣлывáть, дѣлывáл, | used to do |
| гулять, | to stroll; to be idle | { гúливáть, гúливáл | { used to stroll; used to be idle |
| ходить, | to go | { хáживáть, хáживáл, | used to go |
| сидѣть, | to sit | { сйживáть, сйживáл, | used to sit |
| знать, | to know | { знавáть, знавáл, | used to know |
| ѣхать, | to travel | { езжáть, езжáл, | used to travel |
| есть, [ед-ть] | to eat | { едáть, едáл, | used to eat |
| печь, [пек-ть] | to bake | { пекáть, пекáл, | used to bake |
| топить, | to heat | { тáпливáть, тáпливáл, | used to heat |

NOTE 1. **а, и** of the imperfective are commuted into **ж** in the iterative ; **е** is commuted into **и** ; **т** is commuted into **ч** or **ш**.

Often an **л** is inserted for euphony if the stem of the imperfective ends in a labial consonant.

о of the root is changed into **а**.

NOTE 2. Iterative verbs can be turned into imperfectives by prefixing a prepositional prefix, often with the meaning of the newly formed verb slightly altered. (See §§ 63-64.)

§ 63. *Prepositional Prefixes which frequently modify or alter the original meaning of an Imperfective Verb to which they are attached, besides turning it into a Perfective one.* (See § 60.)

The meaning and direction which prepositional prefixes impart to verbs to which they are attached are set out below. Nearly all the newly formed perfective verbs can be turned again into imperfectives, with the identical modified meaning, by tacking on the same prepositional prefix to the iterative (or indefinite) form of each verb (see §§ 61-62). These modified imperfectives are given in the right-hand column.

NOTE 1. The perfective verbs are shown by an asterisk (*).

NOTE 2. The first and second person singular and third person plural are given after each infinitive. The form of the second person singular indicates the class of conjugation to which the verb belongs, and also shows whether the accent is fixed or not. For further guidance see § 70 for the formation of the present tense, and § 72 for the accent.

For the formation of the past tense see § 83 ; for the accent in the past tense see § 84 ; for the formation of the imperative see § 82.

В- [во-] = *motion inside* :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ит-ти́, to go [ид-ти́] | *вой-ти́, to enter вой-ду́, -дѣшь, -дѣут | вход-и́ть вхож-у́, вхо́д-ишь вхо́д-ят |
| ѣх-а́ть, to travel, to drive | *въѣх-а́ть, to drive in, to enter, by driving въѣд-у, въѣд-ешь въѣд-ут | въезжа́-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |
| беж-а́ть, to run бег-у́, беж-и́шь бег-у́т | *вбеж-а́ть, to run in вбег-у́, вбеж-и́шь вбег-у́т | вбегá-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |

Вз- [взо-, воз-] = *motion upwards* :

| | | |
|--------|---|---|
| ит-ти́ | *взой-ти́, to rise (sun), to go up взойд-у́, взойд-ѣшь взойд-у́т | всход-и́ть всхож-у́, всхо́д-ишь всхо́д-ят |
|--------|---|---|

NOTE. **з** changes into **с** before a voiceless consonant :
встать (to get up) instead of взстать (**с** is then absorbed).

Вы- = *motion from inside* :

| | | |
|----------|---|---|
| ит-ти́ | *вы́й-ти, ¹ to get out, to go out вы́д-у (й is dropped) вы́д-ешь, вы́д-ут | выход-и́ть выхож-у́ выхо́д-ишь, выхо́д-ят |
| ѣх-а́ть | *вы́ѣх-а́ть, to drive out вы́ѣд-у, вы́ѣд-ешь вы́ѣд-ут | выезжа́-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |
| беж-а́ть | *вы́беж-а́ть, to run out вы́бег-у, вы́беж-и́шь вы́бег-ут | выбегá-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |

До- = *completion (to a finish)* :

| | | |
|----------|---|--|
| ит-ти́ | *дой-ти́, to go as far дойд-у́, дойд-ѣшь дойд-у́т | доход-и́ть дохож-у́, дохо́д-ишь дохóд-ят |
| ѣх-а́ть | *доѣх-а́ть, to drive as far доѣд-у, доѣд-ешь доѣд-ут | доезжа́-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |
| беж-а́ть | *добеж-а́ть, to run as far добег-у́, добеж-и́шь добег-у́т | добегá-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |

¹ **вы** always takes the stress-accent in perfective verbs, but not in imperfectives.

за- *has mostly a meaning of starting, also of turning in :*

| | | |
|---------|--|--------------------------------|
| ит-ти | *зай-ти, to look in ; to set (sun) | заход-ить |
| | зайд-у, зайд-ёшь зайд-ут | захож-у, заход-ишь заход-ят |
| ёх-ать | *заёх-ать, to look in (turn in) while driving | заезж-ать |
| | заёд-у, заёд-ёшь заёд-ут | -ю, -ёшь -ют |
| беж-ать | *забеж-ать, to run in | забег-ать |
| | забег-у, забеж-ишь забег-ут | -ю, -ёшь -ют |

на- = 1. *do in quantities* (mostly with transitive verbs) ;
 = 2. *have enough* (mostly with reflexive verbs) ;
 = 3. *get close to an object* (almost step on it) ;
 = 4. *put on, or on top :*

| | | |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| бр-ать, to take | *набр-ать, to get a quantity | набир-ать |
| бер-у, бер-ёшь бер-ут | набер-у, набер-ёшь набер-ут | -ю, -ёшь -ют |
| 2. пи-ть, to drink | *напи-ться, to drink enough ; to get drunk | напив-аться |
| пь-ю, пь-ёшь пь-ют | напь-юсь, напь-ёшься напь-ются | -юсь, -ёшься ются |
| 3. ит-ти | *най-ти, to come upon ; to find | наход-ить |
| | най-у, найд-ёшь най-ут | нахож-у, наход-ишь наход-ят |
| 4. кры-ть, to cover | *накр-ыть, to cover up ; to cover over | накрыв-ать |
| крó-ю, крó-ёшь крó-ют | накрó-ю, накрó-ёшь накрó-ют | -ю, -ёшь -ют |

о- [об-, обо-] = *motion about, around :*

| | | |
|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ит-ти | *обой-ти, to go round | обход-ить |
| | обойд-у, обойд-ёшь обойд-ут | обхож-у, обход-ишь обход-ят |

от- [ото-] = *motion away from :*

| | | |
|-------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ит-ти | *отой-ти, to go, move away | отход-ить |
| | -д-у, -д-ёшь -д-ут | отхож-у, отход-ишь отход-ят |

- пере-** = 1. *motion across* ;
 = 2. *repetition* ;
 = 3. *doing over again* :

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. ёх-ать | *переёх-ать, to drive across, over | переезжа́-ть |
| | переёд-у, переёд-ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| | переёд-ут | -ют |
| 2. чита́-ть | *перечита́-ть, to read over again, anew | перечи́тыва-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |
| 3. дела́-ть, to do | *передела́-ть, to alter | переделыва́-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |

- по-** 1. *denotes completion of action* ;
 2. *denotes action or state of short duration* :

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ес-ть, to eat | *поёс-ть, to have a meal | поеда́-ть, to be devouring |
| ем, ешь, ест | поём, поёшь, поёст | -ю, -ешь |
| ед-ём, ед-ите | поед-ём, поед-ите | -ют |
| ед-ят | поед-ят | |
| 2. говор-ить, to talk, to speak | *поговор-ить, to have a chat | погова́рива-ть, to go on talking |
| -ю, -ишь | -ю, -ишь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ят | -ят | -ют |

- под-** 1. *denotes motion under, up to* ;
 2. *gives the meaning of doing slightly* ;
 3. *denotes subterfuge* ;
 4. *gives idea of preliminary action* :

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|-----------------|
| 1. ёх-ать | *подъёх-ать, to drive up | подъезжа́-ть |
| | подъёд-у, подъёд-ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| | подъёд-ут | -ют |
| 2. краси́-ть, to paint | *подкраси́-ть, to touch up, to paint a little | подкра́шива-ть |
| краш-у | подкраш-у | -ю |
| красишь | подкрасишь | -ешь |
| крас-ят | подкрас-ят | -ют |
| 3. смотре́-ть, to look | *подсмотре́-ть, to espy | подсма́трива-ть |
| смотр-ю | подсмотр-ю | -ю |
| смот́р-ишь | подсмот́р-ишь | -ешь |
| смот́р-ят | подсмот́р-ят | -ют |

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| дѣла-ть, to do | *поддѣла-ть, to forge | поддѣлыва-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |
| 4. гото́в-ить, to prepare | * подгото́в-ить, to coach, to prepare | подгото́вля-ть |
| гото́вл-ю | подгото́вл-ю | -ю |
| гото́в-ишь | подгото́в-ишь | -ешь |
| гото́в-ят | подгото́в-ят | -ют |

при- denotes : 1. *arrival* ; 2. *fixing, attaching* :

| | | |
|------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. ит-ти́ | *прий-ти́, to come | приход-и́ть |
| | прид-у́, прид-ёшь | прихож-у́, приход-ишь |
| | прид-у́т (й is dropped) | приход-ят |
| ѣхать | *приѣх-ать, to arrive | приезжа́-ть |
| | приѣд-у, приѣд-ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| | приѣд-ут | -ют |
| 2. дѣла-ть | *придѣла-ть, to fix, attach | придѣлыва-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |

про- denotes : 1. *action through* ; 2. *motion through* ;
3. *covering a certain unit of time or space* :

| | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 1. би-ть, to beat | *пробѣ́-ть, to beat through | пробива́-ть |
| бѣ-ю, бѣ-ёшь | пробѣ́-ю, пробѣ́-ёшь | -ю, -ешь |
| бѣ-ют | пробѣ́-ют | -ют |
| 2. } ит-ти́ | *прой-ти́, to go through ; | проход-и́ть |
| 3. } | to go a certain distance | |

раз- denotes : 1. *division* ; 2. *dispersion* ;
3. *highest point of action or state* :

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|---------------|
| 1. би-ть, to beat | *разби́-ть, to beat asunder, to break up, to smash | разбива́-ть |
| | разобѣ́-ю, разобѣ́-ёшь | -ю, -ешь |
| | разобѣ́-ют | -ют |
| 2. ит-ти́, to go | *разой-ти́сь, to disperse, to separate | расход-и́ться |
| | разойд-у́сь | расхож-у́сь |
| | разойд-ёшься | расхо́д-ишься |
| | разойд-у́тся | расхо́д-ятся |
| 3. та́-ять, to melt (snow, ice) | *раста́-ять, to melt away | раста́ива-ть |
| -ю, -ешь, -ют | -ю, -ешь, -ют | -ю, -ешь, -ют |

c- denotes : 1. *moving away (often sideways)* ;
 2. *coming together (in reflexive verbs)* ;
 3. *completion of action* :

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| 1. двѣга-ть, to move -ю, -ешь, -ют | *сдвин-уть, to shift -у, -ешь, -ут | сдвига-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| 2. ит-ті | *сой-тісь, to come together сойд-у́сь, сойд-ѣ́шься сойд-у́тся | сход-і́ться схож-у́сь, сход-и́шься сход-я́тся |

NOTE. **сходіть** means : just to go once.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| 3. жеч-ь, to burn [жег-ть] | *сжечь, to burn up сожг-у́, сожж-ѣ́шь сожг-у́т | сжига-ть -ю, -ешь -ют |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|

y- means mostly : *away into distance ; disappearance* :

| | | |
|---------|---------------------------------------|----------|
| ит-ті | *уйті, to go away | уходіть |
| беж́ать | *убеж́ать, to run away | убеѓать |
| ѣх́ать | *уѣх́ать, to go away, on a journey | уезж́ать |

NOTE 1. The prepositional prefixes **въ** [воѡ], **паз**, change into **ве** [вое], **пае** if they are tacked on to verbs beginning with a voiceless consonant :

всходіть, to come up, to rise
 *раст́аять, to melt away

NOTE 2. Besides the prepositional prefixes enumerated above there are a few others, such as: **из**, **низ**, **без**, **пред**, denoting roughly : out, down, without, before. The student is advised to verify the exact modified meaning of any compound verb by consulting the dictionary, even if he is clear about the meaning of the parent verb and of the directional meaning of the prepositional prefix.

NOTE 3. If a prepositional prefix ending in a consonant is attached to a verb beginning with the soft vowels **я**, **ю**, **е**, а **ъ** (hard sign) is inserted for euphony. The soft **и** is usually turned into **ѣ**.

NOTE 4. A modified directional meaning is imparted by prepositional prefixes when they are attached to nouns derived from verbs :

| | |
|----------|-------------------------|
| вход, | entry |
| уход, | departure |
| восход, | rise (sunrise) |
| заход, | setting (of the sun) |
| приход, | arrival ; income |
| расход, | expenditure |
| доход, | income |
| проход, | passage |
| находка, | find |
| обход, | roundabout way |
| отход, | departure (of train) |
| отъезд, | departure (of a person) |
| переход, | transition |
| перевод, | translation |
| сходка, | meeting |
| сход, | meeting, descent |
| etc. | |

§ 64. Below is a list of a few main groups of verbs in frequent use which receive a modified, and often different, meaning when prefixed by a prepositional prefix. In the list are set out :

- (1) The original (parent) verb.
- (2) The derivative perfective, through the addition of the prepositional prefix, with its modified meaning.
- (3) The modified perfective turned imperfective again through the addition of an iterative suffix. (See §§ 61-62.)

It will be seen that not in all cases does the same prepositional prefix convey to the derivative verbs the identical meaning and direction.

NOTE. In the conjugation patterns the 1st and 2nd person singular and 3rd person plural are given.

1. (a) **говорить — казать group.**

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| говор-ить to speak | *сказ-ать to tell | ска́зыва-ть to say |
| <i>Conjugation pattern.</i> | | |
| -ю, -ишь, -ят | скаж-у ска́ж-ешь ска́ж-ут | -ю -ешь -ют |
| <i>Imperative.</i> | | |
| -й, -йте | скажи [-те] | -й [-йте] |
| <i>Past.</i> -л, -ла, -ло, -ли | | |

Accent of past tense is on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| *вы́каз-ать, to show | выка́зыва-ть |
| *дока́з-ать, to prove | дока́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *зака́з-ать, to order | зака́зыва-ть (<i>y + gen.</i>) |
| *нака́з-ать, to punish | нака́зыва-ть |
| *ока́з-ать, to render | ока́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *ока́з-аться, to turn out | ока́зыва-ться (<i>instr.</i>) |
| *отка́з-ать, to refuse | отка́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *отка́з-аться (<i>neuter</i>), to refuse | отка́зыва-ться (<i>от + gen.</i>) |
| *переска́з-ать, to repeat | переска́зыва-ть |
| *подска́з-ать, to prompt | подска́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *пока́з-ать, to show | пока́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *прика́з-ать, to give an order | прика́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *расска́з-ать, to relate, to tell | расска́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |
| *ука́з-ать, to indicate | ука́зыва-ть (<i>dat.</i>) |

(b) **говорить — говаривать group.**

| | |
|--|---|
| *вы́говор-ить, to reserve for oneself; to utter | выговáрива-ть (<i>себе + acc.</i>) -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| *договор-ить, to finish talking | договáрива-ть |
| *договор-иться, to come to an agreement | договáрива-ться (<i>о + loc.</i>) |
| *заговор-ить, to begin to speak | заговáрива-ть |
| *наговор-ить, to slander | наговáрива-ть |

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| *отговор-ить, to dissuade | отговáрива-ть |
| *переговор-ить, to talk over | переговáрива-ть (о, об + loc.) |
| *поговор-ить, to have a talk | (no new imperfective form) |
| *подговор-ить, to incite, to induce | подговáрива-ть |
| *приговор-ить, to condemn, to sentence | приговáрива-ть |
| *уговор-ить, to persuade, to induce | уговáрива-ть |

NOTE. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as говор-ить — сказ-ать. All the imperfective forms are conjugated as говáрива-ть — скáзыва-ть. The imperfectives have a fixed accent.

2. да-ва́-ть — да-ть group (to give) (dat. + acc.).

*да-ть

Conjugation pattern.

| | | |
|--------|------|----------|
| да-ю́ | дам | дад-и́м |
| да-ёшь | дашь | дад-и́те |
| да-ю́т | даст | дад-у́т |

Imperative.

да́-й, -те

| | |
|--|---------------|
| *вы́да-ть, to issue, to give out | выд-ав-а́ть |
| *зада́-ть, to set (a task or question, etc.) | зад-ав-а́ть |
| *отда́-ть, to return ; to give away | отд-ав-а́ть |
| *переда́-ть, to hand over, to pass on, to tell | перед-ав-а́ть |
| *пода́-ть, to hand, to serve | под-ав-а́ть |
| *прида́-ть, to add, to attach | прид-ав-а́ть |
| *прода́-ть, to sell | прод-ав-а́ть |
| *разда́-ть, to distribute | разд-ав-а́ть |
| *сда́-ть, to hand in | сд-ав-а́ть |

NOTE 1. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as да-ть ; all the imperfective forms are conjugated as да-ва́-ть. The suffix **ва** of the imperfective is dropped in the conjugation of the present tense. The accent is shifted to the personal terminations.

NOTE 2. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine, but goes back to the prefix in the masculine, neuter, and plural :

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| за́дал, -а́, -о, -и | при́дал, -а́, -о, -и |
| о́тдал, -а́, -о, -и | про́дал, -а́, -о, -и |
| пе́редал, -а́, -о, -и | ро́здал, -а́, -о, -и ¹ |
| по́дал, -а́, -о, -и | |

3. брать — взять group (to take).

| | | |
|---|--------------|--|
| брать | *взять | <i>Iterative</i> |
| <i>Conjugation pattern.</i> | | |
| бер-у́ | возьм-у́ | бира́-ть |
| бер-ёшь | возьм-ёшь | бира́-ю |
| бер-у́т | возьм-у́т | бира́-ют |
| <i>Imperative.</i> берй́, -те | возьми́, -те | (not frequently used, except for forming imperfective forms) |
| *вы́бр-ать, to select | | выбира́-ть |
| *забр-а́ть, to take away | | забира́-ть |
| *набр-а́ть, to gather | | набира́-ть |
| *отобр-а́ть, ² to take away | | отбира́-ть |
| *подобр-а́ть, ² to pick up | | подбира́-ть |
| *прибр-а́ть, to tidy up | | прибира́-ть |
| *разобр-а́ть, ² to sort out, to take to pieces | | разбира́-ть |
| *собр-а́ть, to collect, to gather | | собира́-ть |
| *убр-а́ть, to clear away | | убира́-ть |

NOTE. All perfective forms are conjugated as брать ; all imperfective as бира́ть. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine : убрáл, убралá, убрáло, убрáли.

4. -ста-ва́-ть — ста-ть group (to become).

NOTE. -става́ть has no independent meaning of its own.

Conjugation pattern.

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| -става́ть | *ста́ть |
| -ста-ю́, -ста-ёшь, -ста-ю́т | ста́н-у, ста́н-ёшь, ста́н-ут |
| <i>Imperative.</i> -става́й, -те | ста́нь, -те |
| <i>Past.</i> -л, -ла, -ло, -ли | |

Accent of past tense is on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

¹ Masculine, neuter, and plural change a of prefix into ó.

² The euphonic o of the prefix is dropped in the present form : отберу́, подберу́, etc.

| | |
|--|--|
| *вста-ть, to get up | вста-ва́-ть |
| *доста́-ть, to get, to obtain | доста-ва́-ть |
| *заста́-ть, to find (a person), to meet with | заста-ва́-ть |
| *наста́-ть, to approach, to come (seasons, time) | наста-ва́-ть |
| *оста́-ться, to remain, to stay | оста-ва́-ться |
| *отста́-ть, to get behind | отста-ва́-ть (<i>absolute</i> , or <i>от + gen.</i>) |
| *переста́-ть, to cease | переста-ва́-ть |
| *приста́-ть, to attach oneself | приста-ва́-ть (<i>к + dat.</i>) |
| *расста́-ться, to part | расста-ва́-ться (<i>с + instr.</i>) |
| *уста́-ть, to get tired | уста-ва́-ть |

NOTE. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as *стать*; all the imperfectives as *-ставать*. The suffix *ва* of the imperfective is dropped in the present tense, and the accent goes over to the personal terminations. In the past tense the suffix *ва* is not dropped.

5. **быва́-ть — бы-ть** group (to be).

Conjugation pattern.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| быва́ть | быть |
| быва́-ю, быва́-ешь, быва́-ют | бу́д-у, бу́д-ешь, бу́д-ут |
| <i>Imperative.</i> быва́й, -те | бу́дь, -те |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| *доб-ы́ть, to obtain, to procure | добыва́-ть |
| *заб-ы́ть, to forget | забыва́-ть |
| *поб-ы́ть, to stay a short time | побыва́-ть |
| *приб-ы́ть, to arrive | прибыва́-ть |
| *проб-ы́ть, to stay some definite time | пробыва́-ть |
| *сб-ы́ть, to dispose of | сбыва́-ть |

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as *быть*; all the imperfectives as *быва́ть*. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine, but goes to the prefix in the masculine, neuter, and plural in :

| |
|--------------------------------|
| добы́ть, добы́л, -а́, -о, -и |
| побы́ть, побы́л, -а́, -о, -и |
| прибы́ть, прибы́л, -а́, -о, -и |
| пробы́ть, пробы́л, -а́, -о, -и |

6. **дева́-ть — де-ть group (to put).***Conjugation pattern.*

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| дева́ть | *деть |
| дева́-ю, дева́-ешь, дева́-ют | де́н-у, де́н-ешь, де́н-ут |
| <i>Imper.</i> дева́й, -те | де́нь, -те |
| <i>Past.</i> дева́л, -а, -о, -и | де́л, -а, -о, -и |
| *де́-ться, to put (get) oneself to take refuge | дева́-ться |
| *наде́-ть, to put on | надева́-ть |
| *оде́-ться, to dress oneself | одева́-ться |
| *разде́-ться, to undress oneself | раздева́-ться |
| *переоде́-ться, to change (clothes) | переодева́-ться |

NOTE 1. The reflexive particle **ся** or **сь** is tacked on immediately after the personal termination in conjugation.

NOTE 2. The suffix **ва** in the imperfective verbs of groups 5 and 6 is *not* dropped in the conjugation of the present tense.

NOTE 3. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as **деть**; all the imperfectives as **дева́ть**.

7. **-има́ть — -я́ть group (to take).**

In verbs of this group the suffixes **им** and **я** are derived from a Slavonic root which had a nasal element of **м**. Prepositional prefixes take a euphonic **н** for the formation of derivatives, with the exception of **взять** (see § 73f), in the infinitive. **-има́ть** and **-я́ть** have no independent meaning in modern Russian.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| *взя́-ть (see Group 3) | взима́-ть, to collect (taxes, etc.) |
| <i>Past.</i> взя́л, взя́ла, -о, -и | |
| *доня́-ть, to vex, to plague | донима́-ть |
| дойм-у́, дойм-ёшь, дойм-у́т | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> дойми, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> до́нял, до́няла, до́няло, до́няли | |
| *за́ня-ть, to occupy; to borrow | занима́-ть |
| займ-у́, займ-ёшь, займ-у́т | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> займи, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> за́нял, за́няла, за́няло, за́няли | |

| | | |
|---------------|--|--|
| | *наня́-ть, to hire | нанима́-ть |
| | найм-у, найм-ёшь, найм-у́т | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | найми́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | на́нял, наняла́, на́няло, на́няли | |
| | *обни́-ть, to embrace | обнима́-ть |
| | обним-у́, обни́м-ешь, обни́м-ут | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | обними́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | о́бнял, обняла́, о́бняло, о́бняли | |
| | *отня́-ть, to take away | отнима́-ть (<i>acc.</i> + у, от от + <i>gen.</i>) |
| | отним-у́, отни́м-ешь, отни́м-ут | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | отними́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | о́тнял, отняла́, о́тняло, о́тняли | |
| | *переня́-ть, to intercept; to imitate | перенима́-ть (<i>acc.</i> + у + <i>gen.</i>) |
| | перейм-у́, перейм-ёшь, перейм-у́т | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | перейми́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | пе́ренял, переняла́, пе́реняло, -ли | |
| | *подня́-ть, to raise, to lift | поднима́-ть |
| | подним-у́, подни́м-ешь, подни́м-ут | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | подними́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | по́днял, подняла́, по́дняло, -ли | |
| | *пони́-ть, to grasp, to understand | понима́-ть |
| | пойм-у́, пойм-ёшь, пойм-у́т | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | пойми́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | по́нял, поняла́, по́няло, -ли | |
| | *приня́-ть, to receive, to accept | принима́-ть |
| | *приня́-ться, to set oneself to | принима́-ться (<i>за</i> + <i>acc.</i>) |
| | прим-у́ (сь), при́м-ешь (ся) | -ю, -ешь (сь, ся) |
| | при́м-ут (ся) | -ют (ся) |
| <i>Imper.</i> | прими́, -те | -й, -йте (сь) |
| <i>Past.</i> | при́нял, приняла́, при́няло, -ли [ся, ась, ось, ись] | |
| | *сня́-ть, to take off | снима́-ть (<i>acc.</i> + с + <i>gen.</i>) |
| | сним-у́, сни́м-ешь, сни́м-ут | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | сними́, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | сня́л, сняла́, сня́ло, -ли | |

| | | |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|
| | * снѣ-ться , to take one's photograph | снимѣ-ться |
| | сним-ѹсь, сним-ешься, сним-утс | -юсь, -ешься, -ются |
| <i>Imper.</i> | сним-йсь, сним-йтесь | -йсь, -йтесь |
| <i>Past.</i> | снялся, снялась, снялись | |
| | * унѣ-ть , to restrain, to calm | унимѣ-ть (асс.) |
| | уйм-ѹ, уйм-ѣшь, уйм-ѹт | -ю, -ешь, -ют |
| <i>Imper.</i> | уйми, -те | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past.</i> | унял, уняла, уняли, -ли | |

NOTE. In the imperfective forms the euphonic **н** of the infinitive is retained in conjugation throughout. In the perfective forms the **н** is retained only if the prepositional prefix ends in a consonant (**от, об, под, с**). If the prepositional prefix ends in a vowel the **н** is dropped in conjugation. The **я** of the perfective infinitive (**-ять**) is replaced in conjugation by **йм** after a prefix ending in a vowel, and by **им** after a prefix ending in a consonant.

The accent. In the perfective verbs of this group the accent is on the personal terminations in the present form if the prefixes end in a vowel (**до, за, на, пере, по, у**), with the exception of **при**. But if the prefix ends in a consonant (**об, от, под, с**) the accent is on the personal termination in the first person of the present form but goes back by one syllable in all the other persons. The same applies to **принѣть**. In the past tense the accent is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine; in the masculine, neuter, and plural it goes back to the prefix.

8. **ходѣть** — **итѣть** group. (See § 63.)

9. **ѣздить** — **сѣжѣть-ѣхать** group. (See § 63.)

9а. **бежѣть** — **бегѣть** group. (See § 63.)

10. **нос-ѣть** — **нес-тѣть** group (to carry, to wear).

Conjugation pattern.

| | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | нош-ѹ, нѣс-ишь, нѣс-ят | нес-ѹ, нес-ѣшь, нес-ѹт |
| <i>Imper.</i> | нос-ѣ, -ѣте | нес-ѣ, -ѣте |
| <i>Past.</i> | носѣл, -а, -о, -и | нѣс, несла, -ѣ, -ѣ |

| | | |
|----------------------|--|---|
| нес-ти́, to carry | *внес-ти́, to carry in | внос-и́ть (в + acc.) |
| | *вынес-ти, to carry out ; to endure | вынос-и́ть (из + gen.) |
| | *донес-ти́, to carry as far ; to report | донос-и́ть (до + gen., acc = dat.) |
| | *занес-ти́, to take in ; to enter (in book-keeping) | занос-и́ть |
| | *отнес-ти́, to take to a certain place | относ-и́ть |
| | *перенес-ти́, to carry across ; to bear, to endure | перенос-и́ть |
| | *понес-ти́, to carry away | понос-и́ть, to run down somebody, to slander |
| | *пронес-ти́, to carry past | пронос-и́ть |
| | *принес-ти́, to fetch | принос-и́ть |
| | *разнес-ти́, to carry in all directions | разнос-и́ть |
| | *унес-ти́, to carry away | унос-и́ть |

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as нести́ ; all the imperfectives as носить.

11. воз-и́ть — вез-ти́ group (to cart).

Conjugation pattern.

| | | |
|--------|---|--|
| | вож-у́, вóз-ишь, вóз-ят | вез-у́, вез-ёшь, вез-у́т |
| Imper. | воз-и́, -и́те | вез-и́, -и́те |
| Past. | вози́л, -а, -о, -и | вёз, везла́, -о́, -и́ |
| везти́ | *ввез-ти́, to cart in ; to import | ввоз-и́ть (в + acc.) |
| | *вывез-ти, to cart out | вывоз-и́ть (из + gen.) |
| | *довез-ти́, to cart as far | довоз-и́ть (до + gen.) |
| | *завез-ти́, to cart in ; to cart beyond | завоз-и́ть |
| | *навез-ти́, to cart in quantities | навоз-и́ть |
| | *отвез-ти́, to cart off | отвоз-и́ть |
| | *повез-ти́, to cart off, away | (no corresponding imperfective; повоз-и́ть means to go on carting for a little time) |
| | *перевез-ти́, to cart across | перевоз-и́ть (через + acc.) |
| | *развез-ти́, to cart in all directions | развоз-и́ть |
| | *свез-ти́, to cart off, to cart together | своз-и́ть |
| | *увеа-ти́, to cart away | увоз-и́ть |

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as везти́ all the imperfectives as вози́ть.

12. **вод-ѣть — вес-ѣть group (to lead).***Conjugation pattern.*

| | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Вож-ѣ, вод-ѣшь, вод-ѣят</i> | <i>вед-ѣ, вед-ѣшь, вед-ѣют</i> |
| <i>Imper. вод-ѣ, -ѣте</i> | <i>вед-ѣ, -ѣте</i> |
| <i>Past. водѣл, -а, -о, -и</i> | <i>вел, велѣ, -ѣ, -и</i> |
| вес-ѣть *ввес-ѣть, to lead in | ввод-ѣть (в + <i>acc.</i>) |
| *вывес-ѣть, to lead out | вывод-ѣть (из + <i>gen.</i>) |
| *довес-ѣть, to lead as far ; to bring (to the notice) | довод-ѣть (до + <i>gen.</i>) |
| *завес-ѣть, to install ; to lead beyond | завод-ѣть |
| *навес-ѣть, to lead on ; to direct | навод-ѣть |
| *отвес-ѣть, to lead away | отвод-ѣть |
| *повес-ѣть, to lead off | (no corresponding imperfective) |
| *перевес-ѣть, to transfer ; to translate | перевод-ѣть |
| *провес-ѣть, to lead past, to conduct (to dupe someone, to pass the time) | провод-ѣть |
| NOTE. *провод-ѣть means : to escort, to see off (see § 66) | проводж-ѣть |
| *развес-ѣть, to distribute ; to separate ; to cultivate | развод-ѣть |
| *свес-ѣть, to lead on one occasion ; to bring together ; to settle (account) | свод-ѣть |
| *увес-ѣть, to lead away | увод-ѣть |

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as *вести* ; all the imperfectives as *водить*.

13. **пад-ѣть — [у] пасть [пад-ѣть] group (to fall).***Conjugation pattern.*

| | |
|---|---------------------|
| <i>пад-ѣю, -ѣешь, -ѣют</i> | *упасть |
| <i>Imper. пада-ѣ, -ѣте</i> | упад-ѣ, -ѣешь, -ѣют |
| <i>Past. падал, -а, -о, -и</i> | -ѣ, -ѣте |
| | пал, -а, -о, -и |
| *попасть (в + <i>acc.</i>), to fall into ; to hit | попад-ѣть |
| *пропасть, to be lost | пропад-ѣть |
| *распасться, to fall to pieces, to fall to ruin (<i>absolute</i> , or на + <i>acc.</i>) | распад-ѣть |

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| *совпасть (с + <i>instr.</i>), to coincide with | совпадать |
| *спасть (с + <i>gen.</i>), to fall off | спадать |
| *упасть, to fall (off) | (no new imperfective form) |

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as упасть. All the imperfectives as падать.

14. кла́дыва-ть — клае-ть [клад-ть]; -лага́-ть — -лож-ить group (to put).

Conjugation pattern.

| | |
|--|---|
| кла́дыва-ю, -ешь, -ют | клад-у́, -ёшь, -у́т |
| -лага́-ю, -ешь, -ют | -лож-у́, -ишь, -а́т |
| <i>Imper.</i> -й, -йте | -й, -йте |
| <i>Past:</i> -л, -ла, -ло, -ли | клял, -а, -о, -и -ложил, -а, -о, -и |
| *вложить (в + <i>acc.</i>), to put in, to pay in | вкла́дывать |
| *выложить (из + <i>gen.</i>), to put out (lay out), to unpack | выкла́дывать |
| *доложить, to add (<i>acc.</i>), to report (<i>dat.</i>) | докла́дывать |
| *заложить, to pledge, to mortgage (в + <i>loc.</i>); to harness (horse) (в + <i>acc.</i>) | закла́дывать |
| *изложить, to expound, to state | излага́ть |
| *наложить, to put on, to impose | { накла́дывать, to put on налага́ть, to impose |
| *отложить, to put aside, to postpone (на + <i>acc.</i>) | откла́дывать |
| *подложить, to put under | подкла́дывать |
| *положить, to put | полага́ть, to suppose |
| *положиться (на + <i>acc.</i>), to depend upon | полагаться |
| *переложить (из + <i>gen.</i> + в + <i>acc.</i>), to put to another place; to change horses | перекла́дывать |
| *предложить (<i>dat.</i>), to offer | предлага́ть |
| *приложить, to attach; to enclose (при + <i>loc.</i>); to apply, to affix (<i>acc.</i> + к + <i>dat.</i>) | прикла́дывать |
| | прилага́ть |
| *разложить, to analyse; to resolve (на + <i>acc.</i>); to lay out, to unpack | { разлага́ть раскла́дывать |
| *разложиться, to become decomposed | разлагаться |
| *сложить, to put together | скла́дывать |
| *уложить, to put away, to pack up (trunk, etc.) (<i>acc.</i> + в + <i>acc.</i>) | укла́дывать |

NOTE 1. All the perfectives are conjugated as -ложить; all the imperfectives either as кла́дывать or as -лага́ть.

NOTE 2. New imperfectives are formed from the iterative *кładaвaть* when the new verb has a concrete, literal meaning. If the verb has a metaphorical meaning it is formed from the iterative *-лaгaть*.

§ 65. *Formation of Perfective Verbs from Imperfectives in frequent use by prefixing a prepositional prefix without altering their fundamental meaning.*

The prefixes so used are: *по, с, (раз), на, у* (see § 60). The appropriate prefix used for the perfective is given in brackets :

блaгoдaр-и́ть [**по-*], to thank
-ю, -и́шь, -и́т
бyд-и́ть [**раз-*], to wake, to call
бyж-у́, бyд-и́шь, бyд-я́т
бeжaть [**по-*], to run (see § 63)
вapи́ть [**с-*], to cook
вap-ю́, вap-и́шь, вap-я́т
вeр-и́ть [**по-*], to believe, to trust
-ю, -и́шь, -и́т
ви́д-е́ть [**у-*], to see
ви́ж-у́, ви́д-и́шь, ви́д-я́т
вeзти́ [**по-*], to cart (see § 64)
вeстí [**по-*], to lead (see § 64)
гoвopи́ть [**по-*], to speak (see § 64)
гop-е́ть [**с-*], to burn
-ю, -и́шь, -и́т
гoтoв-и́ть [**при-*], to prepare
гoтoв-лю́, гoтoв-и́шь, гoтoв-я́т
дeлa-ть [**с-*], to do
-ю, -eшь, -ют
дeлaтcя́ [**с-*], to become (*instr.*)
дyмa-ть [**по-*], to think
-ю, -eшь, -ют
дыш-а́ть [**по-*], to breathe (*absolute*
and *instr.*)
дыш-у́, дыш-и́шь, дыш-а́т
гулa-ть [**по-*], to stroll, to take a walk
-ю, -eшь, -ют

eздити́ [**с-*],¹ to travel
eхaть [**по-*], to travel (see § 63)
е́сть [**по-*], to eat (see § 63)
ждa-ть [**пoдo-*], to wait (*absolute*
and *gen.*)
жд-у́, жд-ёшь, жд-ут
желa-ть [**по-*], to wish (*gen.*)
-ю, -eшь, -ют
жeчь [**с-*], to burn (see § 73)
зaвтpaкa-ть [**по-*], to have breakfast
-ю, -eшь, -ют
звa-ть [**по-*], to call
зoв-у́, зoв-ёшь, зoв-у́т
знaкoм-и́тьcя [**по-*], to get, to become, acquainted (*c + instr.*)
-люсь, -и́шьcя, -я́тcя
знa-ть [**у-*], to know
-ю, eшь, -ют
звoн-и́ть [**по-*], to ring, to ring up (*dat.*)
звoн-ю́, звoн-и́шь, звoн-я́т
игpá-ть [**по-*], to play
-ю, -eшь, -ют
иск-а́ть [**по-*], to seek, to look for (*gen.*)
ищ-у́, ищ-eшь, ищ-ут
итти́ [**по-*], to go (see § 63)²

¹ to travel on one occasion (see § 63).

² иду́, идёшь, идут.

каз-аться [*по-], to appear, to seem
(*instr.*)

каж-усь, каж-ешься, каж-утся
крич-ать [*за-], to shout, to cry
-ý, -ишь, -ят

кур-ить [*по-], to smoke
кур-ю, кур-ишь, кур-ят
куша-ть [*по-], to eat

-ю, -ешь, -ют
леж-ать [*по-], to lie; [*лечь, to
lie down] (see § 73).

леж-у, леж-ишь, леж-ат
люб-ить [*по-], to love, to be fond
of

люб-лю, люб-ишь, люб-ят
молч-ать [*по-], to be silent
молч-у, молч-ишь, молч-ат
also *замолч-ать, to stop talk-
ing, to shut up

мёрзн-уть [*по-], to freeze
-у, -ешь, -ут

*замёрзн-уть, to become frozen
моч-ь [*с-], to be able to, to be in a
position to

мог-у, мог-ешь, мог-ут
нести [*по-, *с-], to carry (see
§ 64)

носить [*по-], to wear (see § 64)
нрав-иться [*по-], to please, to be
pleasing (*dat.*)

-люсь, -ишься, -ятся
обёда-ть [*по-], to dine, to have
dinner

-ю, -ешь, -ют
пе-ть [*с-], to sing
по-ю, по-ёшь, по-ют

печ-ь [*с-, *ис-], to bake
пек-у, печ-ёшь, пек-ут
пис-ать [*на-], to write

пиш-у, пиш-ешь, пиш-ут
пи-ть [*по-, *вы-], to drink

пь-ю, пь-ёшь, пь-ют
плак-ать [*по-], to cry, to weep
плач-у, плач-ешь, плач-ут

*заплак-ать, to start crying

пла-ть [*за-], to pay
плач-у, плач-ишь, плач-ят, pro-
nounced as плотишь, плотят
помн-ить [*вс-], to remember

-ю, -ишь, -ят
прос-ить [*по-], to ask, to request
(*absolute and gen.*)

прош-у, прós-ишь, прós-ят
рабо́та-ть [*по-], to work
-ю, -ешь, -ют

рв-ать [*по-], to tear
рв-у, рв-ёшь, рв-ут
рёз-ать [*по-], to cut

рёж-у, рёж-ешь, рёж-ут
сид-еть [*по-], to sit
сид-у, сид-ишь, сид-ят
сл-ать [*по-], to send, to dis-
patch

шл-ю, шл-ёшь, шл-ют
слуша-ть [*по-], to listen
-ю, -ешь, -ют

слыш-ать [*у-], to hear
-у, -ишь, -ат
смотре-ть [*по-], to look

смотре-ю, смотре-ишь, смотре-ят
сме-яться [*по-], to laugh
сме-юсь, сме-ёшься, сме-ются

сп-ать [*по-], to sleep
сп-лю, сп-ишь, сп-ят
ста́в-ить [*по-], to put, to put up,
to place

-лю, -ишь, -ят
сто-ять [*по-], to stand
сто-ю, сто-ишь, сто-ят
сто-ить, to cost. (No perfective in
use.)

сто́-ю, сто́-ишь, сто́-ят
сты-ть [сты́н-уть], [*о-], to turn
cold (food, etc.)

-ну, -нешь, -нут
теря-ть [*по-], to lose
-ю, -ешь, -ют

тон-у́ть [*у-, *по-], to drown, to
sink
тон-у́, то́н-ешь, то́н-ут

| | |
|---|---|
| топ-и́ть [<i>*вы-</i>], to heat (stove) | хот-е́ть [<i>*за-</i>], to wish, to want |
| [<i>*у-</i>], to drown | хоч-у́, хоч-е́шь, хочет; хоти́м, |
| [<i>*ра-</i>], to melt | хоти́те, хотя́т |
| топ-лю́, топ-и́шь, топ-я́т | цел-ов-а́ть[с _я] [<i>*по-</i>], to kiss (one |
| *затоп-и́ть, to light (stove) | another) (с + <i>instr.</i>) |
| уме́ть [<i>*с-</i>], to be able to, to have | цел-у́-ю[с _я], цел-у́-е́шь[с _я], цел- |
| the ability | у́-ю[с _я] |
| -ю, -е́шь, -ю́т | чита́-ть [<i>по-</i>], to read |
| ужина́-ть [<i>*по-</i>], to sup | -ю, -е́шь, -ю́т |
| -ю, -е́шь, -ю́т | ши-ть [<i>*с-</i>], to sew |
| учи́-ть[с _я], [<i>*по-</i>], to teach (to | шь-ю, шь-е́шь, шь-ю́т |
| study, with с _я) | |
| уч-у́[с _я], уч-и́шь[с _я], уч-а́т[с _я] | |

NOTE. In all the verbs in the above list the prepositional prefix imparts to the perfective form just the idea of completion, or of commencement, of the action or state; occasionally it also shows that the action or state goes on for a short time only (mostly with the prefix **по*). In no case does the prepositional prefix lend to the perfective verb any altered or materially modified meaning. Consequently there is normally no need to find a new imperfective form for such verbs, with the same prepositional prefix, for expressing an idea of duration or repetition. Exceptions are presented by the verbs *горéть*, *жечь*, *слать*. New imperfective forms can be formed for these: *сгорáть*, *сжигáть*, *посылáть*.

§ 66. A few verbs in current use take their perfective form by changing the iterative suffix *á*, *я́* of the imperfective form into *и* or *у* (*ну*), or by dropping the iterative suffixes *ыв*, *ив*, *и*, *ы*:

| | |
|--|---|
| возвраща́-ться, to return | *возвра-ти́ться |
| | -щу́сь, -ти́шься, -тя́тся |
| встреча́-ть[с _я] (с + <i>instr.</i>), to meet | *встрé-тить[с _я] |
| | -чу[с _я], -тишь[с _я], -тят[с _я] |
| вынима́-ть, to take out | *вын-уть |
| | -у, -е́шь, -ут |
| замеча́-ть, to notice | *замé-тить |
| | -чу, -тишь, -тят |
| зараба́тыва-ть, to earn | *зарабо́та-ть |
| | -ю, -е́шь, -ю́т |

| | |
|---|--|
| засыпа́-ть, to fall asleep | *засн-у́ть ¹ -у́, -ёшь, -у́т |
| конча́-ть, to finish | *кбнч-ить -у, -ишь, -ят |
| нагиба́-ться, to stoop | *нагн-у́ться ² -у́сь, -ёшься, -у́тся |
| начина́-ть, to begin | *нач-а́ть -ну́, -нёшь, -ну́т |
| оставля́-ть, to leave | *оста́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят |
| отворя́-ть, to open | *отвор-и́ть -ю, -ишь, -ят |
| отвеча́-ть, to answer | *отве́-тить -чу, -тишь, -тят |
| отдыха́-ть, to rest | *отдохн-у́ть -у́, -ёшь, -у́т |
| пада́-ть, to fall | *(у) па́сть [пад-ть] упад-у́, -ёшь, -у́т |
| повторя́-ть, to repeat | *повтор-ить -ю, -ишь, -ят |
| позволя́-ть (<i>dat.</i>), to permit, to allow | *позво́л-ить -ю, -ишь, -ят |
| поздравля́-ть, to congratulate | *поздра́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят |
| пока́зыва-ть (See § 64 for other verbs of the -каза́ть group.) | *показа́ть |
| покупа́-ть, to buy | *куп-и́ть -лю́, -ишь, -ят |
| получа́-ть, to receive | *получ-и́ть -у́, -ишь, -ат |
| помога́-ть (<i>dat.</i> + <i>v</i> + <i>loc.</i>), to assist | *помо́чь помогу́, помо́жешь, помо́гут |
| поправля́-ть, to repair, to correct | *попра́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят |
| посеща́-ть, to visit | *посе́-тить -щу́, -тишь, -тят |
| посыла́-ть (See note to § 65.) | *посла́ть |
| починя́-ть, to repair | *почин-и́ть -ю, -ишь, -ят [-ишь, -ят] |

¹ See note to проспну́ться, next page.² б is dropped before н for euphony.

| | |
|---|---|
| предлага́-ть (<i>dat.</i>), to offer | *предложи́ть предложу́, предлож́ишь, предложат |
| прибавля́-ть, to add | *прибави́ть -лю, -ишь, -ят |
| провожа́-ть, to escort, to see off (see § 64, group 12) | *проводи́ть провожу́, провод́ишь, проводят |
| просыпа́-ться, to wake up | *просн-у́ться ¹ -у́сь, -ёшься, -у́тся |
| реша́-ть, to decide; to solve | *реш-и́ть -у́, -и́шь, -а́т |
| реша́-ться (на + <i>acc.</i>), to make up one's mind | *реш-и́ться -у́сь, -и́шься, -а́тся |
| сажа́-ть [сади́ть], to seat, to plant | *посад-и́ть саж-у́, са́д-ишь, са́д-ят |
| сообща́-ть, to communicate | *сообщ-и́ть -у́, -и́шь, -а́т |
| спра́шива-ть, to ask, to enquire | *спрос-и́ть спрош-у́, спр́ос-ишь, спр́ос-ят |
| соглаша́-ться (с + <i>instr.</i> ; also на + <i>acc.</i>), to agree | *согласи́-ться соглаш-у́сь, соглас-и́шься, соглас-я́тся |
| успева́-ть, to succeed; to be in time | *успé-ть -ю, -ешь, -ет |
| устрáива-ть, to arrange, to fix up | *устрó-ить -ю, -ишь, -ят |

NOTE 1. All the imperfective verbs in this list retain the *a* of the stem (before the *ть*) in conjugation. The terminations are -ю, -ешь, -ют. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive throughout.

NOTE 2. Nearly all the above imperfective verbs were originally derived from their perfective variety by the insertion of an iterative suffix and by the commutation of the consonants: *д* into *ж*, *с* into *ш*, *т* into *ч* and *ш*, or by the insertion of a euphonic *л* after labial consonants. (See § 62, note 1, and § 63.)

¹ *п* is dropped before *н* for euphony.

§ 67. *Reflexive and Reciprocal Verbs.*

| | |
|--|--|
| бры́-ться [*по-], to shave oneself | брé-юсь, брэ-ешься, брэ-ются <i>Imper.</i> брэ-йся, брэ-йтесь |
| возвращáться (с, из + <i>gen.</i>) | (see § 66) |
| *возвратиться to return | |
| встречáться (с + <i>instr.</i>) | (see § 66) |
| *встрéтнться to meet | |
| [по]закрыв-áться (<i>instr.</i>) | -áюсь, -áешься, -áются <i>Imper.</i> -áйся, -áйтесь |
| *[по]закр-ы́ться, to cover oneself over | -бюсь, -бёшься, -бются <i>Imper.</i> -бйся, -бйтесь |
| купá-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -ются |
| *вы́купа-ться to bathe | <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| лож-й́ться [*лечь], to lie down | -ýсь, -й́шься, -й́тся <i>Imper.</i> -йсь, -йтесь |
| мы́-ться [*по-, *у-], to wash oneself | мо́-юсь, мо́-ешься, мо́-ются <i>Imper.</i> мо́-йся, мо́-йтесь |
| одева́-ться, to dress oneself | } -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| раздева́-ться, to undress oneself | |
| переодева́-ться, to change clothes | |
| *оде́-ться, to dress oneself | } -нущь, -нешься, -нутя <i>Imper.</i> -нъся, -нътесь |
| *разде́-ться, to undress oneself | |
| *переоде́-ться, to change clothes | |
| поднима́-ться, to get up; to rise | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| *подн-й́ться, to raise oneself | подним-ýсь, подним-ешься, подним-утся <i>Imper.</i> подним-йсь, подним-йтесь |
| спуска́-ться, to descend | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| *спуст-й́ться, to descend | спущ-ýсь, спúст-ишься, спúст-ятся <i>Imper.</i> спуст-йсь, спуст-йтесь |
| цел-ова́ться [*по-] (с + <i>instr.</i>), to kiss | -ýюсь, -ýешься, -ýются <i>Imper.</i> -ýйся, -ýйтесь |

§ 68. *Neuter Verbs, ending in ся.*

| | |
|--|---|
| жа́л-ова́ться [*по-], to complain | -уюсь, -уешься, -уются <i>Imper.</i> -уйся, -уйтесь |
| бо-я́ться [*по-], to fear (<i>gen.</i>) | -юсь, -ишься, -яется <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| бра́ться *взя́ться, to take up, to undertake (за + <i>acc.</i>) | (see § 64) |
| год-и́ться [*при-], to be of use | гож-у́сь, год-и́шься, год-я́тся <i>Imper.</i> год-и́сь, год-и́тесь (not in frequent use) |
| извиня́-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -ются |
| *извин-и́ться (пе́ред + <i>instr.</i>) to apologize | -юсь, -ишься, -яется <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь -и́сь, -и́тесь |
| цла́ния-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> йся, -йтесь |
| *поклон-и́ться to greet, to send greetings | -юсь, -ишься, -яется <i>Imper.</i> -и́сь, -и́тесь |
| наде-я́ться [*по-], to hope (на + <i>acc.</i>) | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| попраща́-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| *попра́в-иться to recover, to improve | -люсь, -ишься, -яется <i>Imper.</i> -ься, -ьтесь |
| приход-и́ться | } (see § 63) |
| *при́й-ти́сь, to come about, to be obliged to (<i>dat.</i> in impersonal sentences) | |
| просту́жива-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь |
| *просту-ди́ться to catch a chill, cold | -жу́сь, -дишься, -дятся <i>Imper.</i> -ди́сь, -ди́тесь |
| сад-и́ться | саж-у́сь, сад-и́шься, сад-я́тся <i>Imper.</i> сад-и́сь, сад-и́тесь |
| *сес-ть to sit down | сяд-у, сяд-ешь, сяд-ут <i>Imper.</i> сядь, сядьте |
| серд-и́ться [*рас-], to be, become angry (на + <i>acc.</i>) | серж-у́сь, се́рд-и́шься, се́рд-я́тся <i>Imper.</i> се́рд-и́сь, се́рд-и́тесь |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| случа́-ться | -юсь, -ешься, -юся |
| *случ-и́ться | -у́сь, -и́шься, -и́тся |
| to happen | <i>Imper.</i> случи́сь ¹ |
| собира́-ться | -юсь, -ешься, юся |
| *собр-а́ться | <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -итесь |
| to get ready | собрер-у́сь, собрер-е́шься, |
| | собрер-у́тся |
| | <i>Imper.</i> собрер-и́сь, собрер-и́тесь |
| удивля́-ться (<i>dat.</i>) | -юсь, -ешься, -юся |
| *удив-и́ться | <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -итесь |
| | удив-лю́сь, удив-и́шься, удив-и́тся |
| | <i>Imper.</i> удив-и́сь, удив-и́тесь |
| уч-и́ться [*по-, *на-], to learn, | уч-у́сь, уч-и́шься, уч-а́тся |
| to study (<i>dat.</i>) | <i>Imper.</i> уч-и́сь, уч-и́тесь |

§ 69. *Reflexive Verbs used in a passive sense.* (See § 131.)

| | | |
|--|--------------------------|--|
| | | <i>Past</i> |
| встреча́-ться, to be met with | -ется, ются | -лся } -лась } -лись -лось } |
| да-ва́-ться, to be given ; to be staged (play or opera) | тся, да-ю́тся | „ |
| дела́-ться, to become ; to be done | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| изда-ва́-ться, to be published | изда-е́тся, изда-ю́тся | |
| конча́-ться, to end | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| называ́-ться, to be called | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| находи́-ться, to be found | наход-и́тся, наход-я́тся | |
| начина́-ться, to begin | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| объясня́-ться, to be explained | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| печа́та-ться, to be printed | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| пис-а́ться, to be written | пиш-е́тся, пиш-у́тся | |
| поднима́-ться, to be raised | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| позволя́-ться, to be allowed | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| чита́-ться, to be read | -ется, -ю́тся | |
| стро́-иться, to be built | стро́-ится, стро́-ятся | { -и́лся } { -и́лась } -и́лись { -и́лось } |

NOTE 1. Verbs of the above class are mainly used in the third person singular or plural.

¹ Singular only used in a conditional sense (see § 106). Imperfective imperative not in use.

NOTE 2. To convey the **perfective** meaning, either in the past or in the future, the short passive participle of the perfective verb (without **ся**) is used with **был, была, было, были, or будет** :

печататься : **кни́га печа́тается**
the book is printed (being printed)

кни́га была́ напеча́тана
the book was printed

кни́га бу́дет напеча́тана
the book will be printed

издава́ться : **кни́га изда́ется**
the book is published

кни́га была́ изда́на
the book was published

кни́га бу́дет изда́на
the book will be published

NOTE 3. Many transitive verbs can be used in the reflexive form in a passive sense.

§ 70. Conjugation of Verbs.

Russian verbs are divided into two main groups for purposes of conjugation :

1. Verbs of the first conjugation.
2. Verbs of the second conjugation.

1. Verbs of the first conjugation have the following personal terminations :

| | | де́лать | чита́ть | писа́ть |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Sing. 1st pers.</i> | -у, -ю | я де́ла-ю | я чита́-ю | я пи́ш-у́ |
| <i>2nd „</i> | -ешь | ты де́ла-ешь | ты чита́-ешь | ты пи́ш-ешь |
| <i>3rd „</i> | -ет | он, -а, -о де́ла-ет | он, -а, -о чита́-ет | он пи́ш-ет |
| <i>Plur. 1st „</i> | -ем | мы де́ла-ем | мы чита́-ем | мы пи́ш-ем |
| <i>2nd „</i> | -ете | вы де́ла-ете | вы чита́-ете | вы пи́ш-ете |
| <i>3rd „</i> | -ут, -ют | они́ де́ла-ют | они́ чита́-ют | они́ пи́ш-ут |

2. Verbs of the second conjugation have these personal terminations :

| | | сидѣть | носѣть | горѣть |
|------------------------|----------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Sing. 1st pers.</i> | -у, -ю | я сиж-у́ | я нош-у́ | я гор-ю́ |
| <i>2nd „</i> | -ишь | ты сид-и́шь | ты нос-и́шь | ты гор-и́шь |
| <i>3rd „</i> | -ит | он, -ѧ, -ѡ сид-и́т | он, -ѧ, -ѡ нос-и́т | он гор-и́т |
| <i>Plur. 1st „</i> | -им | мы сид-и́м | мы нос-и́м | мы гор-и́м |
| <i>2nd „</i> | -ите | вы сид-и́те | вы нос-и́те | вы гор-и́те |
| <i>3rd „</i> | -ат, -ят | они́ сид-я́т | они́ нос-я́т | они́ гор-я́т |

NOTE 1. The conjugation-group to which a verb belongs is determined by the termination of the second person singular: if this is **ешь** or **ѣшь**, the verb is of the first conjugation, and all the other persons, except the third plural, will have **e** as the conjugation vowel; the third person plural will have the termination **ут** or **ют**. But if the termination of the second person singular is **ишь**, the verb is of the second conjugation; then **и** will be the conjugation vowel and the third person plural will have the termination **ат** or **ят**.

NOTE 2. After **ж, ч, ш, щ**, the vowels **я, ю** are replaced by **а, у**.

NOTE 3. The accented **e** of the personal termination is changed into **ѣ**, which is retained after **ж, ч, ш, щ**, but is pronounced as **о**.

§ 71. *Types of Conjugation.*

While it is possible to determine the conjugation-group of a verb from the second person singular, it is not always possible to decide that from the infinitive. In order to give the student some guidance as to the best way of deciding from the infinitive to what group a Russian verb belongs, a certain attempt at classification will be made which should enable the beginner to find his way in what will at first seem to him as the maze of the Russian verb. The verbs most often used can be committed to memory

by constant conjugation *aloud*. After a time practice and observation will simplify the task.

All Russian verbs, according to the terminations of their infinitive, can be divided into 7 categories: 5 of the first conjugation and 2 of the second conjugation.

1. To the first conjugation belong :

- (a) all verbs with a consonantal stem, the infinitive of which ends in **ТЬ, ТИ** ; to these also belong verbs ending in **ЧЬ** (which is a commutation of **Г-ТЬ, К-ТЬ**), and
- (b) the greater number of verbs with the infinitival ending of **АТЬ, ЯТЬ, ОТЬ, УТЬ, ЫТЬ**. To this subdivision belong a small number of primary verbs ending in **ИТЬ** (see § 75, group c) and a few in **ЕТЬ**.

2. To the second conjugation belong all verbs with the infinitival ending of **ИТЬ** (except the few primary verbs mentioned above), and some ending in **ЕТЬ** (or **АТЬ** after **Ж, Ч, Ш, Щ**).

A full statement of the conjugation of verbs according to their categories is set out in §§ 73-81.

§ 72. *Preliminary General Statement about the Accent in the Conjugation of Russian Verbs.*

1. THE ACCENT IN THE PRESENT TENSE (or future in Perfectives)

The student will note three types of accent in the present tense of verbs :

Type 1. The accent remains on the stem (on the same syllable as in the infinitive) in all the persons of the present :

ВЯН-УТЬ, to wither ; **ВЯН-У**, **ВЯН-ЕШЬ**, **ВЯН-УТ**

Type 2. The accent is on the personal termination in the first person of the present, but goes back to the stem in all the other persons :

тон-ýть, to be drowning ; тон-ý, тон-ешь, тон-ут

Type 3. The accent is on the personal termination in all the persons of the present :

бр-ать, to take ; бер-ý, бер-ёшь, бер-ёт

NOTE. The accent of the imperative is on the same syllable as in the first person of the present tense :

ван-у — вань ; тон-ý — тони ; бер-ý — бери

2. THE ACCENT IN THE PAST TENSE

The accent in the past tense corresponds largely to the accent in the infinitive. Three types of accent are usually prevalent in the past tense :

Type 1. The accent remains on the stem :

мыть, to wash ; мыл, мыла, мыло, мыли

Type 2. The accent goes to the termination in the feminine only ; in masculine, neuter, and plural it remains on the stem :

жить, to live ; жил, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли

Type 3. The accent is always on the termination :

нес-ти́, to carry ; не́с, несла́, несло́, несли́

The appropriate types of accent will be stated for each category of verbs.

A. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (Categories I-V)

§ 73. I. *To the first category* belong all primary or root-verbs in which either the root or the stem ends in a consonant (with the exception of verbs in sub-divisions (f), (g), (h), the stem of which ends in a vowel) :

- | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| (a) грес-ти́ [греб-ти́], to row, | греб-у́, | греб-ёшь, | греб-у́т |
| скрес-ти́ [скреб-ти́], to scratch, | скреб-у́, | скреб-ёшь, | скреб-у́т |

NOTE. б of the root (stem) is replaced by е in the infinitive.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| (b) вез-ти́, to cart, | вез-у́, | вез-ёшь, | вез-у́т |
| грыз-ть, to gnaw, | грыз-у́, | грыз-ёшь, | грыз-у́т |
| полз-ти́, to crawl, | полз-у́, | полз-ёшь, | полз-у́т |
| лез-ть, to crawl, to climb, | лез-у́, | лез-ёшь, | лез-у́т |
| нес-ти́, to carry, | нес-у́, | нес-ёшь, | нес-у́т |
| тряс-ти́, to shake, | тряс-у́, | тряс-ёшь, | тряс-у́т |
| пас-ти́, to shepherd, | пас-у́, | пас-ёшь, | пас-у́т |
| (c) тер-еть, to rub, | тр-у, | тр-ёшь, | тр-ут |
| *запер-еть, to lock up, | запр-у́, | запр-ёшь, | запр-у́т |
| *умер-еть, to die, | умр-у́, | умр-ёшь, | умр-у́т |

NOTE. The е of the stem is dropped in conjugation of the present tense (form).

- | | | | |
|--|------------|-------------|------------|
| (d) печь [пек-ть], to bake, | пек-у́, | печ-ёшь, | пек-у́т |
| течь [тек-ть], to run, to flow, | тек-у́, | теч-ёшь, | тек-у́т |
| сечь [сек-ть], to whip; to chop, | сек-у́, | сеч-ёшь, | сек-у́т |
| толочь [толók-ть], to mix, | толк-у́, | толч-ёшь, | толк-у́т |
| влечь [влек-ть], to drag, | влек-у́, | влеч-ёшь, | влек-у́т |
| стричь [стриг-ть], to cut, to shear, | стриг-у́, | стриж-ёшь, | стриг-у́т |
| жечь [жег-ть], to burn, | жг-у́, | жж-ёшь, | жг-ут |
| беречь [берёг-ть], to guard, to look after | берег-у́, | береж-ёшь, | берег-у́т |
| *запрячь [запряг-ть], to harness, | запряг-у́, | запряж-ёшь, | запряг-у́т |
| *лечь [лег-ть], to lie down, | ляг-у́, | ляж-ёшь, | ляг-ут |
| мочь [мог-ть], to be able to, | мог-у́, | мож-ёшь, | мог-ут |

NOTE. In all the verbs of this sub-section the г-ть and к-ть of the infinitive are commuted into чь. In conjugation of the present tense (form), the г and к are commuted into ж and ч before soft (jotated) vowels.

| | | | |
|---|-----------|------------|-----------|
| (e) вес-ти́ [вед-ти́], to lead, | вед-у́, | вед-ёшь, | вед-у́т |
| брес-ти́ [бред-ти́], to saunter, | бред-у́, | бред-ёшь, | бред-у́т |
| * сес-ть [сед-ть], to sit down, | сяд-у́, | сяд-ёшь, | сяд-у́т |
| клас-ть [клад-ть], to put, to put down, | клад-у́, | клад-ёшь, | клад-у́т |
| крас-ть [крад-ть], to steal, | крад-у́, | крад-ёшь, | крад-у́т |
| * пас-ть [пад-ть], to fall, | пад-у́, | пад-ёшь, | пад-у́т |
| пряс-ть [пряд-ть], to spin, | пряд-у́, | пряд-ёшь, | пряд-у́т |
| плес-ти́ [плет-ти́], to plait, | плет-у́, | плет-ёшь, | плет-у́т |
| мес-ти́ [мет-ти́], to sweep | мет-у́, | мет-ёшь, | мет-у́т |
| рас-ти́ [раст-ти́], to grow, | раст-у́, | раст-ёшь, | раст-у́т |
| цвес-ти́ [цвет-ти́], to blossom, | цвет-у́, | цвет-ёшь, | цвет-у́т |
| * прочес-ть [прочёт-ть], to read through | прочт-у́, | прочт-ёшь, | прочт-у́т |

NOTE. The **д** and **т** of the root (stem) of the verbs of this sub-section are commuted into **е** in the infinitive.

| | | | |
|--|-----------|------------|-----------|
| (f) жа-ть , ¹ to press, to squeeze, | жм-у́, | жм-ёшь, | жм-у́т |
| жа-ть , ² to reap, to harvest, | жн-у́, | жн-ёшь, | жн-у́т |
| * нача-ть , to begin, | начн-у́, | начн-ёшь, | начн-у́т |
| (See remark to жать ² .) | | | |
| * взя-ть , to take, | возьм-у́, | возьм-ёшь, | возьм-у́т |
| (я is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of м ; see remark to жать ¹ .) | | | |
| мя-ть , to crumple, | мн-у́, | мн-ёшь, | мн-у́т |
| (See remark to жать ² .) | | | |
| (g) плы-ть , to swim, | плыв-у́, | плыв-ёшь, | плыв-у́т |
| слы-ть , to be known as, | слыв-у́, | слыв-ёшь, | слыв-у́т |
| жи-ть , to live, | жив-у́, | жив-ёшь, | жив-у́т |
| (в is inserted for euphony.) | | | |
| (h) пе-ть , to sing, | по-ю́, | по-ёшь, | по-ю́т |

§ 74. The Accent.

In nearly all the verbs in Category I (see § 73), the accent is on the personal termination in the **present tense** (future in perfective verbs). The only exceptions are :

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| лезть : лёз-у, лёз-ешь | } Type 1 |
| *сесть : сяд-у, сяд-ешь | |
| *лечь : ляг-у, ляж-ешь | |
| мочь : мог-у́, мо́ж-ешь | Type 2 |

¹ The **а** is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of **м**.

² The **а** is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of **н**.

In the past tense of verbs of the first category, all the three types of accent (see § 72) can be found. It may be useful to note that in nearly all cases where the accent remains on the stem in the present tense (or form), it will fall on the same syllable in the past tense as in the present (Type 1) (see §§ 83-84) :

лезть : лёз-у, лёз-есть ; лез, лёзла, лёзло, лёзли
 *сесть : сяд-у, сяд-есть ; сел, сёла, сёло, сёли

Exception :

*лечь : ляг-у, ляж-есть ; лёг ; лег-ла́, лег-ло́, лег-ли́
 (Type 3).

If the accent falls on the personal termination in the present tense (or future of perfectives), it will in most cases also be on the termination in the past tense (Type 3) :

нес-ти́ : нес-у́, нес-ёшь ; нёс, нес-ла́, нес-ло́, нес-ли́

In a few cases, however, the accent remains on the stem in the past tense, even if it falls on the personal terminations in the present tense (Type 1) :

мять : мну, мнёшь ; мял, мя́ла, мя́ло, мя́ли

жать : { жму, жмёшь } ; жал, жа́ло, жа́ла, жа́ли
 { жну, жнёшь }

The same also applies to красть, класть, прясть, пасть, сечь, стричь, грызть. In all these verbs the accent in the past is on the stem throughout (Type 1).

кра-л
 кла-л
 пря-л
 па-л -ла, -ло, -ли
 сек¹
 стриг
 грыз

¹ Also : секла́, -о́, -и́.

In the verbs **взять** and **жить** the accent remains on the stem in masculine, neuter, and plural of the past tense. In the feminine it is shifted to the last syllable :

взял, взяла́, взяло ; взя́ли
жил, жи́ла, жи́ло ; жи́ли

In **умереть** and **начать** the accent goes to the prefix in masculine, neuter, and plural, and is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine :

у́мер, умерла́, у́мерло, у́мерли
на́чал, начала́, на́чало, на́чали (Type 2)

§ 75. II. *To the second category* belong verbs of the first conjugation of which the infinitive has the terminations **отъ, ыть**, six monosyllabic verbs in **ить** (sub-division (c)), and the large class of verbs ending in **ать, ять** ; also **еть** and **уть**. These verbs have the distinctive feature of having the ending **ю** in the first person singular present, and **ют** in the third person plural. The past tense has the terminations **л, ла, ло, ли**, which replace the termination **тъ** of the infinitive.

The verbs of sub-division (d) retain the vowel before **тъ** in conjugation, except **давать, узнавать, вставать**, which drop the suffix **ва** in the present tense.

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| (a) поло́-тъ , to weed, | пол-ю́, | по́л-ешь, | по́л-ют |
| коло́-тъ , to chop, | кол-ю́, | ко́л-ешь, | ко́л-ют |
| моло́-тъ , to mill, to grind, | мел-ю́, | ме́л-ешь, | ме́л-ют |
| поро́-тъ , to tear, to whip, | пор-ю́, | по́р-ешь, | по́р-ют |
| (b) мы-тъ , to wash, | мо́-ю, | мо́-ешь, | мо́-ют |
| ры-тъ , to dig, | ро́-ю, | ро́-ешь, | ро́-ют |
| кры-тъ , to cover, | крó-ю, | крó-ешь, | крó-ют |
| вы-тъ , to howl, | во́-ю, | во́-ешь, | во́-ют |
| ны-тъ , to ache, to grieve, | но́-ю, | но́-ешь, | но́-ют |
| (c) бри-тъ , to shave, | брé-ю, | брé-ешь, | брé-ют |
| би-тъ , to beat, | бь-ю, | бь-ёшь, | бь-ют |
| ши-тъ , to sew, | шь-ю, | шь-ёшь, | шь-ют |
| ли-тъ , to pour, | ль-ю, | ль-ёшь, | ль-ют |
| ви-тъ , to wind, | вь-ю, | вь-ёшь, | вь-ют |
| пи-тъ , to drink, | пь-ю, | пь-ёшь, | пь-ют |

| | | | |
|--|----------|------------|----------|
| (d) зна-ть, to know, | зна́-ю, | зна́-ешь, | зна́-ют |
| дава́-ть, ¹ to give, | да-ю́, | да-ёшь, | да-ю́т |
| узнава́-ть, ¹ to recognize, | узна-ю́, | узна-ёшь, | узна-ю́т |
| встава́-ть, ¹ to get up, | вста-ю́, | вста-ёшь, | вста-ю́т |
| чита́-ть, to read, | чита́-ю, | чита́-ешь, | чита́-ют |
| де́ла-ть, to do, | де́ла-ю, | де́ла-ешь, | де́ла-ют |
| гуля́-ть, to stroll, | гуля́-ю, | гуля́-ешь, | гуля́-ют |
| уме́-ть, to be able, to know, | уме́-ю, | уме́-ешь, | уме́-ют |
| ду́-ть, to blow, | ду́-ю, | ду́-ешь, | ду́-ют |

NOTE. In all the verbs of this sub-division the end-vowel of the stem is retained in conjugation (with the exception of : дава́ть, узнава́ть, встава́ть).

§ 76. The accent of the present tense in the verbs of this category can be of all the three types (see § 72), as follows :

In the verbs of sub-division (a) the accent is of Type 2 (shifting accent) :

поло́-ть, пол-ю́, по́л-ешь

In the verbs of sub-division (c) the accent belongs to Type 3 (always on the personal termination), except :

бри-ть, брё-ю, брё-ешь

In the verbs of sub-divisions (b), (d) the accent belongs to Type 1 (it always remains on the same syllable in conjugation as in the infinitive) :

зна-ть, зна́-ю, зна́-ешь

Exceptions : дава́ть, узнава́ть, встава́ть, which drop the suffix *ва*, and the accent goes to the personal termination.

The accent of the past tense in all the verbs of Category II is on the same syllable as in the infinitive :

поло́-ть : полóл, -а, -о, -и

дава́ть : дава́л, -а, -о, -и

гуля́ть : гуля́л, -а, -о, -и

¹ The suffix *ва* is dropped in the present tense of these verbs. (See § 64, groups 2, 4.)

Exceptions are : **лить, вить, пить**, which shift the accent to the feminine termination in the past :

ли́ла, but **ли́ло**, **ли́ли**
ви́ла, „ **ви́ло**, **ви́ли**
пи́ла „ **пи́ло**, **пи́ли**

§ 77. III. *To the third category* belong a few simple (primary) verbs ending in **ать**. They drop the entire termination of **ать** in the conjugation of the present tense. In the past **ать** is changed into **ал, ала, ало, али**.

The accent in the present falls on the personal terminations. In the past it is on the same syllable as in the infinitive, excepting the feminine, where it is on the last syllable :

Exceptions : **соса́ть** — **соса́ла**
ржа́ть — **ржа́ла**
 occasionally also : **тка́ть** — **тка́ла**
лгáть — **лгáла**

The verbs of this group are :

| | | | | <i>Past. Fem.</i> |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| сос-а́ть , to suck, | сос-у́, | сос-ёшь, | сос-у́т | |
| тк-а́ть , to weave, | тк-у, | тк-ёшь, | тк-у́т | |
| лг-а́ть , to lie, | лг-у, | лж-ёшь, | лг-у́т | |
| вр-а́ть , to fib, | вр-у, | вр-ёшь, | вр-у́т | вралá |
| жр-а́ть , to devour, | жр-у, | жр-ёшь, | жр-у́т | жралá |
| бр-а́ть , to take, | бер-у́, | бер-ёшь, | бер-у́т | бралá |
| др-а́ть , to tear, | дер-у́, | дер-ёшь, | дер-у́т | дралá |
| рж-а́ть , to neigh, | рж-у, | рж-ёшь, | рж-у́т | |
| зв-а́ть , to call, | зов-у́, | зов-ёшь, | зов-у́т | звалá |
| рв-а́ть , to tear, | рв-у, | рв-ёшь, | рв-у́т | рвалá |
| жд-а́ть , to wait, | жд-у, | жд-ёшь, | жд-у́т | ждалá |

NOTE 1. **братъ, дратъ** take a euphonic **е**, **звать** takes a euphonic **о** in the conjugation of the present tense. In **лгáть** the **г** is commuted into **ж** before a soft vowel in the conjugation of the present tense.

NOTE 2. All the verbs in Category III have **у** in the first person singular and **у́т** in the third person plural of the present tense.

§ 78. IV. *To the fourth category belong :*

(a) A number of verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **ать** with a preceding

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|---|---|---|---|----|---|---|----|----|
| | с | з | д | т | ст | г | к | ск | сл |
| which change into | ш | ж | ж | ч | щ | ж | ч | щ | шл |

and

| | | | |
|-------------------|----|----|----|
| | б | п | м |
| which change into | бл | пл | мл |

(See § 13a.)

The accent is a variable one in the present tense, belonging to all the three types. (See § 72.)

The commutation of consonants, or the insertion of the euphonic **л**, which takes place in the first person singular, is extended to all the persons of the present tense, both singular and plural.

In the past the accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive in all verbs of this sub-division.

| | | | |
|---|-----------|-------------|---------|
| колеб-ать, to shake, | колебл-ю, | колебл-ешь, | -ют |
| треп-ать, to scutch (flax), to pull about, | трепл-ю, | трéпл-ешь, | -ют |
| щип-ать, to pluck, | щипл-ю, | щíпл-ешь, | -ют |
| сып-ать, to strew, to scatter, | сыпл-ю, | сы́пл-ешь, | -ют |
| дрем-ать, to slumber, | дремл-ю, | дрéмл-ешь, | -ют |
| прят-ать, to hide, | прýч-у, | прýч-ешь, | -ут |
| свист-ать, ¹ to whistle, | свищ-у, | сви́щ-ешь, | -ут |
| рѣз-ать, to cut, | рѣж-у, | рѣж-ешь, | -ут |
| мáз-ать, to smear, to paste, | мáж-у, | мáж-ешь, | -ут |
| вяз-ать, to tie, to bind, | вяж-у, | вяж-ешь, | -ут |
| пис-ать, to write, | пиш-у, | пи́ш-ешь, | -ут |
| дви́г-ать, to move, | дви́ж-у, | дви́ж-ешь, | -ут |
| пла́к-ать, to cry, | пла́ч-у, | пла́ч-ешь, | -ут |
| ска́к-ать, to gallop, | скач-у, | ска́ч-ешь, | -ут |
| иск-ать, to seek, | ищ-у, | и́щ-ешь, | -ут |
| сл-ать, to send, etc. | шл-ю, | шл-ешь, | -ют |
| стл-ать, to spread, | стел-ю, | стéл-ешь, | стéл-ют |

свист-ѣть belongs to Category VII (a) of the second conjugation.

(b) Verbs ending in **овать, евать** which drop the termination **ать** in the conjugation of the present tense ; the suffixes **ов, ев** are changed into **у, ю** respectively :

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| ков-ать, to forge, | ку-ю, | ку-ёшь, | ку-ют |
| сов-ать, to thrust, | су-ю, | су-ёшь, | су-ют |
| плев-ать, to spit, | плю-ю, | плю-ёшь, | плю-ют |
| ночев-ать, to lodge at night, | ночѹ-ю, | ночѹ-ёшь, | ночѹ-ют |
| воев-ать, to wage war, | вою-ю, | вою-ёшь, | вою-ют |
| совѣтов-ать, to advise, | совѣту-ю, | совѣту-ёшь, | совѣту-ют |
| диктов-ать, to dictate, | диктѹ-ю, | диктѹ-ёшь, | диктѹ-ют |
| торгов-ать, to trade, | торгѹ-ю, | торгѹ-ёшь, | торгѹ-ют |
| рисов-ать, to draw, | рисѹ-ю, | рисѹ-ёшь, | рисѹ-ют |
| атаков-ать, to attack, | атакѹ-ю, | атакѹ-ёшь, | атакѹ-ют |
| танцов-ать, to dance, | танцѹ-ю, | танцѹ-ёшь, | танцѹ-ют |

In the past tense the termination **ать** is changed into **ал, ала, аю, али**, with the accent on the same syllable as in the infinitive. The suffixes **ов, ев** are retained in the past tense.

The accent of the present tense of these verbs is on the same syllable as in the infinitive in derivative verbs. In primary (simple) verbs it is on the personal termination :

ковать, ку-ю, ку-ёшь
плевать, плю-ю, плю-ёшь

NOTE. The verbs, **здорó-ваться** (to salute), **сомне-бáться** (to doubt), do not belong to this class :

(здорó-ваюсь, -ваешься, -ваются)
(сомне-ва́юсь, -ва́ешься, -ва́ются)

(c) To this sub-division belong a few verbs in **ять** (**яться**) with a preceding vowel. The accent remains on the same syllable in the conjugation of the present and past tenses :

| | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|-------------------|
| ла-ять, to bark, | ла-ю, | ла-ешь, | ла-ют ; | ла́ял, -а, -о, -и |
| та-ять, to melt, | та-ю, | та-ешь, | та-ют ; | та́ял, -а, -о, -и |
| се-ять, to sow, | се-ю, | се-ешь, | се-ют ; | се́ял, -а, -о, -и |
| сме-яться, to laugh, | сме-юсь, | сме-ёшься, | сме-ются ; | |
| | сме́ялся, | -лась, -лось, | -лись | |

NOTE. All the verbs in Category IV have **ю** in the termination of the first person singular and **ют** in the

third person plural (except where the stem ends in **ж, ч, ш, щ**). The vowel before **ть** of the infinitive is dropped in conjugation.

§ 79. V. *To the fifth category belong :*

(a) Verbs in **нуть** which have an inchoative meaning, and also with the meaning of going over from one state into another. They are mainly formed from adjectives :

| | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|------------|-----|
| слѣп-нуть, to go blind, | слѣпн-у, | слѣпн-ешь, | -ут |
| глѣх-нуть, to go deaf, | глѣхн-у, | глѣхн-ешь, | -ут |
| сѣх-нуть, to go dry, | сѣхн-у, | сѣхн-ешь, | -ут |

The accent in the present and the past remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

In the past of verbs of this class the entire ending **нуть** is dropped :

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------|---------------|---------|
| *о-слѣп-нуть, to have gone blind, | ослѣп, | ослѣпла, | ослѣпли |
| *о-глѣх-нуть, to have gone deaf, | оглѣх, | оглѣхла, | оглѣхли |
| сѣх-нуть, | сѣх, | сѣхла, -о, -и | |
| *за-сѣх-нуть, to have gone dry, | засѣх, | засѣхла, | засѣхли |

NOTE. In the imperfective forms of these verbs the suffix **ну** is occasionally retained in the past tense :

слѣпнул, глѣхнул

(b) A number of verbs ending in **нуть**, which describe either a quick action or one in a series of similar actions (mainly implying movement) :

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|------------|-----|
| хлеб-ѣть, to take liquid food | | | |
| *хлеб-нѣть, to sip once, | хлебн-у, | хлебн-ешь, | -ѣт |
| ляг-ѣть, to kick | | | |
| *ляг-нѣть, to kick once, | лягн-у, | лягн-ешь, | -ѣт |
| крич-ѣть, to shout, to cry | | | |
| *крѣк-нѣть, to shout out once, | крѣкн-у, | крѣкн-ешь, | -ут |
| кид-ѣть, to throw | | | |
| *кѣн-нѣть, to throw once, | кѣн-у, | кѣн-ешь, | -ут |

To this group belong verbs ending in **НУТЬ** which convey impressions of sound :

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|------------|
| свист-ать, to whistle | | |
| *свѣст-нуть, | свѣст-ну, | свѣст-нешь |
| хлоп-ать, to clap | | |
| *хлоп-нуть, | хлоп-ну, | хлоп-нешь |

All verbs of sub-division (b) with the suffix **нѹ** are of the perfective aspect. In the conjugation of the future and past tenses the accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive. The suffix **нѹ** is not dropped in the past tense :

хлопнул, хлопнула, хлопнули, etc.

B. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

§ 80. VI. *To this category* belong all derivative verbs in **ИТЬ**.

The past tense ends in **ил, ила, ило, или**.

The accent of the present tense in verbs in this category follows all the three types. (See § 72.)

The accent in the past tense follows the infinitive and first person singular of the present :

| | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|----------|--|--|
| сол-ить, to salt, | сол-ю, | сол-ишь | } Accent is of Type 2 ; ценить can also follow Type 3. | } 3rd person plural ends in ят (or ат after ч). |
| цен-ить, to value, | цен-ю, | цен-ишь | | |
| ход-ить, to walk, | хож-у, | ход-ишь | | |
| люб-ить, to love, | любл-ю, | люб-ишь | | |
| вар-ить, to boil, to cook, | вар-ю, | вар-ишь | | |
| уч-ить, to teach, | уч-у, | уч-ишь | } Accent is of Type 1. | |
| ран-ить, to wound, | ран-ю, | ран-ишь | | |
| сто-ить, to cost, | сто-ю, | сто-ишь | | |
| стро-ить, to build, | стро-ю, | стро-ишь | | |

NOTE. **д, з**, before **ИТЬ** change into **ж** in the first person singular present ; **т** changes into **ч** ; labials **б, в, п, м** have an inserted **л**, for euphony, in the first person present singular only. (See § 13a.)

§ 81. VII. *To this category* belong both primary and derivative verbs of the second conjugation ending in **еть** (formerly **ѣть**) or **ать** after **ж, ч, ш, щ**. The past tense ends in **ел, ал**. Verbs of this category are mainly intransitive. Some of these verbs describe sounds or imitation of sounds.

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| (a) вел- еть , to bid, | вел- ю , | вел- ишь , | - ят |
| гор- еть , to burn, | гор- ю , | гор- ишь , | - ят |
| скрип- еть , to scratch, | скрип- лю , | скрип- ишь , | - ят |
| шум- еть , to make noise, | шум- лю , | шум- ишь , | - ят |
| сид- еть , to sit, | сид- ю , | сид- ишь , | - ят |
| лет- еть , to fly, | лет- ю , | лет- ишь , | - ят |

NOTE. Commutation of consonants and insertion of euphonic **л** the same as in § 80.

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| (b) леж- ать , to lie, | леж- ю , | леж- ишь , | - ят |
| слыш- ать , to hear, | слыш- ю , | слыш- ишь , | - ят |
| сто- ять , to stand, | сто- ю , | сто- ишь , | - ят |
| бо- яться , to fear, | бо- юсь , | бо- ишься , | - ятся |

NOTE. The vowel before **ть** of the infinitive in verbs of sub-sections (a) and (b) is dropped in the conjugation of the present tense.

The **accent** of the **present** is either on the stem or on the personal termination. In both cases it is a fixed one. The **accent** of the **infinitive** and the **past tense** are usually on the same syllable :

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| сид- еть , | сид- ю , | сид- ел |
| гор- еть , | гор- ю , | гор- ел |
| слыш- ать , | слыш- ю , | слыш- ал |

§ 82. *Formation of the Imperative Mood.*

The imperative mood is used only for two persons : second person singular and second person plural. It is best formed from the third person plural of the present tense (or future in perfective verbs) by dropping the personal terminations **ут, ют, ат, ят**, and by replacing these by **и** for the singular and **ите** for the plural. For the accent it is useful to follow the first person singular of the present tense. If

the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, the **и**, **ите** are changed into **й**, **йте** :

пряс-ть, to spin { пряд-у́ } пряд-й, пряд-ите
[пряд-ть] { пряд-у́т }

ду́ма-ть, to think { ду́ма-ю } ду́ма-й, ду́ма-ите
 { ду́ма-ют }

пис-а́ть, to write { пиш-у́ } пиш-й, пиш-ите
 { пиш-ут }

In stems of one syllable only, when the *termination* of the second person is *not accented*, the endings of the imperative **и**, **ите** change into **ь**, **ьте**. If the stem in the third person plural ends in **ь**, it is changed into **е** for the imperative :

ве́р-ить, to believe { ве́р-ю } вер-ь, ве́р-ьте
 { ве́р-ят }

бы-ть, to be { бу́д-у } буд-ь, бу́д-ьте
 { бу́д-ут }

ли-ть, to pour { ль-ю } ле-й, ле́-ите
 { ль-ют }

би-ть, to beat, { бь-ю } бе-й, бе́-ите
 to strike { бь-ют }

The following verbs have an irregular formation of the imperative :

есть, to eat { е-м } еш-ь, еш-ьте
[ед-ть] { ед-ят }

лечь, to lie { ля́г-у } ляг, ля́г-те
[лег-ть] { ля́г-ут }

An accommodation imperative for expressing a wish is formed also for the third person (singular and plural) by attaching the verbal forms **пусть**, **ор пустьай** (let), to the

third person singular and plural of the present tense (or future of perfective verbs) :

| | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| пусть он чита́ет | let him read |
| пусть они́ чита́ют | let them read |

NOTE. пусть and пуска́й (let) are used with the indicative mood (third person of the present singular or plural, *not* with the infinitive as in English).

§ 83. Formation of the Past Tense.¹

The past tense of Russian verbs is formed for all persons by changing **ть** of the infinitive into **л, ла, ло, ли** for masculine, feminine, neuter, and plural :

чита́ть : чита́-л, -ла, -ло, -ли

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| я чита́л (<i>masc.</i>) | мы чита́ли | } (<i>plural</i>) |
| я чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>) | вы чита́ли | |
| ты чита́л (<i>masc.</i>) | они́ чита́ли | |
| ты чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>) | | |
| он чита́л (<i>masc.</i>) | | |
| она́ чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>) | | |

NOTE 1. In reflexive or similar verbs ending in **ться**, the **ся** is tacked on after the **л**, but is altered into **сь** after vowels :

верну́-ться, to return

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------|---------------|
| я | } верну́-лся | мы | } верну́-лись |
| ты | | вы | |
| он | | они́ | |
| она́ верну́-лась | | | |

NOTE 2. If the stem of the verb ends in one of the consonants **с, з, г, к, х** or **б**, the **л** is usually dropped, for euphony, in the masculine gender singular :

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| вез-ти́, to cart | вёз (not вёзл) |
| | but : везла́ |
| | везли́ |

¹ For formation of Conditional Mood see Appendix I, p. 308.

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| нес-ти́, | to carry, | нѣс | (not нѣсл) |
| | | but : несла́ | |
| | | несли́ | |
| сечь, | to whip, | сек | (not секл) |
| [сек-ть] | | but : секла́ | |
| | | секли́ | |
| печь, | to bake, | пѣк | (not пѣкл) |
| [пек-ть] | | but : пекла́ | |
| | | пекли́ | |
| мочь, | to be able, | мог | (not могл) |
| [мог-ть] | | but : могла́ | |
| | | могли́ | |
| also терé-ть, | to rub, | тѣр | (not тѣрл) |
| | | but : тѣрла | |
| | | тѣрли | |
| умерé-ть, | to die, | ýмер | (not ýмерл) |
| | | but : умерла́ | |
| | | ýмерли | |

NOTE 3. In stems ending in д, т, these consonants are usually dropped before the л :

| | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------------|------------|
| пасть, | to fall, | пал | (not падл) |
| [пад-ть] | | па́ла („ па́дла) | |
| | | па́ло („ па́дло) | |
| | | па́ли („ па́дли) | |
| вести́, | to lead, | вѣл | („ вѣдл) |
| [вед-ти́] | | вела́ („ ведла́) | |
| | | вело́ („ ведло́) | |
| | | вели́ („ ведли́) | |
| есть, | to eat, | ел | („ едл) |
| [ед-ть] | | э́ла („ э́дла) | |
| | | э́ли („ э́дли) | |

ИТТИ́ [ид-ти] (to go) forms the past tense from an obsolete verb, шед-ть, dropping the д :

шѐл

шла

шло

рас-ти́, to grow, рос
росла́
росли́

NOTE 4. A number of verbs ending in нуть, when they have an inchoative meaning (see § 79), drop the ending нуть in the past tense :

| | |
|---|------------------------------|
| сох-нуть, to go dry, | сох, сох-ла, сох-ло, сох-ли |
| *огло́х-нуть, to have gone deaf | огло́х, огло́х-ла, огло́х-ли |
| *нога́с-нуть, to become extinguished | пога́с, пога́с-ла, пога́с-ли |
| *исчѐз-нуть, to vanish, | исчѐз, исчѐз-ла, исчѐз-ли |

§ 84. *The Accent in the Past Tense (general summary).*

I. In nearly all verbs terminating in ать, ять, еть, ить, ыть, уть, нуть, the accent remains on the same vowel in conjugation as in the infinitive. (See § 72.)

NOTE. Exceptions to this rule are :

- (1) A number of primary, mainly monosyllabic, verbs in which the feminine of the past has the accent on the last syllable :

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| быть — была́, | жить — жи́ла |
| брать — бра́ла, | дать — да́ла |

- (2) A number of verbs with a prepositional prefix to which the accent is shifted in the past tense in masculine and neuter singular, and in the plural. In the feminine singular the accent is on the last syllable. To this class also belong compounds of the verb -я́ть. (See § 64, group 7.)

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| *поня́ть, to understand, | по́нял, -ли, поняла́ |
| *продáть, to sell, | про́дал, -ли, продала́ |
| *нача́ть, to begin, | нача́л, -ли, началá |
| *нали́ть, to pour in, to fill, | нали́л, -ли, налила́ |

II. In the past tense of verbs terminating in **зть, сть, ереть**, the accent is on the root vowel :

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------|----------|---------|
| грыз-ть, to gnaw, | грыз, | гры́зла, | гры́зли |
| крас-ть, to steal, | крал, | кра́ла, | кра́ли |
| ес-ть, to eat, | ел, | э́ла, | э́ли |
| тер-е́ть, to rub, | те́р, | те́рла, | те́рли |

III. In the past tense of verbs terminating in **сти, зти, чь [г-ть, к-ть]**, the accent falls on the last syllable. (See § 72, 2, Type 3, of past.)

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|------------|-----------|
| вести́, to lead, | вёл, | вела́, | вели́ |
| везти́, to cart, | вёз, | везла́, | везли́ |
| нести́, to carry, | нёс, | несла́, | несли́ |
| мочь, to be able to, | мог, | могла́, | могли́ |
| * поджечь, to set fire to, | поджёг, | подожгла́, | подожгли́ |

Exception : **стричь**, to clip, to cut

стриг, **стри́гла**, **стри́гли**

§ 85. *Accent of the Past Tense in Reflexive and similar verbs, ending in **ся**.*

In those verbs (mainly primary) where the feminine takes the accent on the last syllable in the past tense (see § 72, 2, Type 2, **past**), the accent will also be on the last syllable of masculine, neuter, and plural when the reflexive particles **ся, съ** are tacked on, although these forms would not have the accent on the last syllable if they had no **ся** or **съ** :

| | | |
|-----------------|----------|------------------------|
| рвать, рвала́ : | рвала́сь | |
| to tear | рвался́ | (but : рва́ло, рва́ли) |
| | рвало́сь | |
| | рвали́сь | |

| | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| гнать, гна́лá : | гна́лáсь | |
| to drive - | гна́лсѣ | (but : гна́ло, гна́ли) |
| | гна́ло́сь | |
| | гна́ли́сь | |
| роді́ть, роди́лá : | роди́лáсь | |
| to give birth to | роди́лсѣ | (but : роди́ло, роди́ли) |
| | роди́ло́сь | |
| | роди́ли́сь | |
| | (but also : роди́лся, роди́лись) | |

§ 86. *Participles.*

Participles are not often used in the spoken language, but they are frequently used in the written language. They have the same terminations, and are declined, as adjectives.

§ 86a. I. *Formation of the Present and Past Active Participles.*

(a) The present of active participles is formed by replacing the *т* of the personal termination of the third person plural of the present tense with the terminations **щий, щая, щее, щие** :

| | | |
|----------|---|------------------------------|
| чита́ю-т | — | чита́ю-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |
| ру́бя-т | — | ру́бя-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |
| сидя́-т | — | сидя́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |

The **accent** of the present active participle is usually on the same syllable as in the third person plural of the present tense. In a few verbs the accent goes forward by one syllable :

| | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| корми́ть, | ко́рма-т, | ко́рма-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |
| to feed | | |
| плати́ть, | пла́тя-т, | пла́тя-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |
| to pay | (pronounced | |
| | плóтят) | |
| смотре́ть, | смо́тря-т, | смотре́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие |
| to look | | |

(b) The past active participle is formed by replacing the *л* of the past tense with *вший, вшая, вшее, вшие*, or by adding *ший, шая, шее, шие* if the stem of the verb ends in a consonant :

| | | | | | | |
|--------------|---------|---|--------------|--------|--------|-------|
| сиде́-ть, | сиде́-л | — | сиде́-вший, | -вшая, | -вшее, | -вшие |
| писа́-ть, | писа́-л | — | писа́-вший, | -вшая, | -вшее, | -вшие |
| чита́-ть, | чита́-л | — | чита́-вший, | -вшая, | -вшее, | -вшие |
| *умер-е́ть, | у́мер, | — | уме́р-ший, | -шая, | -шее, | -шие |
| *принес-ти́, | прине́с | — | прине́с-ший, | -шая, | -шее, | -шие |
| *отвез-ти́, | отве́з | — | отве́з-ший, | -шая, | -шее, | -шие |

The accent in the past active participle is usually on the syllable which precedes the terminations *ший, шая, шее, шие*.

NOTE 1. Both the present and the past active participles are occasionally used as attributive verbal adjectives. They have no short (predicative) form. They are declined as adjectives according to gender and number in all their cases. (See § 46a.)

NOTE 2. In reflexive verbs the particle *ся* is tacked on after the terminations :

| | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| -щий, | -щая, | -щее, | -щие |
| -вший, | -вшая, | -вшее, | -вшие |
| -ший, | -шая, | -шее, | -шие |

NOTE 3. Both transitive and intransitive verbs can have present and past active participles.

§ 86b. II. *Formation of the Present and Past Passive Participles.* (Formed from transitive verbs only.)

A. The present passive participle is formed from the first person plural of the present tense by tacking on the

terminations **ый, ая, ое, ые** for the long (attributive) form, and **а, о, ы** for the short (predicative) form.

| | | | | | |
|---------|---|-------------|------|------|-----|
| чита́ем | — | чита́ем-ый, | -ая, | -ое, | -ые |
| | | чита́ем, | -а, | -о, | -ы |
| го́ним | — | гоним-ый, | -ая, | -ое, | -ые |
| | | гоним, | -а, | -о, | -ы |
| ведём | — | ведо́м-ый, | -ая, | -ое, | -ые |
| | | ведо́м, | -а, | -о, | -ы |
| несём | — | несо́м-ый, | -ая, | -ое, | -ые |
| | | несо́м, | -а, | -о, | -ы |

NOTE 1. **ѣ** of the present tense is changed into **о**.

NOTE 2. Present passive participles have a short (predicative) form for all three genders, and for the plural.

NOTE 3. The accent in the present passive participle is usually on the same syllable as in the present tense if the conjugation vowel is **е**. If this is **ѣ** or **и**, these vowels take the accent in the present passive participle.

B. The past passive participle is formed by replacing the **л** of the past tense with **нный, нная, нное, нные** for the long (attributive) form, and **н, на, но, ны** for the short (predicative) form :

| | | | | | |
|---------|---|-------------|--------|--------|-------|
| чита́-л | — | чита́-нный, | -нная, | -нное, | -нные |
| | | чита́-н, | -на, | -но, | -ны |
| писа́-л | — | писа́-нный, | -нная, | -нное, | -нные |
| | | писа́-н, | -на, | -но, | -ны |

To this class belong all the verbs ending in **ать** and all derivative verbs in **еть, ить**.

NOTE 1. **и** of the stem in the past tense changes into **е** in the past passive participle.

NOTE 2. з, с, г, к of the stem in the past tense are commuted into ж, ш, ж, ч in the past passive participle.

же-чь — жѣг, жжѣ-нный, -нная, -нное, -нные
[же-гт]

NOTE 3. After labials of the stem, a euphonic л is inserted in the past passive participle :

купі-ть — куп-ыл, кúп-ленный, -нная, -нное, -нные
кúп-лен, -лена, -пено, -лены

Verbs ending in уть, ыть, ереть, and a few primary in ить (all of the first conjugation class), replace the л by тый, тая, тое, тые (т, та, то, ты for the short form) in the formation of the past passive participle :

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| кры-ть — кры-л, | крý-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые |
| to cover | кры-т, -та, -то, -ты |
| колó-ть — колó-л, | кóло-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые |
| to chop, split | кóло-т -та, -то, -ты |
| ши-ть — шил, | ші-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые |
| to sew | ши-т, -та, -то, -ты |

To this class belong брить, лить, бить, вить, пить (see § 75), and also жить (see § 73).

§ 86c. *A list of Past Passive Participles of Verbs in frequent use.*

NOTE. Of the participles, the past passive participle is the most frequently used, both in the long and in the short (predicative) form. They are used in passive constructions in principal and subordinate clauses (see § 131). The past passive participle of the perfective aspect is that most often used. Of the long form the masculine only is given. The feminine and neuter have the terminations ая, ое.

Predicative

| | | |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| бить [*по-], to beat, to give a beating; [*у-], to kill | по- } б́итый, у- } | по- } б́ит, -а, -о, -ы |
| *взять, to take, | взятый, | взят, -а, -о, -ы |
| брить [*по-], to shave | { побри́тый, выбри́тый, | побри́т } -а, -о, -ы выбри́т } |
| *бро́сить, to throw, | бро́шенный, | бро́шен, -а, -о, -ы |
| вари́ть [*с-], to cook, | сва́ренный, | сва́рен, -а, -о, -ы |
| везти́ [*с-], to cart, | све́зённый, | све́зён, -а, -о, -ы |
| нести́ [*у-], to carry, | унесе́нный, | унесе́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| *вы́брать, to select, | вы́бранный, | вы́бран, -а, -о, -ы |
| *сказа́ть, to say, | ска́занный, | ска́зан, -а, -о, -ы |
| *заказа́ть, to order, | зака́занный, | зака́зан, -а, -о, -ы |
| греть [*со-], to warm, | согре́тый, | согре́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| де́лать [*с-], to make, | сде́ланный, | сде́лан, -а, -о, -ы |
| кры́ть { [*за-], to cover, [от-], to uncover | за- } кры́тый, от- } | за- } кры́т, -а, -о, -ы от- } |
| *оде́ть, to dress, | оде́тый, | оде́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *наде́ть, to put on, | наде́тый, | наде́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *разде́ть, to undress, | разде́тый, | разде́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *забы́ть, to forget, | забы́тый, | забы́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *нача́ть, to begin | { нача́то́й } нача́тый } | нача́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| обеща́ть, to promise, | обеща́нный, ¹ | обеща́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| *обяза́ть, to oblige, | обяза́нный, | обяза́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| *огорчи́ть, to grieve, to vex, | огорче́нный, | огорче́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| *[о]ко́нчить, to finish, | [о]ко́нченный, | [о]ко́нчен, -а, -о, -ы |
| мы́ть [*по-, *у-], to wash | { по- } мы́тый, у- } | по- } мы́т, -а, -о, -ы у- } |
| *отосла́ть, to send away, | отосла́нный, | отосла́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| *посла́ть, to send, | посла́нный, | посла́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| печь [*ис-], to bake, | испече́нный, | испече́н, -а, -о, -ы |
| писа́ть [*на-], to write | напи́санный, | напи́сан, -а, -о, -ы |
| *запла́тить, to pay, | запла́ченный (pronounced заплóченный) | запла́чен, -а, -о, -ы |
| *зана́ять, to occupy ; to borrow | зана́тый [о́й], | зана́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *подня́ть, to lift, | подня́тый, | подня́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *приня́ть, to receive, | приня́тый, | приня́т, -а, -о, -ы |
| *пона́ять, to understand, | пона́тый, | пона́т, -а, -о, -ы |

¹ This participle has a perfective character.

Predicative

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| *снять, to take off | { снято́й } { сняты́й } | снят, -á, -о, -ы |
| *приложіть, to attach, to enclose | прило́женный, | прило́жен, -а, -о, -ы |
| рѣзать [*c-], to cut, | срѣзанный, | срѣзан, -а, -о, -ы |
| *ра́нить, to wound, | ра́ненный, | ра́нен, -а, -о, -ы |
| *прочита́ть, to read through, | про́читанный, | про́читан, -а, -о, -ы |
| *купи́ть, to buy, | ку́пленный, | ку́плен, -а, -о, -ы |
| *пригото́вить, to prepare, | пригото́вленный, | пригото́влен, -а, -о, -ы |
| *продáть, to sell, | прóданный, | прóдан, -á, -о, -ы |
| *лиши́ть, to deprive, | лише́нный, | лише́н, -á, -ó, -ы |
| *найти́, to find, | на́йденный, | на́йден, -á, -о, -ы |
| шить [*c-], to sew, | сшы́тый, | сшит, -а, -о, -ы |

§ 87. *The Accent in the Past Passive Participle.* (For the accent in the present passive participle see § 86b.)

(1) In nearly all the verbs which form their past passive participle with the **нн** suffix (**н** for predicative forms), the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the termination (see § 86b) :

чита́ть — чи́танный
*купи́ть — ку́пленный

If the suffix **нн** (**н**) is preceded by **е**, this **е** will take the accent only if the verbs from which the passive participles are formed have the termination of the infinitive in **сть, зть, сти, зти, чь** ; also in a few verbs terminating in **ить** which belong to accent Type 3 (see § 72) :

| | | |
|--------------|----------------------|--------------|
| *запря́чь, | to harness, | запря́женный |
| *прочѣ́сть, | to read through, | прочѣ́нный |
| *привезѣ́ти. | to bring by carting, | привезѣ́нный |
| *покорѣ́ть, | to subjugate, | покорѣ́нный |
| *отличи́ть, | to distinguish, | отличи́нный |

(2) In verbs which form their past passive participle

with the **т** suffix the accent in the participle is on the same syllable as in the past tense :

*надуть, надул, надутый, inflated

*запереть, запер, запертый, locked

*закрывать, закрыл, закрытый, covered

Exceptions to this rule present verbs terminating in **оть** and **нуть**. These throw the accent back by one syllable in the past passive participle :

колоть, колёл, колотый, chopped

*обмануть, обманул, обманутый, deceived

§ 88. Gerunds (*Verbal Adverbs*).

(1) The present gerund is formed by changing the terminations **ут, ют, ат, ят** of the third person plural of the present tense into **я** (or **а** after **ж, ч, ш, щ**) :

чита́ют — чита́я

говор-я́т — говор-я́

жив-у́т — жив-я́

(2) The past gerund is formed by replacing the **л** of the past tense with **вши** (or **в** only), or **ши**, in the same way as in the case of the past participle (see § 86a, I (b)) :

сиде́л — сиде́-вши (or сиде́-в)

сдела́л — сдела́-вши (or сдела́-в)

сказа́л — сказа́-вши (or сказа́-в)

пёк — пёк-ши

нёс — нёс-ши

NOTE 1. In reflexive verbs the particle **ся** (**сь**) is placed after **вши, в, ши** :

умы́лся — умы́-вшись

NOTE 2. In the present gerund the accent is either on the last syllable or on the last syllable but one (the accent mainly follows that of the third person plural of the present tense) :

| | | | | | |
|-----|-----------|---------------|----------|---|---------|
| | звать, | to call, | зов-ѹт | — | зов-ѧ |
| | класть, | to lay, | клад-ѹт | — | клад-ѧ |
| | [клад-тъ] | | | | |
| | жить, | to live, | жив-ѹт | — | жив-ѧ |
| | жевать, | to chew, | жу-ѹт | — | жу-ѧ |
| | смеяться, | to laugh, | сме-ѹтся | — | сме-ѧсь |
| but | лежать, | to lie, | леж-ѧт | — | лѣж-а |
| | сидѣть, | to sit, | сид-ѧт | — | сѣд-ѧ |
| | молчать, | to be silent, | молч-ѧт | — | молч-а |

In the past gerund the accent is always on the syllable preceding the terminations **вши**, **в**, **ши** :

*написа́вши — написа́ть
 *закры́вши — закры́ть
 *прочита́вши — прочита́ть

If the accent of the infinitive is *not* on the last syllable, the accent of the past gerund always follows that of the infinitive :

ду́мать — ду́мавши
 *сде́лать — сде́лавши

NOTE 3. The gerunds are not declined and have no special terminations for genders or numbers.

NOTE 4. The gerund of the auxiliary verb **быть** is :

Present : бу́дучи
Past : бы́в

NOTE 5. The cardinal function of the verbal adverb (gerund) is to present a verbal form describing a phase of the action or state while it is going on, or when referring to such a phase while it was going on in the past. For both these purposes the present verbal adverb (gerund) is sufficient. One can say :

Я слѹшал егó игръ на роя́ле, прислу́шиваясь в то же вре́мя к тому́, что происхо́дит на дворе́.

I listened to his playing the piano, at the same time trying to hear what was going on outside.

The past verbal adverb is mostly used when referring to an action or state now finished :

написа́в пи́сьмо, я поше́л спать
having written the letter, I went to sleep

Verbal adverbs in the past form are not often used for imperfective verbs. But there is also a tendency to use the present verbal adverb for a perfective verb :

подойдя́ ко мне, он ни́зко поклони́лся (instead of
подоше́дши)
coming up to me, he made a low bow
придя́ домо́й, он сейча́с взя́лся за рабо́ту (instead of
прише́дши)
coming home, he at once began to work

A number of verbal adverbs are now used as adverbs :

несмотря́ на, notwithstanding
смотря́ по, according to
мо́лча, in silence, etc.

6. ADVERBS

§ 89. An adverb is a word that modifies or qualifies an adjective, verb, or other adverb, expressing a relation of place, time, circumstance, manner, etc.

§ 90. *Group A.*

By their origin adverbs represent many groups. To the largest group belong those derived from adjectives. They can be formed from all qualitative adjectives, and also from some others.

(1) Adverbs derived from adjectives are usually in the neuter of the short (predicative) form. They qualify verbs. They can also have a comparative form. Many of these

adverbs can be used as a complete impersonal sentence with an implied predicate (see § 122, note (d)):

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| хорошо, well | лучше, better | гораздо лучше, much better лучше всего, better still, best of all |
| громко, loudly | громче, louder | громче всего, loudest of all |
| скоро, quickly, soon | скорее, sooner, quicker | гораздо скорее, much sooner скорее всего, soonest |
| легко, lightly, easily | легче, easier, lighter | гораздо легче, much easier легче всего, easiest of all |
| поздно, late | позднее } later позже } | гораздо позднее } much later [позже] } |
| рано, early | раньше, earlier | гораздо раньше, much earlier |

NOTE. Adverbs in the comparative form are often qualified by the particle *но* and the adverb *как можно* :

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| получше, | a little better |
| как можно лучше, | in the best possible way |
| поскорее, | a little quicker |
| как можно скорее, | quickest possible, as soon as possible |
| полегче, | a little lighter |
| как можно легче, | as lightly as possible |
| погромче, | a little louder |
| как можно громче, | as loudly as possible |
| позднее, попозднее, | a little later |
| как можно позднее, | as late as possible |
| пораньше, | a little earlier |
| как можно раньше, | as early as possible |

(2) Other adverbs from adjectives are :

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| (а) возможно | possible | These have a verbal character, and are used in all three tenses: present, past, and future: |
| можно | | |
| нужно | } necessary } | |
| надобно | | |
| надо | | |
| возможно | it is possible | (воз)можно было, it was possible |
| можно | | (воз)можно будет, it will be possible |

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| нужно надобно надо | } it is necessary | нужно надобно надо | } было, it was necessary |
| нужно надобно надо | | нужно надобно надо | |
| нужно надобно надо | | будет, it will be necessary | |

To this class belong a few adverbs formed from adjectives, which are used in impersonal sentences with a verbal meaning :

| <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| тепло, it is warm | было тепло, it was warm | будет тепло, it will be warm |
| жарко, it is hot | было жарко | будет жарко |
| холодно, it is cold | было холодно | будет холодно |
| весело, it is cheerful | было весело | будет весело |
| скучно, it is dull | было скучно | будет скучно |
| рано, it is early | было рано | будет рано |
| поздно, it is late | было поздно | будет поздно |
| приятно, it is pleasant | было приятно | будет приятно |
| неприятно, it is unpleasant | было неприятно | будет неприятно |
| удобно, it is comfortable, convenient | было удобно | будет удобно |
| неудобно, it is inconvenient, uncomfortable | было неудобно | будет неудобно |
| хорошо, it is good, it is all right | было хорошо | будет хорошо |
| плохо } it is bad | было плохо | будет плохо |
| скверно | было скверно | будет скверно |

But ordinarily adverbs formed from adjectives go to qualify verbs, and have no other function :

я читаю громко, I read aloud
он пишет медленно, he writes slowly

Such adverbs are distinct in meaning from short neuter adjectives which stand as predicates for neuter nouns.

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (b) должно быть } probably | именно, namely |
| вероятно } probably | иначе, otherwise |
| внезапно, suddenly | крайне, extremely |
| вообще, generally | по крайней мере, at least |
| гораздо, much (with comparative) | по меньшей мере, at the least |

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| лишь, only | навернѹю } as a certainty |
| очень, very | наверняка } as a certainty |
| мгновѣнно, momentarily | подобно, similar |
| навѣрно } for certain | давно, long ago, long since |
| | недавно, recently |
| (c) вдалекѣ, far off | набело, clean ; fair (copy) |
| вкратцѣ, briefly | наскоро, hurriedly, in haste |
| вполнѣ, entirely | начисто, clean ; fair (copy) |
| впроче́м, besides, as for the rest | |
| (d) до́сыта, to satiation | сно́ва, again, anew |
| издалекá, from afar | спроста́, in simplicity |
| сду́ру, from stupidity | сперва́, firstly |
| слегка́, lightly | |
| (e) понемно́гу, little by little | понапрáсну, all for nothing |
| пови́димому, evidently | потихо́ньку, very quietly |
| (f) по-ру́сски, in Russian | по-медвѣ́жьи, in the manner of bears |
| по-а́нглийски, in English | (but медвѣ́дем, as a bear) |
| по-но́вому, in the new way, manner | по-бра́тски, in a brotherly manner |
| по-ста́рому, in the old manner, fashion | по-дру́жески, in a friendly manner |
| по-во́лчьи, in the manner of wolves | (but дру́гом, as a friend) |
| (but во́лком, as a wolf) | |
| по-собáчьи, in the manner of dogs | |
| (but собáкой, as a dog) | |

§ 91. Group B.

Adverbs derived from : (a) *Nouns* ; (b) *Numerals* ;
(c) *Pronouns*

(a) Those derived from nouns are mainly formed from oblique cases, with or without a preposition. (Preposition and noun are merged in the adverb.)

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| вверх, upwards | вне, outside (used as preposition) |
| вниз, downwards | вну́три, inside (used as prep.) |
| вверху́, at the top | извне́, from outside |
| наверху́, on the top | изну́три, from inside |
| внизу́, at the bottom | возле, near (mainly used as prep.) |
| вда́ль, into the distance | по́дле, beside (mainly used as prep.) |
| вдали́, in the distance | вперѣ́д, forward |
| и́здали, from a distance | наза́д, backward |

вперёдѣ, in front (used as prep.)
 позади, behind (used as prep.)
 направо, to the right
 налево, to the left
 справа, from the right
 слева, from the left
 спереди, at the front
 сзади, at the back
 около, about (used as prep.)
 кругом, around
 наравнѣ, on level with
 вдоль, alongside (used as prep.)
 кромѣ, besides, beside (used as prep.)
 поперѣк, across (used as prep.)
 наружу, outside
 снаружи, from outside
 взамен, in exchange
 вмѣсто, instead (used as prep.)
 вмѣстѣ, together
 [врозь] }
 врознь } apart, separately
 прежде, before
 послѣ, afterwards, after (used as prep.)
 наконец, at last
 напримѣр, for instance
 не в примѣр, incomparably
 слишком, too much
 чересчур, overmuch
 отчасти, partly
 насилью, with difficulty
 кстѣти, by the way; appropriately
 некстѣти, inappropriately
 вслух, aloud
 наизусть, by heart
 напрасно, in vain
 нарочно, on purpose
 натошак, on an empty stomach
 настежь, wide open
 поневоле, willy-nilly, against one's will
 точь-в-точь, exactly
 вряд, hardly, scarcely
 вряд-ли, doubtful if . . .
 нельзя, impossible

до-нѣльзя, to the utmost
 даром, as a gift, for nothing
 дома, at home
 домой, homewards
 верхом, on horseback
 бегом, at a run
 шагом, at a walking pace
 лесом, by way of the forest
 полем, by way of the field
 дорогою, along the road
 весной, in the spring
 летом, in the summer
 осенью, in the autumn
 утром, in the morning
 днём, in the day-time
 вечером, in the evening
 ночью, in the night
 порой }
 временами } at times
 по временам }
 вчера, yesterday
 сегодня, to-day
 завтра, to-morrow
 послезавтра, the day after to-morrow
 ежедневно, daily
 еженедельно, weekly
 ежемесячно, monthly
 ежегодно, yearly
 третьяго дня }
 позавчера } the day before yesterday
 позавчера } day
 наконец, at last
 сначала, at first
 тотчас, the same minute, instantly
 наканунѣ, on the eve
 сейчас, immediately
 сейчас-же, the very moment
 вдруг, suddenly
 сию минуту, this moment
 о сю пору, about this time
 нынѣ, at present
 отнынѣ, from now
 донынѣ, till now

поездом, by train
 трамва́ем, by tram
 автобу́сом, by bus
 парохо́дом, by steamer
 бе́регом, along the shore, bank
 мо́рем, by sea

весо́м, in weight, by weight
 длино́ю, of the length
 величино́ю, of the size
 глубино́ю, of the depth
 толщи́ною, of the thickness
 ширино́ю, of the width

NOTE. The unit of weight or measurement after these adverbs usually stands in the accusative preceded by the preposition **в** :

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| длино́ю в два ме́тра, of the length of two metres | в величи́ну, in size |
| весо́м в два килогра́ма, of the weight of two kilos | в глуби́ну, in depth |
| в дли́ну, in length | в толщи́ну, in thickness |
| | в шири́ну, in width |
| | etc. |

(b) *Adverbs derived from Numerals.*

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| одна́жды, ¹ once | вче́тверо, four times as much |
| два́жды, ¹ twice | впя́теро, five times as much |
| три́жды, ¹ thrice | тепе́рь, now |
| вдвоём, two together | одна́ко, however |
| втроём, three together | во-пе́рвых, firstly |
| вдво́е, twice as much | во-вторы́х, secondly |
| втро́е, thrice as much | в-тре́тьих, thirdly |

(c) *Adverbs derived from Pronouns and Pronoun-roots.*

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| аво́сь, perhaps, may be | заче́м, why |
| вот, here | иногда́, sometimes |
| вон, there | как, how |
| весьма́, very | ко́е-как, somehow |
| везде́, everywhere | ка́к-нибудь, in some way or other |
| всегда́, always | ка́к-то, such as ; somehow |
| во́все, at all | как мо́жно, as possible |
| во́все не, not at all | как мо́жно ? how is it possible ? |
| где, where | когда́, when |
| ко́е-где, somewhere (in some places) | когда́-нибудь, at some time or other |
| где-нибудь, somewhere or other | |
| где-то, somewhere | когда́-то, some time ago |
| здесь, here | куда́, whither |

¹ Not in frequent use except одна́жды in the meaning of: once (upon a time).

| | |
|---|---|
| куда-нибудь, somewhere or other (anywhere) | так себе, 'so-so,' 'middling' |
| куда-то, somewhere | такі́й, though |
| негде, no room (place) where to . . . | всё-таки } all the same, neverthe- |
| нигде, nowhere | всё-же } less |
| некогда, no time to . . . | всё (colloquial for всё время, see всегда́), all the time, al- |
| никогда́, never | ways |
| всюду } everywhere | всё равно́, it's all the same, it makes no difference |
| повсюду } | всего́, in all, altogether |
| некуда, nowhere to . . . | опять-таки́, again, and then, once again; again, you see . . . |
| никуда́, nowhere | только́, only |
| откуда́, where from | несколько́, a few |
| отсюда́, from here | нисколько́, none at all, not in the least |
| оттуда́, from there | совсё́м, altogether, quite, entirely |
| туда́, there } (motion) | не совсё́м, not quite |
| сюда́, here } | ничего́, that's nothing |
| тут, here } (rest) | ничего́ себе́, not so bad |
| там, there } | совсё́м не, not at all |
| тогда́, then | само́-собо́ю, by itself |
| пока́, while | уже́ли } is it possible, indeed |
| пока́мест, meanwhile | неуже́ли } |
| ско́лько, how much | по-мо́ему, in my opinion, in my own way |
| поско́льку, in so far as | по-сво́ему, in one's own way |
| мно́го, much | по-на́шему, in our own way, in our opinion |
| немно́го, not much, a little | |
| сто́лько, so much | |
| посто́лку, insomuch, to that ex- tent | |
| так, so | |

§ 92. Group C.

To group C belong a few primary adverbs and those derived from verbs.

(a) Primary Adverbs.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| ё́ле } scarcely, hardly | не, not |
| едва́ } | нет, no |
| едва́-ли, doubtful, hardly | да, yes |
| едва́ не, almost | уже́, already |
| ещё́, still, yet | уже́ не, no longer |
| ещё́ не } not yet | уже́ нет, no longer, no more (when нет is a predicate) |
| нет ещё́ } | |
| ещё́-бы, I should think so; of course | |

(b) Adverbs derived from verbs.

вначит, so it means (used parenthetically)

кажется, so it seems (used parenthetically)

видишь [вишь], you see (used parenthetically)

было, on the point of, very nearly, about to

будет, enough, that will do

будто, будто-бы, as if

пускай, пусть, let; 'all right'; 'I don't care'

почти, almost

звать, it seems, apparently (used parenthetically)

спасибо, thanks

молча, in silence

спустя, on the passing, elapsing (of time)

может быть, perhaps (used parenthetically)

стало-быть, consequently (used parenthetically)

чуть, scarcely, hardly

чуть не, almost, scarcely not

чуть-чуть, just a little

чуть было не, very nearly

ничуть, not in the least

ведь, indeed, but; well then, now you must know

дэскаать { mean: says he (she), say
they. Are used to intro-
duce, in a narrative,
мол { words, and even thoughts,
of another person

пожáлуй, perhaps; if you like

пожáлуйста, please, if you please

нечаянно } inadvertently, by acci-
дент

то-есть, that is to say

разве, then? perhaps? is it true that? perhaps only?

7. PREPOSITIONS

§ 93. *Meaning and Function of Prepositions.*

A close acquaintance with the meaning of Russian prepositions (and adverbs used as prepositions), and the cases of declinable parts of speech which they govern, is very important, as the student will have to acquire a thorough and practical knowledge of the various cases required after each preposition. He will have to make himself thoroughly familiar with the respective inflexions of each case before he can tackle Russian texts intelligently, and also in order to make his own Russian intelligible.

Many prepositions are used as prepositional prefixes to verbs, both for the purpose of forming perfective verbs from imperfective ones, and also to give to the verbs a modified directional, and often different, meaning in accordance with the basic meaning of the prepositional prefix. (See §§ 63-65.)

§ 94. *The function of prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions, is to indicate concretely the position and movement in space of objects, and abstractly their position in relation to time. The meaning of prepositions can be divined from the direction which is given to them by the verb:*

ИТТИ в город } (acc.), to go [travel] to town
 ЭХАТЬ в город }
 ЖИТЬ в городе (loc.), to live in town

Prepositions govern various cases in accordance with the meaning and direction of the verb in the sentence (either apparent or implied). Consequently some prepositions can govern more than one case, as in the above example.

§ 95. Prepositions are divided into three main groups :

(1) Those of movement, - answering to the question :
 откуда ? where from ?

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| из города, from town | с горы, down hill |
| от города, away from town | со станции, from the railway station |

(2) Those of movement, answering to the question :
 куда ? where to ?

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| в город, into town | на горы, up the hill |
| к городу, in the direction of the town | на станцию, to the railway station |
| ко мне, towards me | под горы, down hill |
| за город, beyond the town, into the country | через мост, over the bridge |
| | сквозь туман, through the mist |

(3) Those of stable position, answering to the question :
 где ? where ?

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| в городе, in town | между городом } between the town |
| на горе, on the hill | и селом } and the village |
| при мне, with me | по берегу, along the bank |
| за городом, outside the town | по горам, on the hills |
| над городом, over the town | по ту сторону, over the other side |
| под городом, near the town | около дома, around the house |
| перед городом, in front of the town | возле дома, near the house |
| | против дома, in front of the house |

Prepositions outside these three groups :

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| без, without | про, concerning |
| с [co], with | про } for (intended for) |
| о, about | |
| без меня, without me | за, for (in exchange for), on behalf of |
| с ним, with him | про меня, for me, concerning me |
| со мною, with me | о нём, about him |

A detailed list of prepositions (and adverbs used as prepositions), and the cases which they govern is given below. (See § 96.)

The student will note that some directional prepositions of movement have their distinct reverse-counterparts, such as :

(a) в — из ; (b) к — от ; (c) на — с (со) ;

(d) за — из-за

| | |
|--|---|
| (a) я еду в город I go to town | я приехал из города I came from town |
| я идёу в школу I go to school | я идёу из школы I come from school |
| я идёу в театр I go to the theatre | я идёу из театра I come from the theatre |
| я идёу в оперу I go to the opera | я идёу из оперы I come from the opera |
| (b) я идёу к школе I go towards the school | я идёу от школы I come away from the school |
| (c) мы ёдем на станцию we go to the station | мы ёдем со станции we come from the station |
| мы ёдем на собрание we go to the meeting | мы ёдем с собрания we come from the meeting |
| мы ёдем на почту we go to the post office | мы ёдем с почты we come from the post office |
| мы ёдем на вёчер we go to a party (evening) | мы ёдем с вёчера we come from a party |
| мы ёдем на рынок we go to the market | мы ёдем с рынка we come from the market |

| | |
|---|---|
| я вышел на улицу I went into the street | он пришёл с улицы he came from the street |
| я вышел на двор I went into the yard (outside) | он пришёл со двора́ he came from the yard |
| (d) мы поёдем за-границу (motion) we shall go abroad он за-границей (rest) he is abroad | он приехал из-за границы he came [arrived] from abroad |
| мы поёдем за́ город (motion) we shall go beyond the town (for an outing) за́ городом (rest) | он приехал из-за́ города he came [arrived] from beyond the town |
| за́ реку (motion) to the other side of the river за реко́й (rest) at the other side of the river | из-за реки́ from the other side of the river |

(e) на — под ; под — из-под

| | |
|---|---|
| (e) на́ гору, up hill под́ стол (motion) under the table под столóм (rest) | под́ гору, down hill из-под́ столá from under the table |
|---|---|

§ 96. *Prepositions and the cases which they govern.*(1) *Prepositions governing the Genitive case :*

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| без, without | насу́против, opposite, facing |
| близ, near | о́коло, about |
| вдо́ль, along | относи́тельно, concerning |
| вме́сто, instead of | от, away from |
| вну́три, inside of | позади́, at the back of |
| вне, outside of | по́дле, near (by) |
| возле, near (by) | поперёк, across |
| вокруг, around | посре́дством, by means of |
| для, for (intended for) | после, after |
| до, up to, as far as | пре́жде, before |
| из, from, out of | прóтив, opposite |
| из-за, because of, from behind | ра́ди, for the sake of |
| из-под, from under | сверху́, beside |
| кро́ме, beside | снару́жи, from outside |
| ме́жду, between, among (motion) | сре́ди, in the midst of |
| ми́мо, by | у, by, at, near |
| на́счёт, on account of | с, from, from off |

§ 96a. (2) *Prepositions governing the Dative case :*

| | |
|--|--|
| вопреки, contrary to | по, along, according to |
| к [ко], towards | (Also with nouns, and numerals : один, одна, -о, and from пять on in the sense of distribution, see § 47, 6, Note.) For по with numerals 2, 3, 4, see § 96b. |
| назло, to spite | |
| наперекор, in spite of, against the will of | |
| сообразно } according to, in | |
| согласно } conformity with | |

§ 96b. (3) *Prepositions governing the Accusative case :*

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| про, about, concerning | по, up to, as far as |
| сквозь, through | (Also with numerals 2, 3, 4, 200, 300, 400 in the meaning of distribution.) |
| через, across, through | за, behind (motion), for (in place of, in exchange for) |
| в [во], in (motion) | под, under (motion) |
| на, on (motion) | перед, in front of (motion) |
| о, об, against | |
| с, approximately | |

§ 96c. (4) *Prepositions governing the Instrumental case :*

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| над, over | пред, in front of (rest) |
| под, under (rest) | перед, before |
| между, among | с, with |
| за, behind (rest) | |

§ 96d. (5) *Prepositions governing the Locative (Prepositional) case :*

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| при, by, in the presence of | на, on (rest) |
| о, об, about | по, after |
| в [во], in (rest) | |

§ 96e.

NOTE 1. It will be seen that the greater number of prepositions govern the genitive case. Of these, *y* is the most frequently used in the meaning of: at, near, of, by.

NOTE 2.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| за, behind | { (govern the accusative case when the idea of motion is implied, and the instru- mental case when the idea of rest is implied) |
| под, under | |
| перед, in front of | |

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| в [во], in на, on | { (govern the accusative case (motion) and the locative case (rest)) |
| о [об, обо], about, against | { (govern the accusative in the meaning of 'against' and the locative in the mean- ing of 'about,' 'concerning') |
| между, among | { (governs the genitive (motion) and the instrumental (rest)) |
| с [со], from | (govern the genitive) |
| с, approximately | (governs the accusative) |
| с [со], with | (govern the instrumental) |
| по, along | (governs the dative) |
| по, as far as, up to | (governs the accusative) |
| по, after | (governs the locative) |

NOTE 3. Nearly all the adverbs which are used as prepositions govern the genitive case :

Genitive :

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| вдоль, along | напрóтив, opposite |
| вместо, in place of | около, about |
| внутри, inside | пóдле, near |
| вне, outside | позади, behind |
| возле, near | поперёк, across |
| вокруг, around | пóсле, after |
| близ, near | прóтив, in front, opposite |
| кроме, beside | ради, for the sake of |
| кругом, around | снару́жи, from outside |
| между, between | <i>gen.</i> (motion) <i>Dat.</i> вопреки́, contrary to |
| | <i>instr.</i> (rest) <i>Acc.</i> сквозь, through |

§ 96f. *The Accent of Prepositions.*

A. Proclitics. Normally prepositions have no stress of their own : the word which follows them takes the stress. (See § 14.)

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| на столé, | on the table |
| около дóма, | near the house |
| перед ча́ем, | before tea |

B. Enclitics. Some Russian nouns (mainly mono-syllabic and dissyllabic) have, however, a tendency to throw their accent back on the preceding prepositions¹:

¹ The stressed preposition and noun form an adverbial expression.

на, по, под, за, без, до. The nouns that most frequently throw their accent back, and so lose their own stress, are :

| | | | |
|-------|--------|---------|-----------------------|
| час, | hour | море, | sea |
| пол, | floor | двор, | yard |
| нос, | nose | волос, | hair |
| день, | day | пояс, | waist (belt) |
| год, | year | стол, | table |
| бок, | side | берег, | shore (bank of river) |
| дом, | house | гора, | hill |
| лес, | forest | зима, | winter |
| род, | birth | нога, | |
| ночь, | night | рука, | arm, hand |
| небо, | sky | смерть, | death |

also : головá, head, and a few others.

NOTE. A noun with a tendency to become enclitic after one preposition usually shows the same tendency after other prepositions.

(1) *Enclitics* with на (governing the accusative singular) :

| | |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| на бок, | aside |
| на берег, | on to the bank |
| на волос, | within a hair's breadth |
| на воду, | on to the water |
| на голову, | on the head |
| на гору, | up the hill |
| на зиму, | for the winter |
| на пол, | on the floor |
| на море, | on the sea |
| на ухо, | into the ear (in a whisper) |

(2) *Enclitics* with по (governing dative and accusative singular) :

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| по городу (<i>dat.</i>), | over the town |
| по двору (<i>dat.</i>), | over the yard |
| по воду (<i>acc.</i>), | after some water |
| по уши (<i>acc.</i>), | up to the ears |
| по пояс (<i>acc.</i>), | up to the waist (belt) |

(3) *Enclitics* with под (governing the accusative singular and plural) :

| | | |
|-------|-------------|---------------------------|
| | пóд вечер, | towards evening |
| | пóд гору, | down the hill |
| | пóд голову, | under the head |
| | пóд руку, | into the hand ; opportune |
| but : | под рукóй, | handy |
| | пóд ноги, | under the feet |
| | пóд нос, | under one's nose |
| | пóд стол, | under the table |

(4) *Enclitics* with за (governing the accusative singular and plural) :

| | | |
|------------|--------------------------|------|
| за волосы, | by the hair | |
| за ноги, | by the legs | |
| за год, | for a year | |
| за голову, | by the head | |
| за гору, | beyond the hill (motion) | |
| за день, | for a day | |
| за море, | beyond the sea (motion) | etc. |

Sometimes also with the instrumental :

| | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|------|
| за морем, | beyond the sea (rest) | |
| за лесом, | beyond the woods (rest) | |
| за городом, | outside the town (rest) | etc. |

(5) *Enclitics* with из, без, до (governing the genitive singular) :

| | |
|------------|---------------------|
| из лесу, | out of the wood |
| из дому, | out of the house |
| бéз толку, | without sense |
| до верху, | right to the top |
| до низу, | right to the bottom |
| до земли, | down to the ground |

NOTE 1. The prepositions у, от, про, при, о, об, над, ко, во, со very seldom take the stress. The

following are practically the only *enclitics* in current use :

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| от роду (<i>gen.</i>), | from birth |
| при смерти (<i>loc.</i>), | dying, in a dying state |
| о землю (<i>acc.</i>), | against the ground |
| об пол (<i>acc.</i>), | against the floor |
| во время (<i>acc.</i>), | in time |
| but : во время, | during the time |
| со двора (<i>gen.</i>), | from the yard away |
| со ста (<i>gen.</i>), | from hundred |
| рука об руку (<i>acc.</i>), | hand in hand [arm in arm] |
| час от часу (<i>gen.</i>), | one hour from another |

NOTE 2. The prepositions *бэзо, йзо, на́до, обо, подо, прэдо, пэредо* (which usually stand before nouns beginning with two consonants), also *для, ра́ди, крóме, че́рез, сквозь, пред, пэред*, never make the noun *enclitic*.

NOTE 3. Primary monosyllabic numerals after the prepositions *по, за, на* always become *enclitic* :

| | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| за́ три, | for three |
| за́ пять, | for five |
| за́ сто, | for hundred |
| по́ два, две, | two each |
| по́ три, | three each etc. |

NOTE 4. Monosyllabic verbs in the past tense and past passive participles have also a tendency to become *enclitic* after the negative particle *не* :

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| не́ был, | but : не́ была́ |
| не́ дал, | „ не́ дала́ |
| не́ жил, | „ не́ жила́ |
| не́ взят, not taken, | „ не́ взята́ |
| не́ дан, not given, | „ не́ дана́ |
| не́ зван, not called, not invited, | „ не́ звана́ |
| also : не́хотя, unwillingly | |
| не́чего, there is no need to . . . | |

(See § 135, sub-section 7.)

§ 97. 8. *Conjunctions*. (Indeclinable sentence-words, showing connection between words and sentences.)

(NOTE. On the use of conjunction in the complex sentence see §§ 124-129.)

(1) *Co-ordinative (copulative) Conjunctions* :

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| и, and ; also ; even | ещё, yet |
| и . . . и, both . . . and | даже, even |
| да, and | то, then |
| также, as well | то . . . то, now . . . then |
| тоже, also | отчасти, partly |
| притом, at the same time | как, так, as well as |
| сверх того, besides | не только . . . но и, not only |
| к тому, and then | . . . but also |

(2) *Alternative* :

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| или } or | или . . . или } either . . . or |
| либо } | либо . . . либо } |
| ли . . . ли, whether . . . or | |

(3) *Interrogative* :

ли [ль] . . . или [иль], whether . . . or

(4) *Explanatory* :

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| что, that | так что, so that |
| будто, as if | так как, as, since |
| будто-бы, as it were ; supposed | тогда, когда, then, when |
| то | там, где, there, where |
| ведь, indeed, but | куда, туда, where to, there |
| тогда как, whereas | то |

(5) *Temporal (Conjunctions of Time)* :

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| сперва, at first | наконец, at last |
| сначала, at the beginning | далее, further |
| во-первых, firstly | прежде чем } prior to |
| во-вторых, secondly | прежде нежели } |
| в-третьих, thirdly | пока, meanwhile |
| едва, hardly | лишь только } as soon as |
| потом, afterwards | чуть только } |
| затем, then | то . . . то, now . . . then |

(6) *Comparative* :

как, так, as, so
 нежели, than
 чем, than, rather than (with
 infinitive)
 как, as
 чем . . . тем, the . . . the
 словно, as if
 точно, exactly
 будто, as it were
 так же, как, exactly as

(7) *Conditional* :

эжели, то } if . . . then
 если, то }
 когда бы } if (verb after бы
 если бы } stands in the past
 tense)
 когда, тогда, if . . . then
 лишь-бы, only to, if only

(8) *Hypothetical (Suppositional)* :

бы, эжели-бы, если-бы, if (with verb in the past tense); had it
 been

(9) *Concessive* :

хотя [хоть], although, though ;
 at least, at any rate
 хотя бы, if only ; even though
 хоть и, even if
 хоть, но [однако], though . . . yet
 пусть, но [а], though . . . yet
 лишь, if only
 всё-таки, nevertheless, all the
 same
 пусть } let
 пускай }
 правда, true

впрочем, however
 пожалуй } admitted
 позволим }
 допустим, allowing
 несмотря на то, notwithstand-
 ing that
 сколько ни, however much, no
 matter how much
 как ни, no matter how
 что ни, no matter what
 что-ли? perhaps?, shall we
 say?

(10) *Conjunctions of Purpose* :

чтобы [чтоб], дабы, in order to ; that (with verb, either in the past
 or in the infinitive)
 (When чтобы introduces a subordinate clause expressing *desire*
 or *wish*, the verb in the subordinate clause stands in the past
 tense.)

(11) *Conjunctions expressing opposition or antithesis (ad-
 versative)* :

а, but [and]
 но, but
 же, but, also
 да, but [and]

однако, however
 только, only
 напротив, on the contrary

(12) *Conjunctions of cause, of effect, or of result (causative):*

| | |
|---|--|
| ибо, because (not often used in the spoken language) | для того же, it is for this . . . |
| потому́ что, because | за тем что } for this reason |
| так как, as | за то что } оттого́ что, for the reason that . . . |

(13) *Concluding Conjunctions :*

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| итак, and so | значит, it means |
| так, so | стало-быть, it follows |
| поэтому́, consequently | почему́, why |
| следовательно, consequently | |

§ 98. 9. *Interjections.* (Sentence-words, expressing various emotions.)

| | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| <i>Joy :</i> | ура! hurrah! | <i>Thanks :</i> | спасибо! thanks! |
| <i>Grief :</i> | ах! ah! ох! oh! увѣ! alas! о! oh! | <i>Threat :</i> | вот ужó! you wait! |
| | | <i>Reproach :</i> | э! эх! eh! ну! indeed! |
| <i>Contempt :</i> | фи! фy! phew! fie! | <i>Indication :</i> | вон! out! there! |
| <i>Fright :</i> | ух! ough! ах! oh! | <i>Approbation :</i> | бравó! well done! славнó! glorious! |
| <i>Surprise :</i> | а! ah! ба! here comes! тфу! фy! phew! | <i>Assurance :</i> | ей-ей! } indeed! правó! } |
| <i>Call :</i> | э! ге! eh there! | <i>Offer :</i> | на! на-те! here! |
| <i>Curt dismissal :</i> | проч! away! долбѣ! down! пóлно! enough! that will do! | <i>Sound imitation :</i> | бац! slap! хлоп! pop! бух! pop! цап! snap! |

SECTION III

SYNTAX

§ 99. *Essentials of Russian Syntax.*

It is not the purpose of this work to deal at length with Russian syntax, but as no study of Russian can be pursued without at least some minimum knowledge of syntax, it

will be within the scope of this little work to supply that minimum in order to assist the beginner to keep his bearings in the various forms of construction of the rich Russian language.

In dealing with complex sentences the simpler forms have been treated. The few indispensable rules of general syntax are marshalled here, in so far as they have any bearing on Russian syntax, with a view to assisting the student to foster an appropriate grammatical consciousness which is essential for acquiring the knowledge of a language so highly inflected as Russian.

§ 100. *The Sentence.*

(1) A sentence is a word or group of words which express a complete thought or meaning.

(2) In any sentence one must distinguish at least two ideas which make up a thought : (a) what we think of ; (b) what we think concerning it.

The first is called the **subject** of the sentence.

The second is called the **predicate** of the sentence.

(3) Subject and predicate are joined together in various ways, and the relation between them is modified in various other ways.

(4) The principal content of a sentence is made up of words which denote either a subject (a person or object), or an action or state, or a property, or a number. These are supplied by nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and numerals.

(5) The manner of combination of various words in a sentence is indicated either by various inflexions (declensions and conjugations) of the principal words of the sentence, or by other words which connect the principal words or show their relation to each other. This function is performed by pronouns, some adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions.

(6) Other parts of a sentence, besides the subject and predicate, are : (1) the **object** (object-complement) ; (2) **qualifying words** (qualifiers) ; (3) **adverbial expressions** : (a) of place, (b) of time, (c) of manner, (d) of cause, (e) of purpose.

§ 101. *Relation between Words in the Sentence.*

The various parts of the sentence can stand to each other either in the relation of **co-ordination** or of **subordination**. These relations can be shown either by word-order alone (very rarely in Russian) or by concord where two words (head-word and adjunct-word) agree in whatever grammatical form they have in common : inflexion, number, case. The head-word governs the adjunct-word. (See § 116.)

§ 102. The **Subject** (principal object of our thought in the sentence) can be expressed :

- (a) by a noun in the nominative case, answering to the questions : *кто ?* who ?, *что ?* what ? ;
- (b) by a pronoun or numeral in the nominative ;
- (c) by a verbal infinitive or participle ;
- (d) by any indeclinable part of speech when it is used in the sense of a noun in the nominative. Such words when used as the subject of the sentence are treated as if they were neuter nouns as regards their co-ordination. (See § 119.)

§ 103. The **Predicate** (part of the sentence which denotes what is stated about the subject of the sentence).

The predicate can be expressed :

- (a) by a verb in any tense ;
- (b) by a short adjective ;
- (c) by a short past passive participle ;

- (d) by a noun, when the verbal idea is only implied, and the **present tense** of the auxiliary verb **быть** is omitted :

Он мой брат. He is my brother.

(есть—present tense—is omitted, but the past and future are not omitted : он был мой друг, he was my friend ; он будет моим учителем, he will be my teacher.)

NOTE. Besides the auxiliary verb **быть**, the verbs **стать**, **сдѣлаться** (to become), are also used as a copula for the same purpose. The nouns which they govern stand either in the nominative or the instrumental case (see above example).

§ 104. The predicate can be either a simple one or a compound one (see § 103). The declinable part of a compound predicate is called the name-part.

(1) The name-part of a predicate can be expressed by all the declinable parts of speech : nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals.

(2) The name-part of a predicate can stand in the nominative, instrumental, or genitive case :

Я столѣяр (*nom.*). I am a joiner.

Нѣши берѣзы стали высокими деревьями (*instr.*).
Our birch trees have become tall trees.

Он был тихого нрава (*gen.*).
He was of a quiet disposition.

Он был среднего роста (*gen.*).
He was of medium height.

Он был моим другом (*instr.*). He was my friend.
(It implies the idea of a defined, limited time.)

Он был мой друг (*nom.*, always).

§ 105. *Irregular use of Tenses in Sentences for the sake of expressiveness.*

- (1) Use of **present** instead of **past tense** :

Прибежали в избу дети,
второпях зовут отца . . .

The children ran into the house, hurriedly they call
father . . .

- (2) Use of **present** instead of **future tense** :

Меня занимал вопрос : куда он едет ? . . .

I was preoccupied with the question : where is he
going to ? (instead of : поедет).

- (3) Начинает одно, через минуту возьмётся за другое . . .

He begins one thing, in a minute he will take up
something else . . .

§ 106. *Peculiarities in the use of Moods.*

- (1) First person plural of the **present tense** instead of **imperative** (in the sense of : let us) :

Идём, пойдём гулять.

(colloquially : Идёмте, пойдёмте гулять).

Let us go for a walk.

Забудем это. Let us forget this.

- (2) Conditional mood (which is always in the past tense and is either preceded or followed by the particle **бы**), used in the sense of giving advice :

Ты бы поехал к дяде.

You should go to uncle's.

Ты бы раньше напился чаю.

You might have tea first.

- (3) **Imperative singular** instead of **conditional** :

Не придй он, я бы не поехал с вами. Had not he
come, I would not have gone with you (instead of :
Если бы он не пришёл).

Знай я это раньше, я бы не дал книги. Had I known this before, I would not have given the book (instead of: Если бы я знал это раньше).

Не будь нас там, все бы скучали. If it had not been for us [but for us] everybody would have felt bored (instead of: Если бы мы не были там). (See § 123*b*, sub-section (2).)

(4) **Infinitive mood instead of indicative mood :**

Я ему сделал выговор, а он плакать (instead of: стал плакать). I rebuked him, and he started crying.

Не видать тебе моих книг. You will not see my books (instead of: Не увидишь моих книг).

(5) **Infinitive instead of imperative** (particularly in case of urgency) :

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| послать сейчас, | send at once |
| выдать немедленно, | hand over at once |
| не писать, | don't write |

(6) Frequently any tense of the **indicative** mood can be replaced by verbal interjections for greater expressiveness :

а он с возом — бух в канаву (instead of бухнул),
and he with the cart — flop right into the ditch.

This is a form much favoured by popular usage.

§ 107. The Object (Object-complement) can be expressed by any declinable part of speech in any oblique case (noun, adjective, pronoun, numeral, and participle) :

Я вижу реку. I see the river (*acc.*).

Я рад случая поговорить.

I am glad of the occasion to have a talk (*dat.*).

Я пишу пером. I write with a pen (*instr.*).

СЫТЫЙ ГОЛБДНОГО не разумѣет (*gen.*).

The well-fed one does not comprehend the hungry one.

Мне прѳшлого не жаль (*gen.*).

I am not regretful of the past.

NOTE. An object can also be expressed by a verbal infinitive :

Мы готѳвы ѣхать. We are ready to start.

Мы хотѳм быть там рано (see also § 123a).

We want to be there early.

§ 108. *The Direct Object.*

(a) An object which stands in the accusative case after a transitive verb is called a **direct object** :

Он купѳл корѳву. He bought a cow.

(b) Any other object is called an **indirect object** :

Он торгует скотѳм (*instr.*). He deals in cattle.

Мы ждѳм нѳчи (*gen.*).

We are waiting for the night to come [for nightfall].

Он отказѳлся от винѳ (*gen.*). He refused wine.

§ 108a.

(c) A direct object stands in the genitive instead of the accusative if the verb implies negation :

Он знает урок (*acc.*). He knows the lesson.

but : Он не знает урока (*gen.*). He does not know the lesson.

Он купѳл дом (*acc.*). He bought a house.

but : Он не купѳл дѳма (*gen.*). He did not buy a house.

(d) If the direct object is used in a partitive sense (implying not the whole quantity of an object, but only part of it), it stands in the genitive instead of accusative :

Дай мне воды. Give me some water.

Пожáлуйста, да́йте мне хлѣба.

Please give me some bread.

Он принѣс хлѣба. He fetched some bread.

but : Он принѣс хлеб.

He fetched the bread (all that there was of it).

Да́йте мне вина́. Give me some wine.

but : Принесите вино́. Fetch the wine.

§ 108b.

NOTE 1. An indirect object is often expressed in the nominative plural (used as an accusative) if it denotes a change of personal condition :

Он вы́шел в лю́ди. He became a man of standing [he succeeded in life].

Его́ взя́ли в изво́зники. He was taken [given a job] as a cab-driver.

Он стал изво́зником. He became a cab-driver. (Adverbially : Он [состо́ит] в изво́зниках. He holds a position as cab-driver.)

Её́ взя́ли в гуве́рнантки. She has been taken as a governess. (Adverbially : Она́ в гуве́рнантках. She is a governess [serves as a governess].)

В музыкан́ты не годи́тесь. You are no good as musicians (Krylov).

Он стал музыкан́том, or : он поступи́л в музыкан́ты, (*nom. pl.* instead of *instr. sing.*). He became a musician.

Он стал сторо́жем, or : он поступи́л в сторо́жа (*nom. pl.*). He became a porter, he took a position as a porter.

Его́ взя́ли в солда́ты (*nom. pl.*). He was taken as soldier.

Его́ произвели́ в офице́ры. He has been promoted [gazetted] an officer.

Она поступила в горничные (or Она стала горничной).
She took a post as chambermaid.

Я пойду в няни. I shall become a nurse. (Adverbially :
Она няней. She serves as a nurse. Он солдатом.
He is a soldier.)

By analogy the nominative plural is also used on other occasions :

Мы поедem в гости. We shall go on a visit (as guests).
Мы были в гостях (adverbially). We were on a visit.
Мы приехадим из гостей (adverbially). We came back
from a visit (as guests).

NOTE 2. If a direct object is expressed by a verbal infinitive followed by a noun-complement, the noun (or any other declinable word) stands in the instrumental case :

Я хочу быть солдатом. I want to be a soldier.
Она не хочет быть горничной.
She does not want to be a chambermaid.

The instrumental is also required after : стать, становиться, сделаться, to become ; считаться, слыть, to be known as, to be reputed as.

§ 109. Qualifying Words (*Qualifiers*).

These denote the quality or any other definition of nouns in a sentence :

Богатый купец жил в **большом** доме.
The rich merchant lived in a big house.

С **той** поры **моё** положение переменилось.
Since that time my position has changed.

Он держал **двух** поваров.
He kept two cooks (men).

Дом моего **дяди** сгорел.
The house of my uncle is burned down.

NOTE 1. Qualifying words usually answer to the questions : *како́в ?* what kind ? ; *како́й ?* which ? ; *чей ?* whose ? ; *ско́лько ?* how much ? , how many ? They are expressed by adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles, and they stand *in concord* with the word which they qualify :

Бёлый дом ви́ден и́здали.

The white house is visible in the distance (*adj.*).

Мой сад с **ка́ждым** днём стано́вится гуще́.

My garden (with) every day becomes thicker [denser] (*prons.*).

Восьмо́й день проше́л.

The eighth day has passed (*ord. num.*).

Мы ви́дели **игра́ющих** дете́й.

We saw playing children (*part.*).

In the above examples the qualifiers agree with the qualified word in gender, case, and number.

NOTE 2. If the qualifier is expressed by a noun or any other declinable part of speech, it can stand in various cases (but mostly in the genitive) :

Его́ спасла́ темнотá **но́чи**.

[Он был спасён темнотой **но́чи**.]

He was saved by the darkness of the night.

Не́мцы бежа́ли с по́ля **бѣ́твы**.

The Germans ran from the field of battle.

Не́мцы разру́шили **их** се́ла.

The Germans destroyed their villages.

NOTE 3. A qualifying word can also be expressed by an infinitive :

Не́мцев лиши́ли возмо́жности **разруша́ть**.

The Germans were deprived of the possibility to destroy.

Пришло́ вре́мя **расста́ться**.

The time for parting has come.

§ 110. The **apposition** is a qualifying word expressed by a noun which stands in the same case as the qualified word :

Пришёл Пётр, **старик**, которого мы видели вчера.

Came Peter, the old man whom we saw yesterday.

В городе жил старик, по имени **Миронов**.

In the town lived an old man by the name of Mironov.

Ты должен доверять мне, своему **другу**.

You must trust me, your friend.

Appositions are frequently joined to the qualified words by means of conjunctions, or other words which serve as conjunctions, such as : как, as ; или, or ; то-есть, that is ; именно, namely ; как-то, as follows ; etc.

Он мне, как **другу**, всегда доверяет.

He always confides in me as in a friend.

Степь, то-есть, **безлесная равнина** . . .

The steppe, that is a woodless plain . . .

Степь, или **безлесная равнина** . . .

The steppe, or a woodless plain . . .

The apposition can stand either before or after the qualified word.

NOTE 1. The subordination of the apposition to its head-word is so slight that the two are almost *co-ordinated*.

NOTE 2. The apposition usually stands within commas as a parenthetical sentence, if it follows the head-word.

NOTE 3. Occasionally an apposition is expressed by an adjective, particularly after a personal pronoun :

Он, **беспокойный**, всегда куда-то бежит.

He, the restless one, always runs somewhere.

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS

§ 111. (a) **Adverbial expressions of place**, answering to the questions: где? where?; куда? where to?; откуда? where from? :

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Я живу́ в Лондоне. | I live in London. |
| Мы едем в Москву́. | We are going to Moscow. |
| Он приехал из Ленинграда́. | He arrived from Leningrad. |

§ 112. (b) **Adverbial expressions of time**, answering to the questions: когда? when?; как долго? how long?; с какого времени? since when?; до какого времени? till when? :

Она́ ждала́ с утра́ до в́ечера.
She waited from morning till evening.

Он пробы́л здесь две неде́ли.
He stayed here two weeks.

Он пробуде́т здесь до о́сени.
He will remain here till autumn.

Он до́лго не мог решиться́.
For a long time he could not decide [make up his mind].

§ 113. (c) **Adverbial expressions of manner**, answering to the questions: как? how?; каким образом? in what manner?; сколько? how much?; в каком разме́ре? to what extent? :

Он мно́го тру́дится, да по́льзы в э́том нет.
He labours much, but there is no profit in it.

Он полива́ет о́город два́ раза в де́нь.
He waters the kitchen garden twice a day.

Мы по́ехали ры́сью. We went at a trot.

Он двумя́ годáми ста́рше мене́я (*also* моего́).
He is older than I by two years.

§ 114. (d) **Adverbial expressions of cause**, answering to the questions : почему ? why ? ; по какой причине ? for what reason ? ; отчего ? because of what ? ; за что ? what for ? :

Я остаюсь дома по болезни.

I remain at home owing to illness.

Он проснулся от внезапного шума.

He woke up because of the sudden noise.

Он был расстроен с досады.

He was upset from aggravation [annoyance].

Я был наказан за свою гордость.

I was punished for my pride.

Я чуть не вскрикнул со страха.

I nearly cried out from fear.

§ 115. (e) **Adverbial expressions of purpose**, answering to the questions : зачем ? for what object or what for ? ; для чего ? to what purpose ? ; с какой целью ? with what object ? :

Он был послан [его послали] в город за вином.

He was sent to town to fetch wine.

Они остановились в корчмѣ [на постоялом дворѣ] для ночлега.

They stopped at the inn for the night [to stay for the night].

Мой сосед пригласил меня обѣдать с ним.

My neighbour invited me to dine with him.

NOTE. The most frequently used words for expressing adverbials of all classes are : adverbs, gerunds, nouns, and infinitives.

§ 116. *Co-ordination and Subordination.*

The student must bear in mind that in the study of a language so highly inflected as Russian he will have to

familiarize himself with the right mode of joining the various parts that go to make up the sentence, in order to join them into a coherent and correct whole.

Words are joined into a sentence in two ways :

- (1) by *Co-ordination*.
- (2) by *Subordination*.

§ 117. (1) *Co-ordination*, where parts of the sentence are placed in the same form as far as number, gender, and person are concerned :

Старик ловил рыбу. The old man was catching fish.
(Subject and predicate are in the same number and gender.)

Старуха пряла. The old woman spun. (Co-ordination of gender and number.)

Я иду гулять. I go for a walk. (Co-ordination of person and number.)

Co-ordination mainly affects :

- (a) predicate and subject ;
- (b) qualifying word and qualified word.

(a) **Predicate**, when expressed by a verb, agrees with the subject of the sentence in person, number, and in gender (if in the past tense) :

Весело сияет месяц. Brightly [gaily] the moon is shining.

Прибежали дети. The children came running.

Старик ловил рыбу. The old man caught fish.

Птица летала. The bird was flying.

Хлеб стал дорог. Bread has become dear.

Щука жадная рыба. The pike is a greedy fish.

(b) **Qualifying word** agrees with the qualified word in gender, number, and case :

Белый снег сверкает. The white snow glitters.

Белка там живёт ручная. A tame squirrel lives there.

§ 118. (2) *Subordination.*

By subordination we mean such a manner of joining two words in a sentence where one word stands in the particular case which is required by the other word :

Осёл уви́дел соловья́. The donkey saw the nightingale.

(Direct object in the genitive, instead of accusative, is required in the case of an animate noun.)

Лиса́ залёзла в сад. The fox got into the orchard.

(Accusative with в answering to the question куда?.)

Он досто́ин ва́шего внимáния. He is deserving of your attention.

The word which requires that the other word should stand in a particular case, thus deciding the particular case in which that word should stand, is called the **governing word**.

The word which conforms in the particular case (the modified word) in accordance with the requirement of the governing word, is called the **governed word**.

Governing words in the sentence are mostly verbs, but occasionally they can also be nouns and adjectives :

Я ви́дел бра́та. I saw brother. (Governing word is a verb).

У него́ приви́чка к труду́. He has a bent for work. (Governing word is a noun.)

Он досто́ин внимáния. He is deserving of attention. (Governing word is a short adjective.)

Governed words are nearly always nouns.

Subordination can be effected both with and without a preposition :

Осёл уви́дел соловья́. The donkey saw the nightingale.

Над ослóм сме́ются. The donkey is laughed at.

Лиса́ залёзла в сад. The fox got into the orchard.

The relation between the governing and the governed words can be either (1) an indirect one, or (2) a direct one : that is, (1) with a preposition, or (2) without a preposition.

1. Лиса залезла в сад.
2. Осёл уви́дел соловья́.

§ 119. 1. *Peculiar Cases of Co-ordination between Subject and Predicate.*

(1) If the subject is expressed by a cardinal numeral or the words : *много* (much), *мало* (little), *мно́жество* (a large quantity), *не́сколько* (a few), then the verb (predicate) can stand either in the plural or in neuter singular :

Остава́лось се́мь ве́рст до Мо́сквы.

It was [remained] seven versts to Moscow. (Verb in neuter singular.)

Не́сколько каза́ков встре́тили капита́на.

A few Cossacks met the captain. (Verb in the plural.)

На столе́ бы́ло мно́го буты́лок ви́на.

On the table there were many bottles of wine.

Мно́жество соба́к встре́тило нас го́лосом ла́ем.

A large number of dogs met us with loud barking. (Verb in neuter singular.)

Мно́жество но́вых до́миков мелька́ло из-за дере́вьев.

A large number of new small houses glimmered through [from behind] the trees. (Verb in neuter singular.)

(2) If the auxiliary verb *быть* (usually omitted in the present tense if used as a copula) is used as an ordinary predicate, the singular *есть* can be used even when plurality is expressed (see § 134a) :

У нас *есть* кни́ги. We have books.

§ 120. 2. *Peculiar Cases of Co-ordination between Qualifier and Qualified word.* (See § 137, sub-section 7.)

(1) Cardinal numerals *два*, *оба*, *три*, *четы́ре*, *полто́ра* do not conform in case with their noun (that is, they do not

take the nominative or accusative plural), but require the genitive singular :

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| два ¹ рубля, | two roubles |
| оба столá, | both tables |
| три сту́ла, | three chairs |
| четы́ре бра́та, | four brothers |
| полтора́ ¹ фунта, | 1½ pounds |

(2) Cardinal and collective numerals, and also adverbial pronouns denoting an indefinite quantity (пять, шесть, etc. ; двое, трое, etc. ; много, мало, несколько), require the genitive plural, except when много, мало are used with partitive nouns, such as butter, sugar, tea, etc., in the sense of 'much,' 'little' :

| | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| мáло столóв, | few tables |
| мнóго сту́льев, | many chairs |
| не́сколько книг, | a few books |
| but : ма́ло ма́сла, | little butter |
| мнóго са́хару, | much sugar |

(3) In the oblique cases cardinal numerals (and adverbial pronouns denoting quantity) agree with the noun :

| | |
|---------------|------------------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | двух столóв |
| <i>Dat.</i> | двум столáм |
| <i>Instr.</i> | мно́гими столáми |

NOTE. In Russian the expressions *five, six, a few, how many people*, are rendered as :

| | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| пять челове́к | } not люде́й |
| шесть челове́к | |
| не́сколько челове́к | |
| ско́лько челове́к | |

(see §§ 20, group 9 ; 54b) ;

¹ две, полтора́, if used with a feminine noun.

but the expressions *few people, many people*, are rendered as : мáло людéй мнóго людéй

or in the popular forms :

 мáло наро́ду мнóго наро́ду

PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL SENTENCES

§ 121. (1) *Personal sentences* have either a clearly defined (apparent) or a latent (implied) subject :

 травá растёт, grass grows
я пишу́, I write

§ 122. (2) *Impersonal sentences* have no apparent grammatical subject :

Морóзит. It freezes.
Светáет. It is daybreak [it is becoming light].
Рассвелó. It is daybreak [it has become light].
Мне хóчется есть. I feel hungry.
Мне хотéлось есть. I felt hungry.
По ўлицáм слонá водíли.
An elephant was being led along the streets.

In the first three sentences, which express natural phenomena, both the formal subject and the predicate are merged in one word. In the second three sentences the grammatical subject is inverted (turned into an object). (See § 56b.)

To the same class belong :

мне думáется, I seem to think ; I am thinking ;
 it occurs to me
мне думáлось, I was thinking ; it occurred to me
говоря́т, they say
нет [не есть], no
темне́ет, it is becoming dark
мне не спíтся, I cannot sleep
мне ка́жется, it seems to me
мне казáлось[*по-], it seemed to me ; I thought

NOTE. The predicate of an impersonal sentence can be expressed :

- (a) By the second person of the present tense of the indicative mood or by the second person of the imperative mood :

Тѣше ѣдешъ, дѣльше бѣдешъ.

The slower you travel, the farther you will be [get].

Хлеб-соль ешь, а прѣвду режь.

Eat bread and salt, and be truthful [cut the truth].

- (b) By the third person singular (neuter) of the indicative mood (both past and present) :

Рассветаетъ. It is the beginning of daybreak.

Рассвелó. It is daybreak.

Морóзитъ. It freezes.

Морóзило. It was freezing.

Крышу сорвало бóмбой.

The roof has been torn off by a bomb.

Меня сѣльно толкнуло впередъ.

I was forcibly pushed forward.

Мне хóчется есть. I feel hungry.

Мне не хотелось есть. I did not feel hungry.

Мне не спѣтся. I cannot sleep.

Мне не спалось. I could not sleep.

Егó нетъ [не есть] дома. He is not in [at home].

Егó нé было дома. He was not in [at home].

У меня нé было дéнегъ. I had no money.

В лесъ дровъ не вóзятъ.

Wood (fire-wood) is not carted into the forest.

NOTE. The tendency to turn a personal construction into an impersonal one is one of the peculiarities of the Russian language. This frequently happens even when the grammatical subject is not quite hidden. Some of the above sentences could be

expressed as personal sentences with a formal subject :

я хочу́ есть ; я не хоте́л есть ; я не могу́ спать ; я не мог спать ; он не до́ма ; он не́ был до́ма ; я не име́л де́нег ; etc.

But these personal constructions would imply too much individual deliberate *volition*, which it is the intention of the impersonal sentence not to express too prominently. (See § 56b.)

(c) By the infinitive :

Мне некогда́ вози́ться. I have no time to bother.

(d) By means of the auxiliary verbs : быть (to be), станови́ться, стать, сде́латься (to become), in compound predicates, with an adverb. In the present tense the auxiliary verb is omitted :

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Мне скучно́. | I feel bored [dull]. |
| Мне было́ скучно́. | I felt bored. |
| Мне ста́ло весе́ло. | I began to feel cheerful. |
| Мне ста́ло холо́дно. | I began to feel cold. |
| Мне стано́вится жа́рко. | I begin to feel hot. |

(e) By a neuter verb with the reflective particle ся in the passive sense :

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| дом стро́ится [дом стро́ят], | the house is being built |
| э́то де́лается [э́то де́лают], | this is done |
| э́то называ́ется [э́то называ́ют], | this is called |

(See § 131.)

NOTE. The sentences in this group are only logically impersonal ; grammatically they have the character of personal sentences.

(f) An impersonal character is lent to a sentence by the use of the second person singular of the present tense

(or future in perfectives) preceded by the past tense of the semi-iterative verb **быва́ть** — **быва́ло** :

быва́ло, ска́жешь, it often happened one would say
быва́ло, е́дешь, it often happened one would go
 [travel]

быва́ло, спрóсишь, it often happened one would ask

NOTE. Other persons can also be used with **быва́ло** :

быва́ло, говор́ят, it often happened } they would
быва́ло, спрóсят, it often happened } say, ask

- (g) By the use of any form of an active verb for the passive form :

его́ уби́ло грóмом instead of **он был уби́т грóмом**
 he was killed by lightning [thunder]

- (h) By the use of the past tense in the neuter with the formal subject turned into an object, usually in the genitive :

при́ехало мно́го госте́й, many guests arrived
собра́лось мно́го наро́ду, many people gathered

NOTE. **мно́го** in these two sentences is the formal subject (*neuter*).

§ 123. *Negative Sentences* (see § 135, sub-section 6).

Double and treble negations are usual in Russian :

| | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| нико́го не ви́дно , | no one to be seen |
| нико́го не ви́дать , | one cannot see anybody |
| нико́го нет , | no one is in ; there is nobody |
| я ни́когда́ не забу́ду , | I shall never forget |
| он ни́че́го не сде́лал , | he did nothing |
| ни́че́го нет , | there is nothing |
| он ни́когда́ ни́че́го не де́лает , | he never does anything |
| я ни́где́ не был , | I was not anywhere |
| я ни́куда́ не по́еду , | I shall not go anywhere |

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| я совсѣм не знаю, | I don't know at all |
| ниско́лько не знаю, | I don't know in the least |
| соверше́нно не знаю | } I absolutely do not know |
| ни́мало не знаю | |
| я во́все не хочú, | I do not at all wish [want] |

NOTE. Negative pronouns and adverbs always stand before the particle **не** which precedes the verb.

§ 123a. *Use of the Infinitive as an object-complement.* (See § 107.)

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ду́маю пойти́, | I think of going |
| ду́маю нача́ть, | I think of beginning |
| ду́маю писа́ть, | I think of writing |
| ду́маю посла́ть, | I think of sending |
| ¹ нача́ну рабо́тать, | I shall begin to work |
| ¹ нача́л писа́ть, | began to write |
| ¹ ста́л проси́ть, | began to ask |

§ 123b. *Use of the Imperative.*

(1) The affirmative imperative (when requesting or ordering someone to do a thing) is often expressed in the imperfective form even if the verb is used in the perfective aspect in the indicative mood. An order or command thus expressed is less abrupt :

сади́тесь здесь (sit down here) is less definite, but is also less abrupt than **ся́дьте** здесь.

In the negative imperative the same tendency is noticed :
не говори́, не сказа́ывай (do not speak, do not tell)
instead of не скажи́.

NOTE. But if a verb is used with a prepositional prefix, which often alters the general meaning of the verb by giving it a modified direction, the imperative is used in the perfective form :

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| прине́сите кни́ги, | fetch the books |
| унесе́йте всё э́то, | take all this away |
| позови́те дво́рника, | call the porter |

¹ After verbs denoting beginning or termination of an action, the imperfective of the complement verb is used.

(2) Often the imperative singular takes the place of a conditional clause :

знай я это раньше, я бы не дал книги, had I known this before, I would not have given the book (instead of если бы я знал это раньше). (See § 106, subsection (3).)

(3) The imperatives of дать, давать : дай[те], давай[те] mean : let us . . .

давайте играть в прятки, let us play at hide-and-seek.

будем, будемте also have the meaning of 'let us . . .'

(4) The imperatives of пустить, пускать (to let, to allow) : пусть, пускай, followed by another verb, mean : let him, let them :

пусть, пускай пишет, let him write

пусть, пускай делают, let them do

пусть, пускай, used alone, mean : 'all right,' 'I don't care.'

(5) customary form of
greeting instead of :

| | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| здравствуй[те] | good morning | } how do you do ? |
| | good day | |
| | good evening | |

literal meaning : keep well

прощай[те], good-bye

are imperatives which are used almost adverbially.

§ 124. Complex Sentences.

It is frequently found necessary to elucidate some part of a simple sentence by expressing it in a whole sentence instead of one word. When this is done a **complex sentence** is formed. Two or three simple sentences can be joined together into one **complex sentence**. The simple sentences thus joined are called **clauses**. There is usually a principal

clause and one or more subordinate clauses. The **principal clause** is that which expresses the main thought of the complex sentence. Any other clauses which form a part of the main sentence are called **subordinate clauses**. The dependent clause, or clauses, may be either *co-ordinate* or *subordinate*:

Порá вставáть : ужé сeдьмóй час ; or

Порá вставáть, потому́ что ужé сeдьмóй час (co-ordination).

It is time to get up : because it is already past [gone] six (the seventh hour).

Нам не нужна́ постeль : мы б́удем спать на двoрe ; or

Нам не нужна́ постeль, потому́ что мы б́удем спать на двoрe (co-ordination).

We need no bed as [because] we will sleep in the yard [outside].

Спервá шёл дождь, потóм т́учи разогна́ло вéтром, и наконeц нeбó проясни́лось (co-ordination).

At first it was raining, then [afterwards] the clouds were dispersed by the wind, and finally the sky cleared.

Дверь отвори́лась, и человек вошёл в кóмнату (co-ordination).

The door opened, and a man entered the room.

Кóмната, где лежалъ Илья́ Ильич, казáлась прекра́сно у́бранной (subordination).

The room in which Ilya Ilyich was lying appeared to be beautifully decorated [furnished].

Он указáл на стол, на котóром Облóмов обeдал (sub-ordination).

He pointed to the table at which Oblomov was having dinner [was dining].

Никтó не знáет, б́удет ли он зáвтра жив́ или умрёт (subordination).

No one knows whether he will be alive to-morrow or he will be dead.

Европéйцы дóлго не зна́ли, что существу́ет Аме́рика ;
or Европéйцы дóлго не зна́ли тогó, что существу́ет
Аме́рика (subordination).

Europeans did not know for a long time about the existence of America. (Here the subordinate clause answers to the question *че́го?* what? The clause stands as a direct object complementing a negative predicate.)

Besides these two categories of clauses, there are also **inserted** and **parenthetic** clauses :

Когда́ он говори́т, а он почти́ всегда́ говори́т, его́
лицо́ выража́ет доса́ду (inserted clause).

When he talks, and he almost always talks, his face expresses vexation [annoyance].

Ты, говори́т, большо́й ма́стер петь (parenthetic clause).
They say, thou art a great master of [good at] singing.

Он, я полага́ю, прие́дет за́втра (parenthetic clause).
He, I suppose, will arrive to-morrow.

Он, говори́т, ра́нен { They say }
Говори́т, он ра́нен { he is } (parenthetic clauses).
Он ра́нен, говори́т { wounded }

Спóрили, как во́дится, о́чень дóлго (parenthetic).
They argued a very long time, as usual.

Inserted and parenthetic clauses can stand in the relation of co-ordination or subordination to the principal clause. They usually stand between commas if in the middle of the principal sentence. They are separated by a comma if they stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

Clauses can stand in the same relation to each other and to single words as words do to one another in the sentence.

Subordinate clauses, either in an apparent or in an implied way, can be made to answer to the same questions

as the word in the principal sentence, which they supplant for the purpose of greater elucidation :

Я не был в классе, потому́ что я был болен.

I was not at the class because I was ill.

This sentence can answer to the questions : почему́ ? why ? ; по какой причине́ ? for what reason ? The sentence can be paraphrased as : Я не был в классе по болѣзни (by reason of illness).

Я прилѣг, что́бы вздремну́ть [я прилѣг вздремну́ть].

I lay down in order to have a little sleep.

This subordinate clause can answer to the question : for what purpose ?

Что прошлѡ, тогѡ не ворѡтишь [прошлаго не ворѡтишь] ; не ворѡтишь тогѡ, что прошлѡ.

That which is past [gone] thou wilt not turn back [cannot be recalled].

The question is here : чего́ не ворѡтишь ?

§ 125. *Simple subordinate clauses* which form part of a **complex sentence** fall under the three main heads of :

(1) **Noun-clauses** ; (2) **adjective-clauses** ; and (3) **adverb-clauses**.

(1) A noun-clause can stand to its principal clause in the relation of : (a) subject ; (b) predicate ; (c) direct object.

(2) An adjective-clause always qualifies a noun (as qualifier).

(3) An adverb-clause stands to its principal clause in the same relation as an adverb.

NOTE. Noun-clauses and adjective-clauses cannot take the inflexions of nouns or adjectives ; they merely stand in place of nouns or adjectives. These clauses are frequently preceded by pronouns with the functions of

conjunctions. These take the case of the noun or adjective which is supplanted, in accordance with the grammatical demand of the word in the principal sentence to which the clause is subordinated (see last example of § 124). Subordinate clauses are also introduced by adverbs and conjunctions.

§ 126. (a) *Subject-clauses.*

A subject-clause is a clause which has the function of a subject to the principal clause. It answers to the questions: кто? who?; что? what? and is joined to the principal clause by the conjunction-words: кто, что, who, which, that:

Кто победил, тот прав.

[Тот прав, кто победил.]

He is (in the) right who conquered [won].

Что с вóзу упáло, то пропáло.

[То пропáло, что с вóзу упáло.]

What has fallen off the cart is lost.

[That is lost which has fallen off the cart.]

Кто сыт, тот голодного не понимает.

[Тот, голодного не понимает, кто сыт.]

[Сытый голодного не понимает.]

He who is well-fed does not understand the hungry one.

Кто богáт, тот чáсто забывáет бédных.

[Богáтый чáсто забывáет бédных.]

He who is rich often forgets the poor.

§ 127. (b) *Predicate-clauses* are not so frequent, but they are occasionally used as an elucidating predicate to the principal clause. They answer to the questions: какóв, -á, -ó, -ý?; кто?, что?; how is?, who?, what? They are joined to the principal clause by the conjunction-words: какóв, -á, -ó, -ý; какóй, -áя, -óе, -ýе, as, exactly as не кто инóе как, none other than; не что инóе как, nothing else but:

Каковá яблоня, такóв и плод.

[Такóв плод, каковá яблоня.]

As is the apple-tree, so is the fruit.

Был он [это был] не кто инóй, как наш сосéд Петрóв.

He was [it was] none other than our neighbour Petrov.

(c) *Object-clauses* have the same function as an ordinary object and are usually connected with the principal clause by the conjunction-word что, and also by other conjunction-words :

Тепérь все знáют, что нёмцы свирéпы.

[Все знáют свирéпость нёмцев.]

Now everyone knows that the Germans are cruel
[ferocious].

Что вóлки жáдны, вся́кий знáет.

[Вся́кий знáет, что вóлки жáдны.]

[Все знáют о жáдности волкóв.]

Everyone knows that wolves are ravenous.

Что посéешь, то и пожнёшь.

[То пожнёшь, что посéешь.]

[Посéянное пожнёшь.]

What thou wilt sow thou wilt also reap.

§ 128. *Qualifier-clauses* (adjective-clauses) serve as detailed (descriptive) qualifiers to any noun in the principal sentence. They are usually joined to the principal sentence by the pronouns кто, who ; какóй, -ая, -ое, -ие, what kind ; котóрый, -ая, -ое, -ые, which ; чей, чья, чьё, чьи, whose ; что, what ; and also by conjunction-words, such as где, where ; когдá, when ; кудá, whither :

Настáл день, когдá я пóнял значéние егó слов.

The day arrived when I understood [realized] the meaning of his words.

Есть такíе лóуди, котóрые ничегó не знáют.

There are such people who know nothing.

Найди́ письмó, котóрое я вчерá получил от брáта.

Find the letter which I received yesterday from brother.

Человéк, котóрый здоров, мóжет рабóтать.

[Здоровый человек может рабóтать.]

A man who is healthy can work.

Тот, кто глуп, осúдит [глúпый осúдит].

He who is stupid will condemn.

Тот, кто умён, поймёт [умный поймёт].

He who is wise will understand.

§ 129. *Adverb-clauses* have the function of adverbs in relation to the principal clause. According to their meaning adverb-clauses are classed as adverb-clauses : (1) of time ; (2) of place ; (3) of cause ; (4) of manner ; (5) of purpose.

These clauses are joined to the principal clause in the following way :

§ 129a. (1) *Adverb-clauses of time* answer to the questions : когда ? when ? ; как дóлго ? how long ? ; с каких пор ? since when ? They are joined by : когда́, when ; в то врéмя, как, at the time when (as) ; с тех пор, как, since the time when ; пóсле того́, как, after :

Когда́ восхóдит сóлнце, станóвится светлó.

When the sun rises it becomes light.

В то врéмя как [когда́] éто случíлось, егó ужé не было в живы́х.

At the time when this happened he was no longer alive [among the living].

С тех пор, как началáсь войнá, жить стáло трóдно.

Since [the time that] the war started, life has become difficult [it has become difficult to live].

Пóсле того́, как он объясни́л нам су́ть де́ла, всё стáло я́сно.

After he had explained to us the pith [gist] of the matter, everything became clear.

§ 129b. (2) *Adverb-clauses of place* answer to the questions: где? where?; куда? whither?; отку́да? whence? They are joined by: куда, whither; где, where; отку́да, whence:

Его́ нашли́ на том же ме́сте, где он и ра́ньше был.

He was found on the very spot where he had also been before.

Я отту́да, где струи́тся [тече́т] ти́хий Дон.

I am from [thence] where the quiet Don flows.

§ 129c. (3) *Adverb-clauses of manner* answer to the questions: как? how?; ка́ким о́бразом? in what manner? They are joined by: как, as, in the manner of; что, that:

Пусть дру́гие живу́т, как хоте́т.

Let others live as [in the manner] they like

Он так мно́го рабо́тает весь день, что к ве́черу у него́ уж нет бо́льше сил рабо́тать.

He works so much all day that towards the evening he has no more strength to work.

День был я́сен, как душа́ младе́нца.

The day was as clear as the soul of a babe.

Он поёт, как соловей [поёт соловьём].

He sings like a nightingale [sings in the manner of a nightingale].

Он сверну́лся, как кала́ч [сверну́лся калачо́м].

He rolled himself up like a roll [round cake] [in the manner of a roll].

§ 129d. (4) *Adverb-clauses of cause* answer to the questions: почему́? for what reason?; отче́го? why?; за что́? what for? They are joined by: потому́-что, because; оттого́-что, за то́ что, for the reason that:

Я оттого́ могу́ помога́ть бе́дным, что всегда́ был бережлив.

I can help the poor because I have always been frugal.

Я за то на тебя сердит, что ты ничего не делаешь.
I am angry with you because you are not doing anything.

Я не поеду за границу, потому что решил поступить в университет.
I shall not go abroad because I have decided to enter the university.

§ 129e. (5) *Adverb-clauses of purpose* answer to the questions : *зачём ?*, *для чего ?* for what purpose ? They are joined by [для того], *чтобы*, in order to :

Дровосёк пошёл [отправился] в лес, чтобы рубить дрова.

The wood-cutter has gone to the forest in order to cut [chop] wood.

Мальчик пошёл к реке [на реку] с удочкой, чтобы удить. [Для того, чтобы ловить рыбу.]

The boy went to the river [on the river] with a fishing-rod in order to angle.

§ 130. *Function of the Participle in the Complex Sentence.*

Participles can replace the predicate of a qualifying subordinate clause. The joining conjunction-word is dropped, and a participle takes the place of the verb-predicate in the same tense :

- (1) Костёр пылал и освещал лица наших людей, которые сидели около него. The camp fire burned brightly and lit up the faces of our men who sat round it.

This sentence can be turned into :

Костёр пылал и освещал лица наших людей, сидевших около него. (Past active participle in genitive plural to conform with the case of наших людей.) (The sentence is thereby shortened.)

- (2) Няня немедленно послала на почту письмо, которое она написала. The nurse sent to the post-office the letter which she had written.

This can be turned into :

Няня немедленно послала на почту письмо, написанное ею. (Past passive participle in the accusative (neuter) to conform with письмо.)

§ 130a. *Function of the Gerund (Verbal Adverb) in the Complex Sentence.*

Gerunds can replace verb-predicates in some subordinate adverb-clauses. The joining conjunction-word is dropped and the verb-predicate is supplanted by a gerund :

(1) **Present gerund** (verbal adverb) is used when the actions (or states) in both the principal and the subordinate clauses takes place at the same time :

Когда я брожу вблизи реки, я слышу выстрелы.
When I stroll [wander] near the river I hear shots [firing].

This can be turned into :

Бродя вблизи реки, я слышу выстрелы (present gerund).

Когда мы будем в Москвѣ, мы посетим все музеи.
When we are [shall be] in Moscow we shall visit all the museums.

This can be turned into :

Будучи в Москвѣ, мы посетим все музеи.

(2) **Past gerund** (verbal adverb) is used when the action of the subordinate clause precedes that of the principal clause :

Когда он написал письмо, брат отнёс его на почту.
Brother, after he had written the letter, took it to the post-office.

This can be turned into :

Написав письмо, брат отнёс его на почту.

§ 131. *The Passive Voice.*

The long form of the passive participle (both present and past) is mainly used in subordinate clauses :

Дом, построенный моим отцом, сгорел.

The house built by my father has been burned down.

Старик, уважаемый всеми жителями нашего города, выбран мэром.

The old man who is respected by all the inhabitants of our town, has been elected mayor.

The short passive participle is frequently used as a predicate, either by itself or with the auxiliary verb *быть* :

Он выбран мэром. He has been elected mayor.

Он был выбран мэром. He was [had been] elected mayor.

Дом построен. The house has been built.

Дом был построен. The house was [had been] built.

Он всеми уважаем. He is respected by everybody.

Он был всеми уважаем. He was respected by everybody.

But the paraphrased expressions :

его все уважают его все уважали

are more frequently used.

A great number of passive constructions are rendered by reflexive verbs. (See §§ 69 ; 122, note (e).)

это называется } this is called
[это называют] }

это называлось } this was called
[это называли] }

золото добывается } gold is procured [found]
[золото добывают] }

вопрос обсуждается } the question is discussed
[вопрос обсуждают] }

обсуждался [обсуждали], was discussed

он считается богатым } he is considered rich
 [его считают богатым]
 он считался [его считали], he was considered
 они считались } they were considered
 [их считали]
 бельё стираётся прачкой, linen is laundered by a
 laundress
 газета издаётся instead of издаётся, the news-
 paper is published
 концерт кончается instead of кончаем
 концерт начинается ,, начинаем

The passive voice is frequently expressed by the impersonal use of a transitive verb :

Его убило грóмом
 instead of Он был убит грóмом.
 He was killed by lightning.
 Крышу сорвало вётром
 instead of Крыша была сорвана вётром.
 The roof has been torn away by the wind.
 Все доро́ги занесло́ снёгом
 instead of Все доро́ги были занесены́ снёгом.
 All the roads have been covered with snow.

§ 132. *Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.*

(1) In Russian there is no subjunctive mood (thought mood) for indirect narration. Subordinate sentences of indirect narration are often introduced by the adverbs: **де, де́скать, мол** (as if to say; said he [she]; says he, etc.), and the verb is in the present, past, or future of the indicative mood, as required by the sense of the sentence. The above three adverbial expressions and also the parenthetical verb 'говори́т,' although very frequent in colloquial speech, are not so often used in the literary, or everyday, language of the educated Russian. The adverbs **бу́дто,**

[**бўдто-бы**] (as if) is very often used to introduce a subordinate sentence of reported speech when the narrator is not quite convinced of the truth of what he had been told :

Он говорѣтъ, бўдто егѡ обокрѡли.

He says he has been robbed.

(This may be so, but I refrain from commenting on it.)

If there is no room for such doubt, the subordinate clause of indirect narration is simply introduced by **что** :

Он говорѣтъ, что егѡ обокрѡли.

He says he has been robbed.

In subordinate sentences which are a paraphrased rendering of an interrogative or a negative sentence, the English words 'whether,' 'if,' are rendered in Russian by the particle **ли**, which is placed immediately after the verb of the subordinate clause :

Я не знѡю, ѡдет ли онъ въ Лондонъ, ѡли нѣтъ.

I do not know whether [if] he goes [is going] to London or not.

Вы не знѡете, дѡма-ли онъ ?

You do not know if he is at home ?

(For the use of the imperative in a conditional or subjunctive sense see § 106, sub-section (3), and § 123*b*, sub-section (2).)

(2) *Conditional sentences* are introduced by **ѡсли** and **ѡсли бы** (popular : **ѡжели**, **колі**, **ѡжели бы**). **ѡсли** (if) can be followed by a verb in any tense :

ѡсли онъ придѣтъ, то я бўду егѡ ждѡть.

If he is coming, I shall wait for him.

ѡсли онъ ѡдетъ сюдѡ, то нўжно приготѡвить кѡмнѡту для негѡ.

If he is coming here, then it is necessary to prepare a room for him.

Если он уже приехал, то я пойду к нему.
If he has already arrived, then I will go to him.

After **если бы**, which means 'if . . . had,' and after **бы**, 'would,' the verb can stand only in the past tense :

Если бы я знал, что вы приедете сюда, то я бы послал вам лошадь.

If I had known [had I known] that you were coming here, I would have sent you a horse.

(See also § 106, sub-section (3), and § 123*b*, sub-section (2).)

(3) *Indirect (reported) sentences.*

The tense of the verb in an indirect (reported) sentence is that in which the verb has been used in the actual direct statement. It does not conform to the tense of the verb in the principal clause :

Он сказа́л, что приде́т. He said he *will* come (not *would* come, which would be **прише́л-бы**, and therefore incorrect).

Он сказа́л, что зна́ет всё об э́том. He said he *knows* all about it (not *knew*, which would be **знал** and would mean in Russian *had known*).

Он писа́л, что прие́дет за́втра. He wrote that he *will* come to-morrow (not *would* come, which would be incorrectly **прие́хал-бы** with the Russian meaning of *might, would have come*).

NOTE. This is characteristic of the exactness of Russian speech, which does not subordinate logical correctness to grammatical forms.

For example, a Russian says : Я прие́ду, е́сли брат бу́дет там, I shall come if brother *will* be there, not : Я прие́ду е́сли брат там, which would mean : I shall come if brother is *there now*.

(4) *Subordinate sentences of wish or request.*

A subordinate sentence which represents a wish or request is introduced in Russian by the conjunction **чтобы** followed by the verb in the past tense :

Я хочу́, **чтобы** вы **приехали́** **завтра́**.

I wish that you should come to-morrow.

Он **проси́л**, **чтобы** вы **сделали́** **это́**.

He asked that you should do this.

But when **чтобы** means *in order to* it is followed by the infinitive :

Я **прие́хал** [**для того́**] [**за тем**], **чтобы** **познако́миться**
с **ва́ми**.

I came in order to make your acquaintance.

Я **прие́хал** **сюда́**, **чтобы** **отдохну́ть**.

I came here to have a rest.

§ 133. *Word Order.*

There is a greater freedom of word order in Russian than in English. This is made possible by the manifold inflexions. About the word order in Russian the following can be said :

(1) Although the subject of a simple sentence usually stands before the predicate, these can change places in accordance with the *position-emphasis* which it is desired to put on the predicate or the subject :

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| весна́ пришла́ | Spring has arrived |
| пришла́ весна́ . . . | Came the spring . . . |

(2) Attributive adjectives stand before the noun which they qualify. So do pronouns and numerals if they have an attributive function :

| | |
|----------------|----------------|
| бе́лый дом, | white house |
| мо́й брат, | my brother |
| пять книг, | five books |
| в э́то вре́мя, | at this time |
| весь го́род, | the whole town |

(3) Adverbial expressions have a greater freedom of order :

| | | |
|----------------|---|------------------------|
| приду́ за́втра | } | I will come to-morrow |
| за́втра приду́ | | |
| скажу́ пото́м | } | I will tell afterwards |
| пото́м скажу́ | | |

§ 134. *Function of the Auxiliary verbs, **БЫТЬ** (to be), **ИМѢТЬ** (to have) in the Russian sentence.*

1. БЫТЬ.

(1) The present tense of the verb **БЫТЬ** is not used in colloquial speech ; it is usually omitted. In the written language the third person singular and, less often, plural, **есть**, **суть** are occasionally used when special emphasis is needed. **Есть** is also used when it means: there is, there are:

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Он мой брат. | He is my brother. |
| Он дома́. | He is at home. |
| Он здесь. | He is here. |
| Я бо́лен. | I am ill [not well]. |
| Она весела́. | She is gay. |
| Они бе́дны [ы]. | They are poor. |
| Мы за́няты. | We are engaged [occupied]. |

In these examples **есть** and **суть** are omitted. (See § 103, group (d).)

But : **Есть у меня́ та́кже . . .** I also have . . .
Есть та́кие лю́ди . . . There are such people . . .
Есть там так мно́го но́вого.
 There is so much novel [new] there.
Там нет [не есть] ниче́го но́вого.
 There is nothing novel [new] there.

(2) But in the past and future tenses the verb **БЫТЬ** is not omitted in similar constructions :

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Он бы́л здесь. | He was here. |
| Она́ бу́дет дома́. | She will be at home. |
| Ты бу́дешь рад. | You will [thou wilt] be glad. |
| Вы бу́дете у нас. | You will be at our house. |

Его́ не́ было́ дома́. He was not at home [in].

Меня́ не бу́дет дома́. I shall not be at home.

This form is used more frequently than я не бу́ду дома́. The latter form would seem to sound too precise, as if to say: I will make a point of not being at home; it would denote too much definite purpose, whereas меня́ не бу́дет дома́ is just a casual statement that I shall not be in. The same applies also to the preceding example: его́ не́ было́ дома́.

(3) The present tense of быть 'есть' is also omitted in impersonal sentences formed from short adjectives:

мо́жно, it is possible

до́лжно, it is necessary

прия́тно, it is pleasant

поле́зно, it is useful. (See §§ 45, 90 (2) (a).)

NOTE. должно́ быть means: probably.

But in the past and future it is:

мо́жно бы́ло, мо́жно бу́дет

бы́ло прия́тно, бу́дет прия́тно

бы́ло бы поле́зно, it would [might] be useful

бу́дет поле́зно, it will be useful

(4) Есть is omitted in the expressions жаль, it is a pity; and лень, too lazy!, laziness, indolence:

мне лень, I am lazy, I feel lazy [indolent]

мне жаль, I feel sorry

мне бы́ло жаль, I felt sorry

ему́ бы́ло лень, he felt lazy [indolent]

also in the expression нельзя́, it is not possible (from the obsolete form лъзя). This expression is only used by itself in the present tense. In the past and future it is used with бы́ло or бу́дет: нельзя́ бы́ло, нельзя́ бу́дет.

§ 134a. 2. Име́ть.

Име́ть is not used as an auxiliary verb for the formation of verbal tenses as in English. Its ordinary meaning is: to possess.

я имéю means : I am in the possession of :

Он имéет дом на Тۇльской ўлице.

He has [possesses] a house in Tula street.

It is also used in such expressions as :

Дом имéет пять кóмнат.

The house has five rooms.

Квартíра имéет вáнную кóмнату [вáнну].

The flat has a bathroom [bath].

Гостíница имéет хорóший ресторáн.

The hotel has a good restaurant. (But also :

При гостíнице имéется хорóший ресторáн.

A good restaurant is attached to the hotel.)

У негó имéются [вóдятся, есть] дéньги.

He has [possesses] money.

In colloquial speech the place of—

я имéю, etc., is taken by у меня́ есть.

он имéет — у негó есть.

ты имéл — у тебя́ был, -á, -о, -и.

мы бۇдем имéть — у нас бۇдет [бۇдут].

я имéю мнóго книг — у меня́ есть мнóго книг, I have many books.

NOTE. Есть is used for both singular and plural in such constructions. (See § 119.)

я имéл мнóго книг — у меня́ было (*neuter*) мнóго книг, I had many books.

он имéл хорóший сад — у негó был хорóший сад, he had a good garden.

кто имéет мой нож ? — у когó мой нож ?, who has my knife ?

кто имéет лóшадь ? — у когó есть лóшадь ?, who has a horse ?

мы не имéем лóшади — у нас нет лóшади, we have no horse.

In all the sentences where the verb *имѣть* is replaced by a corresponding tense of *быть*, the logical subject is turned into a grammatical object. In the negative the sentence is turned into an impersonal one, also with the inverted subject as object. The inverted form is frequently used, as this is more in consonance with the spirit of the Russian language. (See §§ 122-123.)

§ 135. *Tautological and other expressions and particles used in Russian sentences.*

1.

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| чуть-чуть, | just a little |
| мáло-помáлу, | little by little, by degrees |
| давнѣйш-давнѣе, | a very long time ago |
| точь-в-точь, | exactly as |
| друг друга | { each other |
| | { one another |
| друг от друга | { one from the other |
| | { from each other |
| друг к другу | { one to the other |
| | { to each other |
| друг с другом | { one with the other |
| | { with each other |
| друг о друге | { one about the other |
| | { about each other |

2. Pronouns (and adverbs) with the particle *то* (see § 53) :

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| кто-то, someone | } | implying some uncertainty as to who, or what, or how |
| что-то, something | | |
| как-то, somehow | | |
| то-то, indeed ; yes, indeed | | |

NOTE. The particle *то* attached to a noun means, particularly in popular speech : but as regards . . . or, as for . . .

отец-то ничегó . . . , as for father, he is all right . . .
 да мáчеха-то, не дай Бог . . . , but as for step-mother,
 God help us [God forbid] . . .

3. Pronouns and adverbs with the particles : **кѡе** [кѡй], **нибѹдь**, **лѣбо** (see § 53) :

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| кѡе-кто, someone | } with a certain degree of definite- ness |
| кѡе-что, something | |
| кѡе-как, somehow | |

кто-нибѹдь, someone or other, anyone

что-нибѹдь, something or other, anything

как-нибѹдь, somehow or other, anyhow

| | |
|-------------|-------------|
| где-нибѹдь | } somewhere |
| куда-нибѹдь | |

когда-нибѹдь, sometime or other

| | |
|----------|---|
| кто-либо | } certainty is immaterial or problematical |
| что-либо | |
| что-либо | |

(See §§ 47, 6 ; 91, group *B* (c).)

NOTE. The adverbial particles *то*, *нибѹдь*, *лѣбо*, placed *after* the interrogative-relative pronouns *кто*, *что*, *чей*, *како́й*, *ско́лько*, and the adverbs *как*, *где*, *куда́*, *отку́да*, *когда́* ; also the particle *кѡе* [кѡй] placed *before* the same pronouns and adverbs, while they all indicate indefiniteness, yet each one conveys a particular degree of indefiniteness :

то expresses less indefiniteness than *нибѹдь*.

кѡе conveys the idea that the person who says : *кѡе-что*, *кѡе-кто*, *кѡе-где*, *кѡе-как*, knows exactly what the something, somebody, somewhere, somehow is, but that he prefers not to specify it.

лѣбо expresses even less certainty than *нибѹдь* : *кто-либо*, *что-либо* means anyone, anything—immaterial who or what. The who or what is given a problematical character by the particle *лѣбо*.

In adverbial expressions of time, *когда́-то* means : some time ago, once upon a time ; *когда́-нибѹдь* means : at some time or other in future.

In an interrogative sentence, **когда-нибудь** may mean :
at any time in the past :

Вы когда-нибудь там были ?

Were you there at any time [ever] ?

In adverbial expressions of place, **где-то** means :
somewhere, at some definite place ; **где-нибудь** means :
somewhere or other :

Мы переночевали где-то, недалекó от реки.

We stayed for the night somewhere, not far from
the river.

Мы переночуем где-нибудь.

We shall stay for the night somewhere or other.

кóе-где means: somewhere; where exactly is known to
the speaker, but he does not bother to specify. **кóе-где**
is also used in the sense of : in places, here and there.

4. Adverbs with **по** (see § 90 (2) (f)) :

по-ру́ски, in Russian

по-а́нглийски, in English

по-дру́жески, in a friendly manner

по-де́тски, in the manner of a child

по-ребя́чески, in a childish manner

5. Numerals with **во** (used as adverbs) (see § 91 (b)) :

во-пе́рвых, firstly

во-вторы́х, secondly

в тре́тьих, thirdly

6. Pronouns and adverbs with the negative particle **ни**
(see § 123) :

никто́, no one

ниотку́да, from nowhere

ни́что, nothing

никогда́, never

никако́й, not any

ника́к, not in any way

ниче́й, not anybody's

ниско́лько, not in the

ниче́го, nothing

least

нигде́ }

никуда́ } nowhere

NOTE 1. Pronouns with the particle **ни** are declined as the original pronouns from which they are formed (see § 51) :

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> | никто́ | [ничто́] ¹ | |
| <i>Gen.</i> | { нико́го ни от ко́го | { ниче́го ни от че́го | When used with a preposition the construction is split up in declension |
| <i>Dat.</i> | { никому́ ни к кому́ | { ничему́ ни к чему́ | |
| <i>Acc.</i> | нико́го | ниче́го | |
| <i>Instr.</i> | { никём ни с кем | { ничём ни с чем | |
| <i>Loc.</i> | ни о ком | ни о чём | |

ни . . . ни used as a conjunction means : neither . . . nor :
ни я, ни он, neither I nor he

ни used by itself can mean : not a . . .

У него́ ни копе́йки не оста́лось.

He has been left with not a copeck.

У меня́ нет ни гро́ша[а́]. I have not a farthing left.

NOTE 2. Pronouns and adverbs with the particle **ни** are always followed by the particle **не**, which stands immediately before the verb which it negates. These negative expressions, together with the particle **не**, constitute a double negation, which is usual in Russian.

NOTE 3. **ни** after a relative pronoun or adverb can form indefinite expressions with the meaning of 'no matter . . .' :

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| кто ни прика́зывай, | no matter who gives the order |
| что ни говорите́, | no matter what you say |
| ско́лько ни дава́й, | no matter how much you give |
| како́й он ни есть, | no matter what kind of man he is |
| дава́й, что ни попа́ло, | give anything that comes [falls] into your hands (no matter what) |

¹ Ниче́го is more frequently used.

кто-бы он ни был, no matter who he might be
 с кем бы то ни было, with anybody, no matter who
 как волка ни корми, no matter how [however much]
 you may feed a wolf . . .

It will be noted that the negative meaning of *ни* in these sentences is absorbed in the meaning of 'no matter who,' 'no matter how,' 'no matter when,' etc. Not only is the negative meaning gone, but such sentences even express a degree of emphasis and they are, consequently, not followed by the particle *не*.

7. *Pronouns and adverbs with the negative particle не* (contraction of *нет=не есть*). (See § 91, B (c).)

This particle, which has the meaning of *нет* (there is not), when joined with a pronoun or adverb *and used with a verbal infinitive*, is capable of forming an impersonal sentence. The logical subject usually stands in the dative as an inverted object :

Мне *некого* [*нет когó*] послать. I have no one to send.

Мне *некогда* [*нет когдá*] писать.

I have no time to write.

Мне *нигде* [*нет гдe*] сидеть. I have nowhere to sit.

Мне *некуда* [*нет кудá*] ехать. I have nowhere to go.

Мне *не от когó* ожидать помощи.

I have no one from whom to expect help.

NOTE 1. The pronouns most used for such negative predicative expressions are the oblique cases of *кто*, *что*, and the adverbs *где*, *куда*, *откуда*, *когда*. The pronoun can be used either with or without a preposition. If a preposition is used it usually stands between the particle *не* and the required oblique case of the pronoun :

не с кем . . . there is no one with whom . . .

не о чём . . . there is nothing about . . .

не о ком . . . there is no one about whom . . .

не от кого . . . there is no one from whom . . .

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| нѣ к кому . . . | there is no one to whom . . . |
| нѣ к чему . . . | there is nothing to which . . . |
| нѣ на что . . . | there is nothing on which . . . |
| нѣ за что . . . | there is nothing for which . . . |
| нѣзачем . . . | there is no need [occasion] . . . |
| нѣоткуда . . . | there is nowhere from . . . |

It will be noted that as negative definitions these impersonal expressions have no nominative case, but they have all the oblique cases (accusative is merged in the genitive) :

| | | |
|------------------|------------|----------|
| <i>Gen.-Acc.</i> | нѣкого | нѣчего |
| <i>Dat.</i> | нѣкому | нѣчему |
| <i>Instr.</i> | { нѣкем | нѣчем |
| | { нѣ с кем | нѣ с чем |
| <i>Loc.</i> | нѣ о ком | нѣ о чѣм |

нѣчего can mean :

1. there is nothing to . . .
2. there is no need to . . .
3. there is no use . . .

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| нѣчего писáть, | there is nothing to write |
| нѣчего дѣлáть, | nothing to be done |
| нѣчего беспоко́иться, | no need to worry |
| нѣчего бо́яться, | no use, no need to fear |

NOTE 2. All these expressions with the particle нѣ have the value of a negative predicate. In the present tense нет is implied ; in the past and future tenses было (*neuter*) and б́удет are used respectively :

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| мне нѣкогда, | I have no time |
| мне нѣкогда б́ыло, | I had no time |
| мне нѣкогда б́удет, | I shall have no time |
| нѣчего дѣлáть, | there is nothing to be done |
| нѣчего б́ыло дѣлáть, | there was nothing to be done |
| нѣчего б́удет дѣлáть, | there will be nothing to be done |
| нѣкого послáть, | there is no one to send |

нѣкого было послать, there was no one to send
 нѣкого будет послать, there will be no one to send
 нѣ с кем будет говорить, there will be no one to talk to
 [with]

NOTE 3. The negative expressions treated in subdivision 7 are not followed by the particle не.

NOTE 4. The negative predicative particle не should not be confused with the particle не in—

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------|---|
| нѣкто, | someone | } The particle не in these words has no implied predicative meaning |
| нѣчто, | something | |
| нѣкоторый, | a certain person or thing | |

(See § 47, 6.)

§ 136. *Use of the Reflexive Possessive Pronouns* свой, -я, -ѣ, -й instead of мой, твой, наш, ваш, егó, еѣ, их ; my (mine), thy (thine), our(s), your(s), his, her(s), their(s).

If these possessive pronouns refer to anything belonging to the person named as the subject of the sentence, then they are replaced by свой, -я, -ѣ, -й :

Я взял свою книгу (instead of мою книгу).

I took my book.

Ты забыл свой зонтик (instead of твой зонтик).

You forgot your umbrella.

Она потеряла свою шляпу (instead of еѣ шляпу).

She has lost her hat.

Онѣ оставили свой дом (instead of их дом).

They (have) left their house.

Он прислал свою лошадь (instead of егó лошадь).

He (has) sent his horse.

Вы знаете свой характер (instead of ваш характер).

You know your nature.

NOTE. There are, however, deviations from this rule in colloquial speech, when the ordinary possessive is used. (See § 49, note 2.)

§ 136a. *Peculiarities in the use of Personal Pronouns.*

In colloquial speech the personal pronoun expressions :

| | | |
|----------|--------------------|-------------|
| я и ты | } are changed into | мы с тобо́й |
| я и вы | | мы с ва́ми |
| я и он | | мы с ни́м |
| я и она́ | | мы с не́ю |
| я и онѝ | | мы с ни́ми |

if the action performed, or to be performed, is expressed by the same verb. The verb stands in the first person plural.

Thus, instead of я и ты пойдѐм — мы с тобо́й пойдѐм.

Similarly the pronouns :

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------|------------|
| ты и он | } are changed into | вы с ни́м |
| ты и она́ | | вы с не́й |
| ты и онѝ | | вы с ни́ми |

The verb stands in the second person plural. Thus, instead of ты и он (она́, онѝ) пойдѐте — вы с ни́м (с не́й, с ни́ми) пойдѐте.

In the oblique cases of pronouns similar changes occur.

Thus,

| | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| меня́ и тебѝ | } are changed into | нас с тобо́ю |
| тебе́ и е́му | | вам с ни́м etc. |

§ 136b. *The Function of the Personal Reflexive Pronoun : себя́.*

себя́ (oneself) can be used with all persons, genders, and numbers :

Я ви́жу себя́. I see myself.

Ты не зна́ешь себя́. You do not know yourself [thyself].

Он счита́ет себя́ у́мным. He considers himself clever.

Она́ имѐет де́ньги при себе́.

She has the money on her [with her].

Она́ привела́ с собо́ю сестру́.

She brought (her) sister with her.

Мы не знаем, что дѣлать с собою.

We do not know what to do with ourselves.

Он о себѣ высоко́го мнѣнія.

He has a high opinion of himself.

Он звал меня́ к себѣ домо́й.

He asked me to (come to) his house.

Он у себя́ в ко́мнатѣ. He is in his room.

The unstressed себе (*dat.*) is often used to indicate an independent and carefree attitude of the person to whom it refers :

Живѣт себе́ как ба́рин и ни с кем не счита́ется.

He lives like a squire and takes no account of anybody.

In a somewhat similar meaning себе́ is used in the expressions :

ничего́ [себе́], not so bad

та́к себе́, so-so

WORD SUBORDINATION

The Meaning and Uses of Oblique Cases of Nouns, Pronouns, etc.

§ 137. Genitive is used :

1. To express **possession**, and also certain properties and characteristics :

| | | |
|----|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | дом дяди, | uncle's house |
| | челове́к до́брого нра́ва, | a man of kind disposition |
| or | высо́кого ро́ста, | of high stature (a tall person) |

2. To express **state**, **quality**, or **number** of object or objects ; also when a part of a quantity is referred to :

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| у меня́ мно́го рабо́ты, | I have much work (to do) |
| набра́лось воды́, | some water got collected |
| | (impersonal sentence) |

хлѣба хвѣтит для всех, there will be enough bread
for all

я принѣс воды, I have brought some water
but : я принѣс воду, I brought water (in a general
sense)

он купил ржи, he bought some rye
but : он купил рожь, he bought the rye (the
whole quantity)

3. To express **comparison** :

свѣтлѣе солнца, brighter than the sun
темнѣе ночи, darker than night

4. To express **negation**. When a noun stands after verbs with the particle не :

(a) in impersonal sentences :

нѣ было дождя, there was no rain
нѣ будет обеда, there will be no dinner
у меня нѣтъ денег, I have no money
у них нѣтъ хлѣба, they have no bread

(b) in negative constructions, after a transitive verb, as a direct object :

нѣ читал письма, did not read the letter
ничего нѣ делает, does nothing
я нѣ видел сада, I did not see [have not seen]
the garden

NOTE. A double negation is usual. (See § 123.)

(c) in negative constructions, after an intransitive verb, in conjunction with adverbial expressions of time or place :

нѣ спит ночей, does not sleep (whole) nights
нѣ прошѣл версты, did not cover a verst (by
walking)

5. In constructions expressing time and dates :

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| трѣтьего дня, | the day before yesterday |
| двадцатаго мая, | on the 20th of May |
| сего́дня [сего́ дня], | to-day |
| се́дьюго я́нваря ты́сяча | on the 7th of January |
| де́вяты́со́тъ пята́дцато́го | 1915 |
| го́да [1915-го], | |
| пе́рво́го ма́я, | on the 1st May |
| то́й-же но́чи, | on that night |
| вче́рашне́го дня, | yesterday |

6. Generally the genitive is used in constructions after verbs which denote striving for, aiming at, or wishing for something ; also in the sense of being deprived of something. The following verbs belong to this class :

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| желáть, to wish for | ждать, to await |
| проси́ть, to ask for | иска́ть, to seek |
| хотéть, to want, to wish | требовать, to demand |
| лиши́ться, to be deprived of, | бо́яться, to fear |
| to lose | о́пасаться, to be ap- |
| стыди́ться, to be ashamed | prehensive |
| of | избегáть, to avoid |

7. Genitive is also used after cardinal and collective numbers :

- (a) Genitive singular : after два [две], три, четы́ре, о́ба, мно́го (in the meaning of 'much'), ма́ло (in the meaning of 'little').
- (b) Genitive plural : after пять, шесть, семь, во́семь, де́вять, де́сять, два́дцать, etc. мно́го (in the meaning of 'many'), ма́ло (in the meaning of 'few'), не́сколько, a few.

Also after collective numerals : дво́е, трое́, че́тверо, etc. (See § 55*b*.)

NOTE. The numerals of this sub-section require the genitive plural of the qualified noun if they

stand in the nominative or accusative. If they stand in any of the other cases the qualified noun stands in the same case as the numeral :

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| два сту́ла, | two chairs |
| две ча́шки, | two cups |
| три кни́ги, | three books |
| четы́ре столá, | four tables |
| оба бра́та, | both brothers |
| мáло ча́я, ¹ | little tea |
| мáло воды, ¹ | little water |
| пять столóв, | five tables |
| шесть сту́льев, | six chairs |
| мнóго книг, ¹ | many books |
| не́сколько столóв, ¹ | a few tables |
| доста́точно, ¹ | sufficient |
| недоста́точно, ¹ | insufficient |
| пять челове́к, | five people |
| мнóго люде́й, ¹ | many people |
| but : двух столóв | четырёх столóв |
| трёх книг | обо́их братьев etc. |
| (See §§ 20 (9), 54b, 120.) | |

8. After prepositions governing the genitive. (See § 96.)

§ 138. Dative is used :

1. In impersonal constructions the logical subject (inverted as grammatical object) is usually in the dative case :

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| что нам де́лать, | what are we to do |
| мне ка́жется, | it seems to me [I think] |
| ему́ хо́чется, | he would like to |
| мне мо́жно, | it is permissible to me |
| ему́ нельз́я, | he must not [to him it is not permissible] |
| мне на́до [ну́жно], | I have to |
| нам порá е́хать, | it is time for us to go [to start] |
| мне не́когда, | I have no time |

¹ Adverbs and adverbial pronouns, denoting indefinite quantity.

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| мне нѣкуда ѣхать, | I have nowhere to go |
| ему́ полезно, | it is useful to him |
| нам вредно, | it is harmful to us |

2. Generally in the dative stands the person or object in whose direction the action is meant to take place :

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| я ему́ подарил, | I gave him as a present |
| он мне говорилъ) | he spoke to me |
| [сказалъ]) | he told me |
| мы им служимъ, | we serve them |
| они́ нам помогаютъ, | they help [assist] us |
| я хотѣлъ ему́ помочь, | I wished to help him |
| я далъ ему́, | I gave him |
| он писалъ мне, | he wrote me [to me] |
| я им сдѣлалъ предложѣние, | I made them an offer |
| он мне другъ, | he is a friend to me. |

3. Dative is also used with the short (predicative) adjectives : милъ, доро́гъ, приятенъ, радъ, ну́женъ, полѣзенъ, etc. :

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| я вамъ всегда́ радъ, | I am always glad to see you |
| мы вамъ рады́, | we are glad to see you |
| она́ намъ доро́га [ми́ла], | she is dear to us |
| мне́ приятно́ слы́шать, | I am glad to hear |
| они́ намъ доро́ги, | they are dear to us |
| вы́ мне́ нужны́, | I need you |
| онъ́ мне́ былъ полѣзенъ, | he was useful to me |
| э́то́ намъ бу́детъ полѣзно́, | this will be useful to us |
| вамъ извѣ́стно, | it is known to you |

4. After prepositions governing the dative case. (See § 96a.)

§ 139. Accusative is used :

(1) When the declinable word serves as a direct object to a transitive verb :

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Я купилъ корову́. | I bought a cow. |
| Я про́далъ домъ. | I sold the house. |

(2) When a declinable word stands as an adverbial expression of time or place, etc., and answers to the questions : как долго ? how long ? ; как далеко ? how far ? ; сколько ? how much ? ; etc.

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Мы спали весь день. | We slept all day. |
| Мы прошли пять вёрст. | We covered [went] five versts. |
| Он сидел целый час. | He sat a whole hour. |

NOTE. If the verb in the sentences of the above subdivisions (1 and 2) expresses negation, the accusative is supplanted by the genitive. (See § 137.)

(3) After prepositions governing the accusative case. (See § 96b.)

§ 140. The instrumental case is an 'adverb case,' and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of manner. (See § 16.)

1. It denotes the instrument, or means, by which, or through which (or the person by whom), an action is performed :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Я работаю рука́ми. | I work with (my) hands. |
| Я пишу́ перо́м. | I write with a pen. |
| Я режу́ ножо́м. | I cut with a knife. |
| Я плачу́ деньга́ми. | I pay with money [in cash]. |
| Я пользуюсь слúчаем. | I make use of the occasion. |
| Я воспользо́вался его́ совете́м. | I made use of his advice. |

2. It denotes the person (or thing) who (or which) is the logical subject of the sentence (inverted indirect object) in a passive construction :

Письмо́ было напи́сано бра́том, The letter was written by (my) brother (instead of брат написа́л письмо́).

Э́то было сде́лано мно́ю, This was done by me (instead of я э́то сде́лал).

3. Nouns stand in the instrumental after the verbs :
 владѣть, управлять, пользоваться [*вос-], заниматься
 [*заняться], гордиться [*воз-], to be proud of; командовать, to command, etc. (as an indirect object):

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Я управляю дѣлом. | I manage the business. |
| Он владѣет фабрикой. | He owns the factory. |
| Я пользуюсь случаем. | I make use of the opportunity. |
| Я занимаюсь музыкой | I am engaged with music in the |
| по вечерам. | evenings. |

4. In the instrumental case stand nouns used in the sense of an attribute or state, in a qualified predicate in conjunction with the verbs быть, стать, сделаться, казаться (particularly if the qualifying state is not permanent):

| | |
|--|--|
| Он был нашим учителем. | |
| He was our teacher (during a particular period). | |
| Он стал [его сделали] членом управления. | |
| He became [was made] a member of the administration. | |
| Он казался умным человеком. | |
| He seemed [appeared] to be a clever [sensible] man. | |

5. The instrumental case is used in adverbial expressions of quality, relation, manner; also of time and place:

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| слаб здоровьем, | weak in health |
| слаб глазами, | weak in his eyes |
| хорош | } собою, |
| хороша | |
| высок, -а (ростом), | tall |
| ехать шагом, | to travel at a slow pace (go, drive) |
| летать (лететь) стрелой, | to fly as quick as an arrow |
| ехать лесом, | to drive by way of [through] the forest |

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| ИТТІ бѢрегомъ, | to go along [by way of] the bank of the river |
| ВЫТЬ ВОЛКОМъ, | to howl as a wolf |
| ПЕТЬ СОЛОВЬѢМъ, | to sing as [in the manner of] a nightingale |
| УТРОМъ, | in the morning |
| ВѢЧЕРОМъ, | in the evening |
| ДНѢМъ, | in the day-time |
| НОЧЬЮ, | in the night |

6. It is used after prepositions governing the instrumental case. (See § 96c.)

§ 141. 1. The **locative** (prepositional) case expresses place, and can be regarded as an 'adverb case' (see § 16). It answers to the question *где?* (where?), and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of place:

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| МЫ живѢмъ въ гóродѣ. | We live in town. |
| МЫ жили въ дѣрѣвнѣ. | We lived in the country [in a village]. |
| Звѣри живѹтъ въ лесѹ. | Beasts live in the forest. |
| Я БЫЛъ въ театрѣ. | I was at [in] the theatre. |

2. It is used after prepositions governing the locative case. (See § 96d.)

§ 142. *Punctuation.*

The rules of punctuation in Russian are generally the same as in English, with the exception of those governing the comma. The place of the comma in the Russian sentence is determined by concrete rules, and is not subject to considerations of 'logic,' or used for the sake of a more convenient flow of words.

The beginner's task will be to acquire an elementary knowledge of the position of (1) the comma, (2) the semi-colon, and (3) the full-stop.

(1) A comma is used :

- (a) before and after an apposition (see § 110) ;
- (b) before and after parenthetical words and phrases (see § 124) ;
- (c) to separate similar words following one another in the same sentence ;
- (d) to separate the adverbs *да, нет*, from the sentence that follows them, when they imply special emphasis ;
- (e) to separate words of address and words of interjection from the rest of the sentence ;
- (f) to separate the words : *кроме* (besides), *вместо* (instead), *сверху* (besides, above), when, together with other words attached to them, they form a contrast to the part of the sentence which they serve ;
- (g) to separate adverbial expressions which elucidate other adverbial expressions in the sentence ;
- (h) to separate parts of a sentence which are themselves qualified by other words ;
- (i) to separate independent clauses in a complex sentence (see §§ 124-129e) ;
- (j) to separate a subordinate clause, or clauses, from the principal clause.

(2) A semicolon is used :

- (a) to separate independent sentences in a complex sentence, when these have been considerably expanded ;
- (b) to separate words and phrases within the same sentence when these have been considerably expanded by qualifying words.

(3) A full-stop is used : to separate sentences which have a completed, independent meaning.

§ 143. *Patronymics.*

Russians address each other by their Christian name alone, if they are related to each other, or if they are intimately acquainted. Acquaintances are usually addressed by their Christian name followed by the Christian name of their father, which has an adjectival termination. (See § 37.)

The father's name is called *отчество*, patronymic :

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Ива́н Петро́вич ¹ | — Ivan, son of Peter |
| Пётр Ива́нович | — Peter, son of Ivan |
| Па́вел Андре́евич | — Paul, son of Andrew |
| А́нна Петро́вна | — Anne, daughter of Peter |
| А́нна Андре́евна | — Anne, daughter of Andrew |
| А́нна Ива́новна | — Anne, daughter of Ivan |

When introducing a person, the introducer usually says :

Семе́нов, Ива́н Петро́вич
Семе́нова, А́нна Петро́вна

NOTE. The feminine surname will end in **ова, ева, ына, ина, ая, ская** if the same masculine surname ends in **ов, ев, ын, ин, ой, ский**.

If a person introduces himself by his surname alone, he is often politely asked :

Как ва́ше и́мя и о́тчество ?
or : Как вас зову́т по и́мени и о́тчеству ?
What is your name and patronymic ?
How are you called by name and patronymic ?

NOTE. Russians have only one Christian name.

The suffixes for patronymics are :

ович, евич for masculine (often shortened into **ыч ич**) ;
овна, евна for feminine.

¹ Both name and patronymic are declined as nouns.

Christian names ending in **а, я** form their patronymic with the suffixes **ич** for masculine :

| | |
|---------|----------|
| Кузьма́ | Кузьми́ч |
| Фома́ | Фоми́ч |
| Илья́ | Ильи́ч |
| Са́вва | Са́ввич |
| Ники́та | Никити́ч |

йнична for feminine :

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------|-------------|
| | Кузьма́ | Кузьми́нича |
| | Фома́ | Фоми́нича |
| | Илья́ | Ильи́нича |
| or ична [ишна] | Са́вва | Са́ввична |
| | Ники́та | Никити́чна |

LESSON I

Vocabulary

кто, who
 что, what
 этот (*masc.*)
 эта (*fem.*)
 это (*neut.*) } this
 эти, these (all genders)

я, I
 ты, thou
 он, he
 она, she
 оно, it
 мы, we
 вы, you
 они, they

мой (*masc.*)
 моя (*fem.*)
 моё (*neut.*)
 мой (*pl.*) } my, mine

твой (*masc.*)
 твоя (*fem.*)
 твоё (*neut.*)
 твой (*pl.*) } thy, thine

наш (*masc.*)
 наша (*fem.*)
 наше (*neut.*)
 наши (*pl.*) } our, ours

ваш (*masc.*)
 ваша (*fem.*)
 ваше (*neut.*)
 ваши (*pl.*) } your, yours

тот (*masc.*)
 та (*fem.*)
 то (*neut.*) } that
 те, those (all genders)
 где? where?

тут } here
 здесь }

там, there
 его, his (for all genders and numbers)
 её, her, hers (for all genders and numbers)
 их, their, theirs (for all genders and numbers)

чей? (*masc.*)
 чья? (*fem.*)
 чьё? (*neut.*)
 чьи? (*pl.*) } whose?

(For pronouns, their functions and declensions, see §§ 47-53.)

дом, house
 сад, garden, orchard
 дома, at home (*adv.*)
 в саду, in the garden (*loc. case*)
 улица, street
 на улице, in the street
 двор, yard
 на дворе, in the yard, outside
 отец, father
 мать, mother
 брат, brother
 двоюродный брат, cousin

сестра, sister
 двоюродная сестра, cousin (*fem.*)
 друг, friend
 дочь, daughter
 сын, son
 дед } grandfather
 дедушка }
 бабушка, grandmother
 внук, grandson
 внуки, grandchildren
 внучка, granddaughter
 дядя, uncle

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| тѣтя, aunt | мáсло, butter, oil |
| мáльчик, boy | сыр, cheese |
| дѣвочка, girl | мýсо, meat |
| дитя́, child | соль, salt |
| дѣти, children | стол, table |
| ко́мната, room | на столé, on the table |
| в ко́мнатé, in the room | человéк, man, human being |
| бума́га, paper | люди, people |
| кни́га, book | сосéд (<i>mas.</i>) |
| перó, pen, nib | сосéдка (<i>fem.</i>) |
| каранда́ш, pencil | } neighbour |
| ли, whether, if | |
| вст, here, there | сосéди, neighbours |
| вон, there | быть, to be |
| хлеб, bread | не, not |
| | нет, no |
| | или, or |

(See Section I, on nouns, their genders and declensions, §§ 15-33.)

Notes

1. There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian.
2. The present tense of the verb **быть**,¹ 'to be,' is usually omitted when it has the function of a copula in the meaning of: I am, he is, it is, they are, etc. (See § 134.)
3. **Нет**, in the meaning of 'no' (no, it is not), is followed by a comma.
4. **Это** is ordinarily the demonstrative pronoun for neuter nouns: **это перó**, 'this pen,' etc., but when it is used in the meaning of 'this is,' etc., it can be used for nouns of all genders in both singular and plural :

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| это мой брат, | this is [it is] my brother |
| это моя сестра́, | this is [it is] my sister |
| это мои кни́ги, | these are [it is] my books |

5. Russian possessive pronouns make no distinction between **conjoint** and **absolute** forms :

| | |
|-----|------------------------|
| мой | means both my and mine |
| её | „ „ her „ hers |
| наш | „ „ our „ ours |
| ваш | „ „ your „ yours |

¹ The only persons of **быть** used in the present tense are: **есть**, is; **суть**, are. (See Appendix IV, p. 313.)

6. The particle **ли**, 'whether,' 'if,' is not often used in direct interrogative sentences in colloquial speech: **дóма-ли он?** 'is he at home?' is better expressed by **дóма он?** or **он дóма?** with the sentence-stress on **дóма**. In indirect interrogative sentences **ли** appears more often. (See § 132.)

Exercises

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Что это? | What is this? |
| Это моя книга. | It is my book. |
| Кто там? | Who is there? |
| Мой брат там. | My brother is there. |
| Чей это дом? | Whose house is this? |
| Это мой дом. | It is my house. |
| But: Чей этот дом? | Whose is this house? |
| Этот дом наш. | This house is ours. |
| Чья эта книга? | Whose is this book? |
| Чьи эти книги? | Whose books are these? |
| Это мои книги. | These are my books. |
| Я тут. | I am here. |
| Он там. | He is there. |
| Она здесь. | She is here. |
| Они не здесь. | They are not here. |
| Они там. | They are there. |
| Это его сад? | Is this his garden? |
| Нет, это мой сад. | No, it is my garden. |
| Это ваш дом? | Is this your house? |
| Нет, это его дом. | No, it is his house. |
| Где ваша сестра? | Where is your sister? |
| Моя сестра в саду. | My sister is in the garden. |
| Где его брат? | Where is his brother? |
| Он на дворе. | He is in the yard (outside). |
| Дóма он? | Is he at home? |
| Нет, он на дворе. | No, he is in the yard (outside). |
| Нет, он не дóма) | No, he is not at home. (See |
| Нет, его нет дóма) | Lesson II.) |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Её мать дома. | Her mother is at home. |
| Его отец здесь. | His father is here. |
| Мой дядя и моя тётя в саду. | My uncle and my aunt are in the garden. |
| Где ваша книга ? | Where is your book ? |
| Она тут на столе. | It is here on the table. |
| Вот наш дом. | Here is our house. |
| Вон [там] наш сад. | There is our garden. |
| Тот сад наш. | That garden is ours. |
| Те книги наши. | Those books are ours. |
| Это молоко наше. | This milk is ours. |
| Это наше молоко. | This is our milk. |
| Это его сыр. | This is his cheese. |
| Этот сыр его. | This cheese is his. |
| Это наш хлеб. | This is our bread. |
| То масло наше. | That butter is ours. |
| Где его карандаш ? | Where is his pencil ? |
| Его карандаш на столе. | His pencil is on the table. |
| Моя книга и моё перо на столе. | My book and my pen are on the table. |
| Дедушка и бабушка в саду. | Grandfather and grandmother are in the garden. |
| Она их внучка. | She is their granddaughter. |
| Я и моя сестра их внуки. | I and my sister are their grandchildren. |
| Наша мать их дочь. | Our mother is their daughter. |
| На столе хлеб, мясо, сыр и масло. | On the table there are bread, meat, cheese, and butter. |
| Где бумага и перо ? | Where is the paper and the pen ? |
| Бумага и перо на столе. | The paper and the pen are on the table. |
| Кто тот человек ? | Who is that man ? |
| Кто те люди ? | Who are those people ? |
| Это наш сосед [наша соседка]. | This is our neighbour. |
| Это наши соседи. | These are our neighbours. |

LESSON II

Note on the function of the auxiliary verb БЫТЬ (to be) in the sentence.

As already stated in note 2 to Lesson I, the present tense of БЫТЬ is not often used in colloquial speech: it is usually omitted. In the written language the third person singular and, less often, plural: *есть, суť*, are used occasionally when special emphasis is needed. (See §§ 119, 134.)

| <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|---|---|---|
| он <i>дома</i> he is at home | он <i>был</i> <i>дома</i> he was at home | он <i>будет</i> <i>дома</i> he will be at home |
| она́ <i>здесь</i> [<i>там</i>] she is here [there] | она́ <i>была́</i> <i>здесь</i> [<i>там</i>] she was here [there] | она́ <i>будет</i> <i>здесь</i> [<i>там</i>] she will be here [there] |

The colloquial negative form of the present tense of БЫТЬ is *нет* (*не есть, не суť*). This negative form *нет* causes the grammatical subject to change from the nominative case to the genitive case, in conformity with the tendency of a negative predicate to require its object to stand in the genitive case (see § 108*a*). Thus the grammatical subject becomes a grammatical object (although it still remains the *logical* subject). The particle *не* in the past and future tenses has the same effect. Furthermore, all the tenses of the verb БЫТЬ with *нет* and *не* can assume a neuter and impersonal character:

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| его́ <i>нет</i> <i>дома</i> he is not at home | его́ <i>не было</i> <i>дома</i> he was not at home | его́ <i>не будет</i> <i>дома</i> he will not be at home |
| их <i>нет</i> <i>здесь</i> they are not here | их <i>не было</i> <i>здесь</i> they were not here | их <i>не будет</i> <i>здесь</i> they will not be here |
| её́ <i>нет</i> <i>там</i> she is not there | её́ <i>не было</i> <i>там</i> she was not there | её́ <i>не будет</i> <i>там</i> she will not be there |

(See § 122 on the meaning and purpose of an impersonal sentence.)

For purposes of simple negation, if the sentence is not turned into an impersonal one, the negative particle *не*

precedes all the persons of present (where the verb itself is dropped), past, and future tenses :

он не дома

он не был дома

он не будет дома

The past of **БЫТЬ** has the function of the verb-part of a compound predicate (see § 104) :

Он был мой друг. He was my friend.

The future of **БЫТЬ** can also have the same function. Its main function, however, is as that of an auxiliary verb for the formation of the future tense of the principal (imperfective) verb. (See § 57.)

Conjugation of the Past and Future Tenses of БЫТЬ

| <i>Past</i> | <i>Future</i> |
|-------------|---------------|
| я был, -á | я буду |
| ты был, -á | ты будешь |
| он был | он |
| она была | она |
| оно было | оно |
| мы | мы будем |
| вы | вы будете |
| они | они будут |

NOTE. я буду means : (1) I shall ; or (2) I shall be :

(1) Я буду читать. I shall read [be reading].

(2) Я буду дома. I shall be at home.

Vocabulary

слушать [*по-], to listen
 слушать музыку, to listen to music
 читать [*по-], to read
 гулять [*по-], to stroll, to go for a walk
 кушать [*по-], to eat
 знать [*у-], to know

завтракать [*по-], to have breakfast
 [пóлдничать] ¹ [*по-], to have lunch
 обедать [*по-], to have dinner
 ужинать [*по-], to have supper
 пить чай [*вы-], to have [drink] tea

¹ Not often used.

игрѣть [*по-], to play
 игрѣть в карты, to play cards
 игрѣть на скрипкѣ, to play the violin
 работѣть [*по-], to work

спѣть [*по-], to sleep { сплю
 спишь
 спят

писѣть [*на-], to write { пишѹ
 пишешь
 пишут

итти спѣть
 [*пойти спѣть] { to go to bed,
 ложиться [*лечь] { to go to sleep
 спѣть { (see § 73)

ѹтро, morning
 ѹтром, in the morning (*adv.*)
 день, day
 днѣм, in the day-time (*adv.*)
 вѣчер, evening
 вѣчером, in the evening (*adv.*)
 ночь, night
 ночью, in the night, at night
 (*adv.*)

рано, early } (*adv.*)
 поздно, late }
 раньше, earlier }
 позже, позднее, later (*adv.*)
 зѣвтрак, breakfast
 до зѣвтрака, till [until] breakfast
 перед зѣвтраком, before breakfast
 послѣ зѣвтрака, after breakfast
 обѣд, dinner
 до обѣда, till [until] dinner
 перед обѣдом, before dinner
 послѣ обѣда, after dinner
 чай, tea [tea-time]
 до чая, till [until] tea-time
 перед чаем, before tea
 послѣ чая, after tea
 ѹжин, supper
 до ѹжина, till [until] supper
 перед ѹжином, before supper
 послѣ ѹжина, after supper
 к зѣвтраку { for breakfast
 { to breakfast

за зѣвтраком (*adv.*), at breakfast

к обѣду { for dinner
 { to dinner

за обѣдом (*adv.*), at dinner

к чаю { for tea
 { to tea
 за чаем (*adv.*), at tea

к ѹжину { for supper
 { to supper

за ѹжином (*adv.*), at supper
 в холѣдный день, on a cold
 day

в туманный ѹтро, on a misty morn-
 ing

в ненастный вѣчер, on a rainy
 evening

в тѣмную ночь, on a dark night
 в тот-же день, on the very day
 в ту ночь, on that night

в этот вѣчер, on this evening

в то ѹтро, on that morning

сегодня, to-day

сегодня вѣчером, this evening

зѣвтра, to-morrow

раз, once

ещѣ раз, once again

когда?, when?

тогда, then

теперь, now

всегда, always (*adv.*)

иногда, sometimes

ужѣ, already

ещѣ, yet

ещѣ не, not yet

скоро, soon

довѣльно поздно, pretty late

долго, long, a long time

очень рано, very early

очень поздно, very late

никогда [не], never } (*adv.*)

нигдѣ [не], nowhere

никтѣ [не], no one

ничего [не], nothing

никуда [не], not anywhere

что, that (*conj.*)

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| щи, cabbage soup | цѣлый, the whole |
| селянка, stew | яйцо, egg |
| жаркое, roasted meat | яйца, eggs |
| с маслом, with butter | ветчинá, ham |
| с вареньем, with preserves, jam | рыба, fish |
| потом, afterwards | жареная рыба, fried fish |
| затѣм, and then | копченáя грудинка {smoked |
| опять, again | копченые ребрышки {cured] |
| весь, вся, всё, все, the whole, all | bacon ¹ |

Notes

1. For the conjugation of the verbs of this lesson (except спать, писать, итти) see § 75, sub-division (d). Present tense of итти: я идѹ, ты идѣшь, он, она, оно идѣт, мы идѣм, вы идѣте, они идѹт. For the formation of the past tense of all these verbs see § 83.

2. All the verbs of this lesson can have both the **imperfective** and the **perfective** aspects. For the respective meaning and functions of the two aspects see §§ 58-60. The preposition which can be prefixed to each imperfective verb in order to turn it into a perfective one is given in brackets, thus: [*по-] (see § 65):

слѹшать, to listen, to be listening

*послѹшать, to listen for a short time, or once

The asterisk denotes verbs of the perfective aspect throughout this book.

3. An extensive list of adverbs of time, place, manner, etc., will be found in §§ 90-92.

4. A full statement on prepositions, their meaning and functions, and the cases which they govern, will be found in §§ 93-96.

5. Negative pronouns and adverbs: никто, ничегó, никогда, нигдѣ, etc., are followed by the particle не,

¹ There is no specific word for bacon in Russian. Ветчинá, ham, is mostly used. Where bacon, as cured in England, is used, it is referred to as above.

which completes the negation. It stands before the verb under negation :

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Он ничего не делает. | He does nothing. |
| Я никогда не ужинаю. | I never have supper. |
| Я нигде не видел. | I saw nowhere. etc. |

(See § 135, sub-division 6.)

6. The particle *не* takes the accent before *был, было, были*, but not before *была*. It also takes the accent in negative constructions where *не* implies the predicate :

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| Мне некогда. | I have no time. |
| Нигде спать. | There is nowhere to sleep. |

(See § 135, sub-division 7.)

7. The personal pronouns *он, она*, when they refer to an inanimate noun, have the meaning of 'it,' both in the nominative and in the oblique cases :

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Где стекло ? | Where is the glass ? |
| Я его не видел. | I have not seen 'it' (not 'him'). |
| Где бумага ? | Where is the paper ? |
| Я не могу найти её. | I cannot find 'it' (not 'her'). |

8. In Russian there is no construction corresponding to the English 'do,' 'does,' 'did,' etc., for negative and interrogative sentences : 'I do not write,' is rendered *я не пишу* (I not write); 'do you write?' is rendered *вы пишете?* (you write?), etc.

Exercises

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Когда вы будете дома ? | When will you be at home ? |
| Я буду дома вечером. | I shall be at home (in) the evening. |
| Утром мы завтракаем ; | In the morning we have break- |
| днём мы обедаем [пóл- | fast ; in the day-time we |
| дничаем] и пьём чай ; | dine [have lunch] and have |
| вечером мы ужинаем ; | [drink] tea ; in the evening |
| пóздно нóчью мы идём | we have supper ; late at |
| спать [мы ложímся | night we go to bed [to |
| спать]. | sleep]. |

За завтраком [к завтраку] мы кушаем [едим] хлеб с маслом, яйца [яйцо], копчёную грудинку [копчёные рёбрышки], ветчину, жареную рыбу, и пьём чай или кофе с молоком. Мы иногда кушаем [едим] хлеб с вареньем.

За обедом и за ужином [к обеду и к ужину] мы прежде всего кушаем суп, затем едим рыбу, щи, борщ или селянку, жаркое, котлеты, кашу. Потом мы кушаем пирожки [пирожное] и фрукты: яблоки, груши, сливы, вишни.

После обеда и после ужина мы всегда пьём кофе.

За чаем [к чаю] мы всегда кушаем хлеб с маслом и вареньем [и с вареньем] и разное печенье.

После чая мы идём гулять. Перед обедом мы работаем. Мы читаем и пишем.

Я никогда не работаю после обеда.

Перед ужином я иногда слушаю музыку, или играю в карты.

Я знаю, что он теперь делает.

Я буду читать после, теперь я иду пить чай.

At breakfast [for breakfast] we eat bread and [with] butter, eggs [an egg], bacon, ham, fried fish, and we drink tea or coffee with milk. We sometimes eat bread and [with] jam.

At dinner [for dinner] we first of all eat soup, then we eat fish, cabbage soup, borsch or stew, roast, cutlets, gruel [black gruel]. Afterwards we eat pies [pastry] and fruit: apples, pears, plums, cherries.

After dinner and after supper we always drink coffee.

At tea [for tea] we always eat bread and butter and preserves, and various pastries.

After tea we go for a walk.

Before dinner we work.

We read and write.

I never work after dinner.

Before supper I sometimes listen to music, or play cards.

I know what he is doing now.

I shall read afterwards, now I am going to have [drink] tea.

- Мы скоро пойдём обедать. We shall soon go to have dinner.
- Сегодня вечером я буду дома. This evening I shall be in.
- Сегодня я буду дома весь [целый] день [всё утро, весь вечер, всю ночь]. To-day I shall be at home [in] all day [the whole morning, the whole evening, the whole night].
- Завтра вечером я буду играть в карты [в шахматы], [в шашки]. To-morrow evening I shall play cards [chess], [draughts].
- После ужина я пойду домой. After supper I shall go home.
- Когда вы будете обедать? When will you have dinner?
- Когда вы ужинаете? When do you have supper?
- Я никогда не ужинаю. I never have supper.
- Он никогда не обедает дома: он обедает у брата. He never dines at home: he dines at his brother's.
- Мы завтракаем очень рано, но ужинаем очень поздно. We have breakfast very early, but have supper very late.
- Мы читаем до завтрака, работаем до обеда, и играем в теннис до чая. We read till breakfast, work until dinner, and play tennis till tea.
- Иногда он играет на скрипке или на рояле; мы всегда слушаем его игру [как он играет]. Sometimes he plays the violin or the piano; we always listen to his playing.
- Он довольно хорошо понимает музыку. He understands music pretty well.
- Когда вы идёте спать? When do you go to bed?
- Мы всегда идём спать очень поздно, но встаём (see § 64, group 4) очень рано. We always go to bed very late, but (we) get up very early.
- Теперь ещё довольно рано. It is still pretty early now.
- Нет, уже поздно. No, it is already late.

Ещё не очень поздно.

Он вчера был здесь.

Его вчера не было здесь }

Он не был здесь вчера }

Он будет здесь поздно вечером.

Мы будем там рано утром.

Я буду здесь до обеда.

Они завтра не будут здесь }

Их завтра не будет здесь }

Я приду после чая.

Он придёт перед ужином.

До ужина ещё долго.

Он уже был здесь.

Он ещё не был здесь }

Его ещё не было здесь }

Она была дома.

Её не было дома.

Её не будет дома до вечера.

Я читал и писал всю ночь.

Мы уже были здесь раньше.

Он всегда спит до чая.

Он придёт потом [после чая].

Я её видел только раз.

Они не спали до утра.

Мы работаем весь [целый] день.

It is not very late yet.

He was here yesterday.

He was not here yesterday.

He will be here late in the evening.

We shall be there early in the morning.

I shall be here till dinner.

They will not be here tomorrow.

I will come after tea.

He will come before supper.

It is a long time yet till supper.

He was here already.

He was not yet here.

She was at home [in].

She was not in.

She will not be in till the evening.

I was reading and writing the whole night.

We were here before.

He always sleeps [has a nap] till tea-time.

He will come afterwards [after tea].

I saw her only once.

They did not sleep till morning.

We work all day.

LESSON III

Vocabulary

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| чёрный | } -ая, -ое, -ые { | black | сильный, -ая, -ое, -ые | } strong |
| белый | | white | крепкий, -ая, -ое, -ие | |
| красный | | red | | |
| синий, -ая, -ее, -ие | | blue | глупый | } -ая, -ое, -ые { foolish, silly |
| большой, -ая, -ое, -ие | | large, big | умный | |
| малый, -ая, -ое, -ые | } small | | что за ? what kind ? what a . . | |
| маленький, -ая, -ое, -ие | | | | какой ? |
| новый | } -ая, -ое, -ые { | new | такой | } such a one |
| старый | | | old | каков ¹ |
| слабый, -ая, -ое, -ые | | weak | таков ¹ | } of such a kind |

For the short (predicative) form of these adjectives and for their comparative form, see § 45.

слабое здоровье, delicate health
слаб, -а, -о, -и, здоровьем, delicate
(in health) (*adv.*)

покупать } to buy (see § 66)
*купить }

давать } to give
*дать }

продавать } to sell (see § 64, group 2)
*продать }

болеть, to be ailing, to

аче
*заболеть, to be taken } (see p. 258)
ill

жить [*по-], живу, живёшь, живут,
to live

варить [*с-], варю, варишь, варят,
to cook, to boil

иметь, to have

бывать, to happen ; to be (*iter.*) ;
to frequent

видеть [*у-], вижу, видишь, видят,
to see

ехать [*по-] } to travel (see § 63)
ездить [*с-] }

когда-то, once (before)

часто, often

редко, seldom

чаще, more often

реже, less often

ещё раз, once more

ни разу, not once

два }
три } раза { twice
четыре } thrice
four times

много раз, many times

несколько раз, a few times

совсём, entirely

не совсём, not quite, not entirely

довольно, fairly, moderately,

pretty

гораздо, much (used with a com-
parative adjective)

кажется, it seems, I think, I believe

сейчас, this minute

через час, in an hour

сию минуту, this moment

через минуту, in a minute

скоро, soon, quickly

¹ These correspond to the short adjectives and imply a predicate.

чем, than (*conj.*)
 недавно, not long ago
 давно, long ago ; a long time
 сюда, here (motion) [hither]
 туда, there (motion) [thither]
 завтра утром, to-morrow morning
 завтра вечером, to-morrow evening
 вчера вечером, last night
 сегодня вечером, to-night
 день, day
 каждый день, every day
 раз в день, once a day
 год, a year. *Pl.* : летá ; го́ды (see
 note 7 to this lesson)
 каждый год, every year
 раз в год, once a year
 через год, in a year's time
 через два дня, in two days' time
 через час, in an hour's time
 месяц, a month
 через месяц, in a month's time
 каждый месяц, each month, every
 month
 раз в месяц, once a month
 неделя, a week
 через неделю, in a week's time
 каждую неделю, each week, every
 week
 раз в неделю, once a week
 в этом году, this year
 в прошлом году, last year
 в будущем году, next year
 осень, autumn
 осенью, in the autumn (*adv.*)
 зима, winter
 зимою, in the winter (*adv.*)
 прошлой зимой, last winter (*adv.*)
 весна, spring
 весной, in the spring (*adv.*)
 будущей весной, next spring (*adv.*)
 лето, summer
 летом, in the summer (*adv.*)
 этим летом, this summer
 к осени, towards autumn
 к зиме, towards winter

к весне, towards spring
 к лету, towards summer
 в конце года, at the end of the
 year
 к концу года, towards the end of
 the year
 в начале года, at the beginning of
 the year
 к началу года, towards the begin-
 ning of the year
 в начале месяца, at the beginning
 of the month
 к началу месяца, towards the be-
 ginning of the month
 в конце месяца, at the end of the
 month
 в конце недели, at the end of the
 week
 к концу месяца, towards the end of
 the month
 к концу недели, towards the end
 of the week
 тому назад, ago
 месяц тому назад, a month ago
 год тому назад, a year ago
 неделю тому назад, a week ago
 две недели тому назад, two weeks
 ago
 третьего дня, the day before yester-
 day.
 два } дня тому { two days ago
 три } назад { three days ago
 четыре } { four days ago
 час тому назад, an hour ago
 в этом месяце, this month
 в будущем месяце, next month
 в прошлом месяце, last month
 на будущей неделе, next week
 на прошлой неделе, last week
 на этой неделе, this week
 на другой день, next day
 русский, a Russian
 русская, a Russian woman
 англичанин, an Englishman
 англичанка, an Englishwoman

француз, a Frenchman
 французенка, a Frenchwoman
 американец, an American
 американка, an American woman
 китаец, a Chinaman
 китайка, a Chinese woman
 немец, a German
 немка, a German woman
 японец, a Japanese
 японка, a Japanese woman
 Советский Союз, Soviet Union
 Россия, Russia
 Англия, England
 Франция, France
 Китай, China
 Германия, Germany
 Япония, Japan
 в Советском Союзе, in U.S.S.R.
 в России, in Russia
 в Англии, in England
 в Китае, in China
 в Америке, in America
 в Германии, in Germany
 в Японии, in Japan (*loc.*)
 в Советский Союз, to U.S.S.R.
 в Англию, to England
 в Китай, to China
 во Францию, to France
 в Германию, to Germany
 в Японию, to Japan (*acc.*)
 комната, a room

квартира, a flat
 на квартире, at the flat
 у меня на квартире, at my flat
 у нас на квартире, at our flat
 у них на квартире, at their flat
 у вас на квартире, at your flat
 у него на квартире, at his flat
 у неё на квартире, at her flat
 столовая (*n.*), dining-room
 спальня, bedroom
 прихожая, entrance-hall
 детская, nursery
 ванная [комната], bathroom
 гостиная, sitting-room
 кухня, kitchen
 гостиница, hotel
 номер, room (at hotel)
 у меня в номере, in my room (at the hotel)
 у меня в спальне, in my bedroom
 у нас в [на] кухне, in our kitchen
 у них в столовой, in their dining-room
 город, town
 деревня, village
 у нас в городе in our town
 в нашем городе
 у нас в деревне in our village
 в нашей деревне
 состояние, estate, fortune ; condition ; state (of health, of weather)

Notes

1. The verb **быва́ть** is the iterative form of **быть**. In its iterative form it is only used in the past tense (see § 62). It can be used as an imperfective verb in the meaning :

(1) to frequent ; (2) to visit occasionally ; (3) to happen.

Я там бываю иногда.

I go there sometimes.

Он бывает здесь [приходит сюда] очень часто.

He comes here very often.

Это бывает.

This happens [can happen].

Бывали такие случаи.

Such cases did happen.

(On the meaning and function of the neuter singular past, *бывало*, see § 122 (f).)

2. The short (predicative) comparative degree of an adjective requires the indirect object (the object of comparison) to stand in the genitive :

(a) Мой брат богаче меня. My brother is richer than I.

But the sentence can be paraphrased so as to conform to the English pattern :

(b) Мой брат богаче, чем я.

The first pattern is the most frequently used in colloquial speech.

(c) A popular variation of the first pattern is the use of the genitive of the possessive pronoun instead of the personal pronoun :

богаче моего instead of богаче меня ;
лучше твоего „ лучше тебя ;
etc.

3. The verb *иметь* (to have) is for colloquial purposes replaced by the verb *быть*. The grammatical subject is then changed into an object (although it still remains the *logical* subject (see § 134a)).

Instead of *я имёл лошадь* (I had a horse), the colloquial form used is, *у меня была лошадь* :

Он имёл сад. — У него был сад.

Он не имёл сада. — У него не было сада.

He had no garden.

Кто имеет нож ? — У кого есть нож ?

Who has a knife ?

But : *У кого нож ?* would mean : Who has *the* knife ?

By analogy the following indirect expressions are used :

Instead of : на моём столе — у меня на столе

в моей комнате — у меня в комнате

в нашем саду — у нас в саду

4. Peculiarities in the Conjugation of a few verbs in frequent use.

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| жить [*по-], to live | хотѣть [*за-], to wish, to want |
| ѣхать [*по-], to travel | *лечь, to lie down |
| *дать, to give | *сесть, to sit down |
| есть [*по-], to eat | болѣть [*за-], to ache ; to be ailing |

The asterisk (*) denotes a verb of the perfective aspect, the present form of which has a future meaning. (See §§ 58, 59.)

Present (or future in Perfective verbs).

Singular

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-----|--------|---------|---------|
| я живу́ | ѣду | *дам | ем | хочу́ | *лягу | *сяду |
| ты живѣшь | ѣдешь | *дашь | ешь | хочѣшь | *ляжѣшь | *сядѣшь |

| | | | | | | |
|--------------|------|-------|--|-------|--------|--------|
| она́ } живѣт | ѣдет | *даст | | хочет | *ляжет | *сядет |
| онó } | | | | | | |

Plural

| | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------|---------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| мы живѣм | ѣдем | *дадимъ | едимъ | хотимъ | *ляжемъ | *сядемъ |
| вы живѣте | ѣдете | *дадите | едите | хотите | *ляжете | *сядете |
| они́ живутъ | ѣдутъ | *дадутъ | едятъ | хотятъ | *лягутъ | *сядутъ |

Past.

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-------|-------|-----|--------|--------|------|
| я } жил | ѣхал | дал | ел | хотѣл | лѣг | сел |
| ты } | | | | | | |
| он } | | | | | | |
| она́ жила́ | ѣхала | дала́ | ѣла | хотѣла | легла́ | сѣла |
| онó жи́ло | ѣхало | да́ло | ѣло | хотѣло | легло́ | сѣло |
| мы } жи́ли | ѣхали | да́ли | ѣли | хотѣли | легли́ | сѣли |
| вы } | | | | | | |
| они́ } | | | | | | |

Imperative.

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------|-------|----------------------|-------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> живи́ | поезжай́ ¹ | дай | ешь | захотѣ́ ¹ | ляг | сядь |
| <i>Plur.</i> живи́те | поезжайте́ | да́йте | ѣшьте | захотѣ́те | лягте | сядьте |

¹ No imperative in use for the imperfective aspect of these verbs.

Present.

болѣть [быть больным], to be ailing (*instr.* or *absolute*) :

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------|----------|
| я болѣю, | ты болѣешь, | он | } болѣет |
| | | она́ | |
| | | онó | |
| мы болѣем, | вы болѣете, | они́ болѣют | |
| болѣть, to ache | он | } болѣ́т, они́ болѣ́т | |
| | она́ | | |
| | онó | | |

NOTE. болѣть (to ache) is only used in the third person singular and plural.

Past. болѣл, болѣла, болѣло, болѣли.

Imperative. болѣй, болѣйте.

| | |
|---|--|
| У меня́ боля́т зу́бы. | My teeth are aching; I have toothache. |
| У меня́ голова́ бо́лит. | My head is aching. |
| У меня́ всегда́ но́ги боля́т [боля́т но́ги]. | My legs are always aching. |
| Но́чью у меня́ голова́ болѣла [болѣла голова́]. | In the night my head was aching. |
| Он всегда́ болѣет. | He is always ailing. |
| Он болѣл [был бо́лен] тифом. | He was ill with typhus. |
| Не болѣйте. | Don't be ailing. |

5. Есть and ку́шать (see Lesson II) both mean 'to eat.' Ку́шать is supposed to be a politer form when referring to another person :

Вы ку́шали ; пожа́луйста, ку́шайте.

You were eating [ate] ; please, eat.

мы е́дим, бу́дем есть ; we eat, we shall eat.

There are, however, no clear lines of distinction between the two forms. Practice and reading Russian texts will help the student to decide which form is more suitable on a given occasion.

6. Nationality of a person is written with a small letter ; his country, with a capital letter :

| | |
|-------------|---------------|
| ру́сский | — Росси́я |
| не́мец | — Герма́ния |
| англича́нин | — Англия etc. |

7. Год (year) has a double plural: летá, го́ды. The colloquial form is летá :

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| пять лет тому́ наза́д, | five years ago |
| ему́ де́сять лет, | he is ten years old |
| в егó летáх, | at his age |
| сре́дних лет, | of middle age |

but : Он ста́рше меня́ тремя́ года́ми (or на́ три го́да).
He is older than I by three years.

When years in general, or a particular period, are referred to, the plural го́ды is used :

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| в те го́ды, | in those years |
| в сороко́вых года́х, | in the forties |
| в ста́рые го́ды, | in old times |
| молодые́ го́ды, | youth |

Exercises

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| У него́ но́вая шля́па. | He has a new hat. |
| Его́ шля́па но́ва. | His hat is new. |
| Моя́ шля́па но́вее, чем его́ шля́па. | My hat is newer than his. |
| У неё [есть] большо́й дом. | She has a large house. |
| Её́ дом вели́к. | Her house is large. |
| Мой дом бо́льше, чем её́ дом. | My house is larger than her house. |
| У него́ ста́рое пальто́. | He has an old overcoat. |
| Его́ пальто́ ста́ро. | His overcoat is old. |
| Моё́ пальто́ го́раздо ста́рее. | My overcoat is much older. |
| Его́ ру́ки бы́ли кра́сны. | His hands were red. |
| Мой ру́ки бы́ли кра́снее. | My hands were redder. |

У него [есть] маленький }
брат

Он имѣет маленького }
брата

У нас есть глупые люди.

Он глупѣе своего брата }

Он глупѣе, чем его брат }

Его дом совсѣм бѣлый.

Их дом бѣлѣе.

[Мне] Кажется, его дом не
совсѣм бѣлый.

Наш сад очень велик.

Их сад гораздо больше.

Их дом очень [довольно]
велик.

Какое [состояние] его здо-
ровье [-я] ?

Какое его состояніе ?

Оно не очень велико.

Зимой иногда бывает очень
холодно.

Мы бываем у них часто.

Они бывают у нас редко.

[Это] Всегда так бывает.

Когда-то, я бывал у них
каждый день.

Раньше они бывали у нас
часто.

Он очень умный человек.

Они весьма умные люди.

Эти люди умны.

Эта дама умна.

Я у них был два раза.

He has a little brother.

We have stupid people.

He is more stupid than his
brother.

His house is entirely white.

Their house is whiter.

I believe [I think] his house
is not entirely white.

Our garden is very large.

Their garden is much larger.

Their house is very [pretty]
large.

How is the state of his
health ?

How is his state [estate] ?

It is not very great.

In the winter it sometimes
happens to be very cold.

We visit them [we go to
them] frequently.

They visit us seldom.

It always happens so.

Some time ago [at one time]
I used to visit them every
day.

Before they used to come to
us [visit us] often.

He is a very clever [wise] man.

They are very clever [wise]
people.

These people are clever.

This lady is clever.

I visited them [was at their
house] twice.

| | |
|---|--|
| Я ни разу не был у них. | I have never [not once] visited them. |
| Я ещё ни разу не был у них. | I have not yet been to see them once. |
| Я пойду к ним опять { Я ещё раз пойду к ним } | I shall visit them [go to them] again [once more]. |
| Я давно не был у него. | I have not been at his house for a long time [it is a long time since I have been at his house]. |
| Я недавно был у них. | I was at their house not long ago. |
| Я приду сюда мину́ту [че́рез мину́ту], [сейча́с]. | I will come this minute [in a minute], [immediately]. |
| Он сейча́с бу́дет здесь. | He will be here presently. |
| Он ско́ро приде́т. | He will soon come. |
| Я никогда́ не знал. | I never knew. |
| Он нигде́ не был. | I was not anywhere. |
| Мы нико́го не ви́дели там. | We saw nobody there. |
| Он неда́вно прие́хал сю́да. | He arrived here not long ago. |
| Он бу́дет у нас зимо́ю. | He will be at our house in the winter. |
| Я бу́ду у них ле́том. | I shall visit them [be at their house] in the summer. |
| К весне́ я пое́ду в А́нглию. | Towards [by] spring I shall go to England. |
| К о́сени мы бу́дем до́ма [прие́дем домо́й]. | Towards [by] autumn we shall be at home [will return home]. |
| Зимо́ю мы живём в го́роде ; ле́том о́ни живу́т в де- ре́вне [на да́че]. | In the winter we live in town; in the summer they live in the country [at the country-house]. |
| Мы живём здесь в гости́- нице. | We live here at an hotel. |
| У нас [Мы имеем] о́чень хоро́ший но́мер. | We have a very good room (at the hotel). |

У них [есть] хорóшая, не-
 большáя кварти́ра
 [Онѝ имѣют хорóшую, не-
 большúю кварти́ру]

They have a good, small [not
 very large] flat.

Онѝ имѣют столóвую, две
 спáльни [спáльню], кúх-
 ню, небольшоúю гостѝную,
 вáнную кóмнату, дѣт-
 скую и прихо́жую.

They have a dining-room,
 two bedrooms [bedroom],
 kitchen, small sitting-
 room [drawing-room],
 bathroom, nursery, and
 entrance-hall.

Вчера́ вѣчером ваш брат
 был у нас.

Last night your brother was
 at our house.

Зáвтра úтром мы бúдем у
 него́.

To-morrow morning we shall
 be at his house.

Я бывáю у него́ иногда́
 [ка́ждый день].

I visit him sometimes [every
 day].

К концу́ го́да [в нача́ле
 ново́го го́да], [в бúдущем
 годú] мы поѣдем в Росси́ю
 [в Совѣтский Сою́з].

Towards the end of the year
 [at the beginning of the
 new year], [in the next
 year] we shall go to Russia
 [to U.S.S.R.].

Онѝ бы́ли у нас ме́сяц то́му
 наза́д [две неде́ли то́му
 наза́д], [час то́му наза́д],
 [неде́лю то́му наза́д].

They were at our house a
 month ago [a fortnight
 ago], [an hour ago], [a
 week ago].

Я его́ ви́дел тре́тьего дня́.

I saw him the day before
 yesterday.

У нас в гостѝнице живúт
 ру́сские [тре́е ру́сских],
 два англича́нина, два
 францу́за, и одѝн не́мец.

At our hotel reside [live]
 Russians [three Russians],
 two Englishmen, two
 Frenchmen, and one Ger-
 man.

Онѝ все бúдут у нас [по-
 се́тят нас] на бúдущей
 неде́ле.

They will all visit us in the
 coming week.

Мы бы́ли у них на про́-
 шлой неде́ле.

We were at their house
 [place] last week.

| | |
|--|--|
| Онѣ́ будутъ у насъ чѣ́резъ два дня [чѣ́резъ мѣ́сяцъ], [чѣ́резъ годъ], [чѣ́резъ две недѣ́ли]. | They will be at our house in two days' time [in a month's time], [in a year], [in a fortnight]. |
| Я его́ уви́жу на э́той не- дѣ́ле [в э́ту недѣ́лю], [на бу́дущей недѣ́ле]. | I will see him during this week [this week], [during next week]. |
| Онъ былъ здѣсь в про́шломъ мѣ́сяцѣ, на той недѣ́ле. | He was here last month, last week [in the past month, in the past week]. |
| Онъ пришѣ́лъ на друго́й день [на друго́й день онъ при- шѣ́лъ]. | He came the next day [the next day he came]. |

(For the conjugation and aspect of the verbs of this lesson not shown in the Vocabulary, see §§ 65-66.)

LESSON IV

Vocabulary

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| воскресе́нье, Sunday | до понеде́льника, till, until) |
| понеде́льник, Monday | Monday |
| вторник, Tuesday | до второ́ника, till, until Tues- |
| среда́, Wednesday | day |
| четве́рг, Thursday | до сре́ды, till, until Wednes- |
| пя́тница, Friday | day (gen.) |
| суббо́та, Saturday | до четве́ргá, till, until Thurs- |
| в воскресе́нье, on Sunday (acc.) | day |
| до воскресе́нья, till, until Sunday | до пя́тницы, till, until Friday |
| (gen.) | до суббо́ты, till, until Satur- |
| к воскресе́нью, by, for Sunday (dat.) | day |
| по воскресе́ньям, on Sundays (dat. | к понеде́льнику, for, by |
| pl.) | Monday |
| в понеде́льник, on Monday) | к [ко] второ́нику, for, by |
| во второ́ник, on Tuesday | Tuesday |
| в сре́ду, on Wednesday | к сре́де, for, by Wednesday (dat.) |
| в четве́рг, on Thursday | к четве́ргý, for, by Thursday |
| в пя́тницу, on Friday | к пя́тнице, for, by Friday |
| в суббо́ту, on Saturday | к суббо́те, for, by Saturday) |

по понедельникам, on Mondays

по вторникам, on Tuesdays (dat. pl.)

по средам, on Wednesdays

по четвергам, on Thursdays

по пятницам, on Fridays

по субботам, on Saturdays

январь,¹ January

февраль, February

март, March

апрель, April

май, May

июнь, June

июль, July

август, August

сентябрь, September

октябрь, October

ноябрь, November

декабрь, December

в январé [мэсяце], in January

в февралé [„], in February

в мартé [„], in March

в апрéлe [„], in April

в маé [„], in May

в июне [„], in June

в июле [„], in July

в августé [„], in August

в сентябрé [„], in September

в октябрé [„], in October

в ноябрé [„], in November

в декабрé [„], in December

в течéние января, during January etc.

с воскресéнья, from Sunday on

с понедéльника, from Monday on etc.

с марта, from March on

от марта до мая, from March till May

от суббóты до среды, from Saturday till Wednesday

в течéние зимы, during winter

в течéние лéта, during summer

в течéние весны, during spring

в течéние óсени, during autumn

в бóдущую зиму, [in the] next winter

в бóдущее лéто, [in the] next summer

в бóдущую весну, [in the] next spring

в бóдущую óсень, [in the] next autumn

в началé января, at the beginning of January

в концé января, at the end of January

к началу января, towards the beginning of January

к концó января, towards the end of January

в час, at one o'clock

в два часа, at two o'clock

к часу, by one o'clock

к двум часам, by two o'clock

в пять часóв, at five o'clock

в пятом часу, between four and five на днях, shortly; also; the other day, lately

на éтих днях, one of these days [soon]

на досóге, at leisure

в полдeнь, at midday

в полночь, at midnight

в какóе врéмя? at what time?

в скóром врéмени, soon

в половинé пёрвого, at half-past twelve

в половинé вторóго, at half-past one

в половинé трётёго, at half-past two etc.

в котóром часу? at what hour? [at what time?]

котóрый час? what is the time?

котóрый тепёр час? what time is it now?

сýтки (pl.), day and night

цёлые сýтки, a whole 24 hours

¹ Names of months ending in -ь are of masculine gender.

магазин, store
 лавка, shop
 банк, bank
 ресторан, restaurant
 граница, boundary, frontier
 за-границу,¹ abroad (motion)
 за-границей,¹ abroad (rest)
 из за-границы,¹ from abroad
 вход, entrance
 касса, cash-desk, booking-office (at theatre, etc.)
 праздник, holiday
 праздники, holidays
 на праздниках, during the holidays
 святки, Christmas holidays
 на святках, during the Christmas holidays
 Святая неделя, Easter week
 на Святой [неделе], during Easter week
 Пасха, Easter
 Рождество, Christmas
 театр, theatre
 в театре, at the theatre
 в театр, to the theatre
 опера, opera
 в опере, at the opera
 в оперу, to the opera
 концерт, concert
 на концерте, at the concert
 на концерт, to the concert
 из театра, from the theatre
 из оперы, from the opera
 с концерта, from the concert
 кинематограф, cinema
 в кинематографе, at the cinema
 в кинематограф, to the cinema
 из кинематографа, from the cinema
 станция, railway station
 на станцию, to the station
 на станции, at the station
 со станции, from the station
 почта, post office
 на почте, at the post office

на почту, to the post office
 с почты, from the post office
 вокзал, railway station
 на вокзал, to the railway station
 на вокзале, at the railway station
 с вокзала, from the railway station
 поезд, train
 вагон, carriage
 поезд отходит, train leaves
 поезд прибывает, train arrives
 прибытие поезда, arrival of train
 отход поезда, departure of train
 уставать, to grow tired, weary
 *устать, to get tired (see § 64, group 4)
 вид, appearance
 очки, eye-glasses
 угол, corner; в углу, in the corner
 на углу, at the corner (of street)
 на конце улицы, at the end of the street
 дверь (*fem.*), door
 окно, window
 лестница, staircase, steps
 спускаться } по лестнице, to go
 *спуститься } down the stairs
 подниматься } по лестнице, to go
 *подняться } up the stairs
 наверху, at the top
 внизу, at the bottom
 навёрх, up } (motion)
 вниз, down }
 открыва-ть, }
 -ю, -ешь, -ют } to open, to
 *откр-ить, } uncover
 -бую, -бешь, -бют }
 открытый, -ая, -ое, -ые, uncovered
 открыт, -а, -о, -ы, opened, open
 закрыва-ть, }
 -ю, -ешь, -ют } to close, to
 *закр-ить, } cover
 -бую, -бешь, -бют }
 закрытый, -ая, -ое, -ые, covered
 закрыт, -а, -о, -ы, closed

¹ Also: за границу, за границей, из-за границы.

| | |
|---|--|
| занятый, -ая, -ое, -ие, busy, en- gaged (<i>adj.</i>) | больной, -ая, -ое, -ие } ill, ailing болен, больна, -о, -ы } (patient) (<i>instr. or absolute</i>) |
| занятый, -ая, -ое, -ие } occupied занят, -а, -о, -ы (<i>instr.</i>) } (<i>part.</i>) or <i>absolute</i>) | здоровый, -ая, -ое, -ие } healthy, здоров, -а, -о, -ы } strong |

Notes

1. In Russian the days of the week and the names of the months are *not* written with a capital letter. Feasts are written with capital letters.

2. The relation between words in a Russian sentence is shown more by inflexions than by word order (see § 133). The case-endings and other terminations are, therefore, of great importance. The student should familiarize himself with the uses of the various cases, as every case has a distinct function in the making of a Russian sentence. In the section of this book which treats of the Russian Syntax, the use of the various cases is dealt with in greater detail (see §§ 117-120, 137-141). A few hints as we go along may be useful. We will begin with the

Genitive case of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles.

The genitive case shows that the word used in this case is an adjunct, or qualifying word, or part-object, to another word. It is used:

- (a) to express possession or certain other characteristics (see § 137, sub-section 1);
- (b) to denote a direct object used in a partitive sense (see § 137, sub-section 2);
- (c) to denote a direct object if the predicate is in the negative (see §§ 108*a*, 137, sub-section 4);
- (d) to express comparison (see § 137, sub-section 3);
- (e) in constructions which express days and dates (see § 137, sub-section 5);

- (f) after cardinal numerals (see § 137, sub-section 7) ;
 (g) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96 ;
 (h) after verbs which have the meaning of striving for, aiming at, or wishing for, something (see § 137, sub-section 6) ;
 (i) in a few expressions of greeting or leave-taking :

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| до свидáния, | good-bye |
| до скóрого свидáния, | to an early meeting |
| всего хоро́шего | } all the best |
| всего лу́чшего | |
| до́брого у́тра, | good morning [but also : до́брое у́тро, good morn- ing ; до́брый ве́чер, good evening] |
| споко́йной но́чи, | good night [restful night] |
| счастли́вого пу́ти, | happy journey |

NOTE. In the expressions of this group the word *жела́ю* [-ем] (I [we] wish) is implied.

- (j) in a few adverbial expressions of time :

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| от поры́ до вре́мени | } from time to time |
| от вре́мени до вре́мени | |
| с у́тра до ве́чера, | from morning till evening |
| с ка́ких пор ? | since when ? |
| до ка́ких пор ? | till when ? |
| с тех пор, | since then |
| с тех пор, как, | since |
| с моёй сторо́ны, | on my part, as for me |
| до тех пор, пока́ [не], | till, until |
| до того́, | to such an extent |
| кро́ме того́ } | besides, over and above |
| сверх того́ } | |
| из-за моря́, | from beyond the sea |
| из-за гра́ницы, | from abroad |
| снача́ла, | at first (<i>adv.</i>) |
| сра́зу, | at once (<i>adv.</i>) |

Exercises

| | |
|---|---|
| Это сад моего дяди. | This is my uncle's garden [orchard]. |
| Я дал ему́ чаю. | I gave him some tea (see § 20). |
| У меня́ нет чая. | I have no tea. |
| Я купил сукна́. | I bought some cloth. |
| Я купил сукно́ хоро́шего ка́чества. | I bought cloth of good quality. |
| Пожáлуйста, принесите́ вина́ [воды́], [пíва]. | Please fetch [bring] some wine [water], [beer]. |
| Я не знал уро́ка. | I did not know my lesson. |
| У нас нет столá. | We have no table. |
| Вчера́ не́ было дождя́. | Yesterday it did not rain [there was no rain]. |
| У меня́ нет рабо́ты. | I have no work. |
| У меня́ не́ было рабо́ты. | I had no work. |
| Ну́жно купить са́хару. | It is necessary to buy some sugar (see § 20). |
| Кака́я тепе́рь цена́ са́хара ? | What is the price of sugar now ? |
| Сего́дня не бу́дет обе́да. | To-day there will be no dinner. |
| Вчера́ не́ было у́жина. | Yesterday there was no supper. |
| Завтра не бу́дет за́втрака. | To-morrow there will be no breakfast. |
| Тако́й бе́ды мы не ожида́ли. | We did not expect such a misfortune. |
| Я жду письма́ от моего́ бра́та. | I expect a letter from my brother. |
| Мы жда́ли его́ прие́зда. | We were waiting for his arrival. |
| Я бою́сь тако́го исхо́да. | I am afraid of such a sequel. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Я желаю вам успеха. | I wish you success. |
| Я сегодня утром был у вашего отца. | This morning I was at your father's house. |
| Мы покупаем книги у кни- гопродавца. | We buy books at a book- seller's. |
| До обеда я работаю ; после обеда я отдыхаю. | I work till dinner ; after dinner I rest. |
| Уберите тарелки со стола. | Clear away the plates from the table. |
| Я приехал из деревни. | I came [arrived] from the country. |
| Без очков я не могу читать | Without glasses I cannot read. |
| Я ничего не получаю от брата. | I receive nothing from my brother. |
| Я не получаю никакой помощи от него. | I receive no help whatever from him. |
| Мы приехали со станции. [с вокзала], [с концерта], [с собрания]. | We arrived [came] from the railway station [from the concert], [from the meet- ing]. |
| Стул стоит у стола ; стол стоит у окна. | The chair stands near the table ; the table stands near the window. |
| Я сижу у стола. | I am sitting at the table. |
| [Время от времени] От времени до времени мы получаем письма из Рос- сии. | [Occasionally] From time to time we receive letters from Russia. |
| С каких пор вы знаете [знали] это ? | Since when have you known this ? |
| С тех пор, как я вернулся из Лондона. | Since I came back from London. |
| До каких пор вы будете здесь ? | Till when [how long] will you be here ? |

- До тех пор, пока я не
кончу свою работу.
Я только вчера приехал
из за-границы.
Я не увижу его до поне-
дельник, я буду занят.
- Комната была занята его
братом.
Мы скоро поедem на стан-
цию [на вокзал].
Поезд прибывает в пять
часов вечера.
Он придет со своим млад-
шим братом в среду ве-
чером.
Девятнадцатого июня мы
поедем в Англию. Се-
годня двадцатое мая.
Они ездят на станцию
каждый день.
Мы туда приедем за час
до отхода поезда [перед
отходом поезда].
Он весьма [очень] занятый
человек.
Эти люди всегда заняты.
- В начале марта мы поедem
за-границу (acc.).
Мы пробудем за-границей
около трех месяцев.
Отнесите письмо на почту ;
потом идите на станцию ;
там ждите прихода [до
прихода] поезда.
- Until I have finished [will
finish] my work.
I came from abroad only
yesterday.
I shall not see him till Mon-
day ; I shall be busy [occu-
pied].
The room was occupied by
his brother.
We shall soon go to the
railway station.
The train arrives at five
o'clock in the evening.
He will arrive with his
younger brother on Wed-
nesday evening.
On the 19th of June we shall
go to England. To-day is
the 20th of May.
They travel to the railway
station every day.
We shall arrive there an
hour before the departure
of the train.
He is a very busy man.
These people are always
busy [occupied].
At the beginning of March
we shall go abroad.
We shall remain abroad
about three months.
Take the letter to the post
office ; then go to the
station ; there wait until
the arrival of the train.

На дворе, кажется, холодно теперь: возьмите пальто [наденьте пальто].

Вечером мы все пойдём в театр [в оперу], [в кинематограф], [на концерт].

Мы пробудем в театре [в опере], [на концерте], [в кинематографе], около трёх часов.

Мы приедем [вернёмся] из театра [из оперы], [с концерта], [из кинематографа] около одиннадцати часов вечера [ночи].

Мы там будем до двух часов ночи, до половины третьего [часа], [ночи], до четверти четвертого [часа].

К нам пришли [пришло] трое из его друзей.

Мы заказали ужин для двоих [троих], [четверых].

Завтра [будет] праздник.

Все магазины, лавки и банки будут закрыты; театры и кинематографы будут открыты только вечером с [от] шести до одиннадцати часов.

I think it is cold outside now: take an overcoat [put on an overcoat].

In the evening we shall all go to the theatre [opera], [to the cinema], [to the concert].

We shall stay [remain] at the theatre [at the opera], [at the cinema], [at the concert], about three hours.

We shall arrive [return] from the theatre [from the opera], [from the concert], [from the cinema] about 11 o'clock in the evening [night].

We shall be there till 2 o'clock in the morning [till half-past two], [till 3.15].

Three of his friends came to our house [to us].

We have ordered supper for two, three, four [for a party of two, of three, of four].

To-morrow is [will be] a holiday.

All stores, shops and banks will be closed; theatres and cinemas will be open only in the evening, from six till eleven o'clock.

Рестораны будут открыты
весь [цѣлый] день.

Ваш брат, кажется, болен ;
у него больно́й [болѣз-
ненный] вид.

Нет, он вполне здоров ; он
только устал ; он е́хал
[был] в по́езде цѣлые
су́тки.

Теперь я у них буду по
суббо́там ; ра́ньше я у
них никогда́ не быва́л
по суббо́там.

Мы всегда́ бываем у них
по воскресе́ням.

Ра́ньше четверга́ не ждите
меня́.

Мо́жет быть я пробуду у
ва́шего брата́ до пя́тницы.

Я купи́л соба́ку у сосе́да
[от сосе́да].

Мы всегда́ берём де́ньги у
брата́ [от брата́] ; он
очень бога́т.

Вон [вот] он стои́т у входа́
[у ка́ссы].

Он был во́зле [о́коло]
театра́.

Я ви́дел его́ недале́ко от
ва́шего до́ма.

По́сле конце́рта мы бу́дем
у́жинать у моего́ дя́ди.

Мы пое́дем туда́ прямо́ с
конце́рта.

Restaurants will be open all
[the whole] day.

Your brother, I think, is ill ;
he has a sick [sickly] ap-
pearance.

No, he is quite well ; he is
only tired ; he was in the
train a whole day and
night.

Now I shall be at their
house [visit them] on
Saturdays ; before I was
never at their house on
Saturdays.

We are always at their house
[go to see them] on Sun-
days.

Do not expect me before
Thursday.

Maybe I shall stay at your
brother's till Friday.

I bought the dog from my
neighbour.

We always take money of
brother [from brother] ;
he is very rich.

There [here] he stands near
the entrance [near the
booking office].

He was near the theatre.

I saw him not far from your
house.

After the concert we shall
have supper at my uncle's.

We shall go there straight
from the concert.

| | |
|--|--|
| Он живёт недалёко от театра. | He lives not far from the theatre. |
| Кроме нас там также будут наши соседи. | Besides us, our neighbours will also be there. |
| Вы будете сидеть возле меня. | You will sit next to me. |
| Без вас я не поеду ; я еду ради вас. | Without you I shall not go ; I go for your sake. |
| Мы там пробудем около часа. | We shall stay there about an hour. |
| Моя мать [матушка] ждёт письма от нашей тети. | My mother expects a letter [waits for a letter] from our aunt. |

LESSON V

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------|--|------------|---------------------------------|
| становиться | } to become, to get (see § 64, group 4) | заказывать | to order (see § 64, group 1) |
| *стать | | *заказать | |

For adverbs formed from adjectives which can have a predicative meaning
see §§ 43, 90 (2) (a), 134, sub-section (3) :

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| темно, dark | безопасно, safe |
| темнее, darker | безопаснее, safer |
| светло, light | плохо, bad |
| светлее, lighter | хуже, worse |
| тепло, warm | дурно, bad |
| теплее, warmer | недурно, not bad |
| холодно, cold | не так плохо, not so bad |
| холоднее, colder | не так дурно, not so bad |
| прохладно, cool | хорошо, well |
| прохладнее, cooler | нехорошо, bad(ly) |
| свежо, fresh [cool] | лучше, better |
| свежее, fresher [cooler] | приятно, pleasant |
| жарко, hot | приятнее, pleasanter |
| жарче, hotter | неприятно, unpleasant |
| трудно, difficult, hard | неприятнее, more unpleasant |
| труднее, harder, more difficult | весело, jolly |
| опасно, dangerous | веселее, jollier |
| опаснее, more dangerous | скучно, dull, boring |

Ужé [стáло] темнó.
 Тепérь ещѣ совсѣм светлó.
 Ещѣ не совсѣм темнó.
 Станóвится темнѣе.
 Потóм бúдет горáздо тем-
 нѣе.

В половíне шестóго утра́.

В вóсемь часóв вѣчера.

Я встаю́ в семь часóв [без
 чѣтверти семь], [в чѣт-
 верть восьмóго].

Тепérь без десяти́ минúт
 вóсемь.

По утра́м тепérь [бывáет]
 óчень хóлодно.

В полднень [к полúдню]
 станóвится теплѣе.

По вечерáм мы обыкно-
 вѣнно сидím дóма, так
 как [потомú что] на дворѣ
 темнó и опáсно выходítь.

Ничегó нельзя́ вíдеть }
 [Ничегó не видáть] }
 Никуда́ нельзя́ пойтí в
 темнотѣ.

Нóчью в темнотѣ опáсно
 ходítь по úлицам.

Днѣм горáздо прíятнее и
 удóбнее.

Вчерá вѣчером бýло слíш-
 ком темнó : ничегó нѣ
 было́ вíдно [видáть].

It is already dark.
 It is still quite light now.
 It is not quite dark yet.
 It is getting darker.
 It will be much darker after-
 wards.

At half-past five in the
 morning.

At eight o'clock in the
 evening.

I get up at seven o'clock [at
 a quarter to seven], [at a
 quarter past seven].

It is now ten minutes to
 eight.

In the mornings it is now
 very cold.

At midday [towards mid-
 day] it becomes warmer.

In the evenings we usually
 stay [sit] at home, as
 [because] it is dark out-
 side and it is dangerous
 to go out.

One cannot see anything.

One cannot go anywhere in
 the dark.

In the night, in the dark, it
 is dangerous to walk in the
 streets.

In the day-time it is much
 more pleasant and more
 comfortable.

Last night it was too dark :
 one could not see any-
 thing [nothing was visible].

| | |
|---|--|
| Я черезчур хорошо [ясно] вижу. | I see too well [too clearly]. |
| Когда погода станет теплее, мы поедем. | When the weather will get [become] better [warmer], we will start. |
| Становится свежо [прохладно]. | It is getting fresh [cool]. |
| Было пасмурно. | It was cloudy [dull, overcast]. |
| Мы приедем домой [будем дома] в половине второго. | We shall arrive home [we shall be home] at half-past one. |

LESSON VI

Vocabulary

| | |
|---|--|
| вещь (<i>fem.</i>), thing | сторонá, side |
| вещи, things | по правую сторону [пýку], to the right side [hand] |
| рынок, market | по левую сторону [пýку], to the left side [hand] |
| на рынок, to the market | по ту сторону, on that side [along that side] |
| на рынке, at the market | гриб[ы], mushroom[s] |
| кровать (<i>fem.</i>), bedstead | идти по гриб[ы], to go after mushrooms |
| подниматься, to go up, to rise | на вес, by weight |
| *подняться, to rise (see § 64, group 7) | на всё, for anything |
| гора, hill, mountain | назлó, to annoy |
| под гору, downhill | на беду, unfortunately |
| на гору, uphill | на скорую пýку, hurriedly |
| миля, mile | на [про] чёрный день, for a rainy day |
| верста, verst | на восток, eastward, to the east |
| рубль (<i>m.</i>), rouble | на запад, westward, to the west |
| оставлять } to leave (see § 66) | на север, northward, to the north |
| *оставить } | на юг, southward, to the south |
| благодарить [*по-], to thank (see § 65) | за руку, by the arm |
| услуга, service | под руку, arm-in-arm, under one's arm |
| себя, oneself | |
| правый, -ая, -ое, -ые, right | |
| левый, -ая, -ое, -ые, left | |
| рукá, hand | |

| | |
|---|----------------------------|
| пóд вечер, towards evening [about evening-time] | навёрх, upstairs, upward |
| пóд конéц, at the end, towards the end | вниз, downstairs, downward |
| пóд мýзыку, to music | налéво, to the left |
| пóд заклáд, under mortgage | напрáво, to the right |
| пó пояс, up to the belt | вперёд, forward |
| | назад, backward, back |

Notes

Use of the accusative case.

Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles stand in the accusative case :

- (a) when they are used as a direct object in a sentence, completing the meaning of a transitive verb (see §§ 16, 108) ;

NOTE. In negative constructions the direct object stands in the genitive. (See §§ 108*a*, 137, sub-section 4.)

- (b) frequently when they are used as adverbial expressions of time and place (see Lesson IV, also §§ 111, 112) :

| | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| я шёл пять миль, | I went [walked] five miles |
| я спал всю ночь, | I slept the whole night ; |

- (c) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96*b*, if they imply a meaning of movement or direction as given by the verbs which they serve (see § 95, sub-section (2));
- (d) in many idiomatic and adverbial expressions (see Vocabulary to this lesson).

Exercises

| | |
|--|---|
| Я еду [иду] в гóрод [на пóчту], [на стáнцию], [на рýнок], [на концéрт], [на лéкцию], [на со-брáние]. | I go to town [to the post office], [to the station], [to the market], [to the concert], [to a lecture], [to a meeting]. |
|--|---|

- Мы завтра поѣдем за город. We shall go to the country
[out of town], [to the out-
skirts] to-morrow.
- Положи вещи под кровать Put the things under the bed
[под стол]. [under the table].
- Мы поднимаемся на гору. We go up the hill.
- Я купил это за два рубля. I bought this for two
roubles.
- Я взял это за мою книгу. I took this in exchange for
my book.
- Я пришлю брата за себя. I will send my brother in my
place.
- Я про это знаю. I know about this.
- Мы сидели там с час. We sat there about an
hour.
- Они пробыли у нас с год. They stayed with us about a
year.
- Мы прошли с миле. We went [walked] about a
mile.
- Два раза в год. Twice a year.
- Три раза в неделю [в Three times a week [a
месяц]. month].
- Я еду туда на год [на I go there for a year [for
месяц], [на всё лето], a month], [for the whole
[на зиму], [на ночь], summer], [for the winter],
[на неделю], [на короткое [for the night], [for a week],
время]. [for a (short) time].
- Мы едем за-границу. We are going [go] abroad.
- Мы идём под гору. We go downhill.
- Я иду навёрх [вниз]. I go up [upstairs], [down],
[downstairs].
- Иди направо [налево]. Go to the right [to the left].
- Поезжай вперёд [назад]. Go forward [backward],
[back].
- Мы едем в Лондон на We go to London for the
[целую] всю неделю, на whole [for a whole] week,
две недели. for a fortnight.

| | |
|---|---|
| Мы там пробу́дем всю зи́му [всё ле́то], [всю о́сень], [весну́]. | We shall stay there the whole winter [the whole summer], [the whole autumn], [the spring]. |
| Я оста́нусь там с неде́лю [с ме́сяц]. | I shall remain there about a week [about a month]. |
| Я положи́л ва́ши ве́щи под стол. | I have put [placed] your things under the table. |
| Положи́те их на стол [за дива́н], [в я́щик]. | Put them on the table [behind the couch], [into the box]. |
| Мы е́здим в Ло́ндон два ра́за в год. | We go to London twice a year. |
| Он веде́т сестру́ по́д руку. | He leads (his) sister by the arm [under his arm]. |
| Я взял её за́ руку. | I took her by her hand [arm]. |
| Мы сади́мся за стол. | We sit down to table. |
| За́втра ра́но у́тром мы пойде́м в лес по гри́бы (also за гриба́ми). | Early to-morrow morning we shall go to the woods after mushrooms. |
| Я поше́л [воше́л] в во́ду по́ пояс. | I went into the water up to my waist (belt). |
| Он лю́бит ходи́ть по ту сто́рону у́лицы. | He likes to go [walk] on that side of the street. |
| Хлеб прода́ется [продаю́т] на вес. | Bread is sold by weight. |
| Он сде́лал э́то на скору́ю ру́ку. | He did this hurriedly. |
| На беду́ он не мог прие́хать. | Unfortunately he could not come. |
| Весно́й я пое́ду на Восто́к [на За́пад]. | In the spring I shall go to the East [to the West]. |
| Приди́те [приходи́те] по́д вечер. | Come towards evening. |
| Под ко́нec он согласи́лся. | Towards the end [in the end] he agreed. |

Под гору пошла доро́га.
Мы пере́ехали че́рез мост.

Они́ полу́чат письмо́ че́рез
два дня [че́рез неде́лю],
[че́рез ме́сяц].

Они бу́дут у нас в сре́ду
в пе́рвый раз.

За э́то вре́мя я сде́лал
[успе́л] мно́го.

Я быва́ю у них ка́ждый
день [раз в ме́сяц].

Я бу́ду у вас в семь часо́в.

Я благода́рил их за кни́гу.
Мы смо́трим че́рез окно́.

Он смо́трит на люде́й.
Мы отве́чаем на вопро́сы
[на пи́сьма].

Они да́ют хоро́ший отве́т
на на́ши вопро́сы.

Things are going downhill.
We drove [went] across
[over] the bridge.

They will receive the letter
in two days' time [after
two days], [in a week's
time], [in a month's time].

They will come to us [visit
us] on Wednesday for the
first time.

During this time I have
done [accomplished] much.

I go to see them [visit them]
every day [once a month].

I shall be at your house at
seven o'clock.

I thanked them for the book.
We look through [out of]
the window.

He looks at the people.
We answer questions
[letters].

They give a good answer to
our questions.

LESSON VII

Vocabulary

кури́ть [*по-], to smoke
говори́ть [*по-], to speak
*сказа́ть, to say
да́рить [*по-], to make a present of
ока́зывать }
*оказа́ть } to render
ве́рить [*по-], to believe, to trust
(*dat.*)

помога́ть }
*помо́чь } to help, to assist (*dat.*)
подъезжа́ть } to drive, up, as far
*подъеха́ть } (к + *dat.*)
обраща́ться } to apply to
*обрати́ться } (к + *dat.*)
возвраща́ться }
*возврати́ться } to come back
*верну́ться } (*gen.* + с or из)

| | |
|--|---|
| миновать } *минуть } to turn, to pass | спешить [*по-], -ý, -йшь, -át, to hasten, to hurry; to be in advance (clock, watch) |
| звонить } *позвонить } to ring | отставать } *отстать } to get behind |
| позволять } *позволить } (dat.) | |

(For conjugation patterns of the above verbs, see §§ 64-66.)

вдруг, suddenly
просьба, request
вредно, harmful
полезно, useful
как раз, exactly
понемногу } little by little
мало-по-малу }
по-моему, in my opinion
по-вашему, in your opinion
по-своему, in one's own way
по-новому, in the new fashion
по-старому, in the old way
пополам, by halves
так себе, so-so
самó по себе, by itself
почему? why?
потому что, because
поэтому, for that [this] reason
вероятно, probably
по всей вероятности, in all prob-
ability
пора } time; it is time
время }
палка, stick
услуга, service
прогулка, stroll, walk
собака, dog
собачка, little, small dog
дорога, road, way
по дороге, along the road
лестница, staircase
по лестнице, down, up, the stair-
case
лес, forest
по лесу, through the forest
случай, incident, occasion

по случаю, on the occasion
по этому случаю, for this occa-
sion
телефон, telephone
по телефону, by [on the] 'phone
газета, newspaper
по газетам, according to the news-
papers
журнал, journal
сожаление, regret
к сожалению, unfortunately, sad to
say
железная дорога, railway
по железной дороге, by rail
адрес, address
по адресу, at the address
капуста, cabbage
щи, cabbage soup
часы (pl. m.), clock
автобус, bus
по целым дням [часам], [неделям],
whole days [hours], [weeks]
по утрам, in the mornings
по вечерам, in the evenings
по ночам, in the nights
по этим часам, by this clock
карманные часы, (pocket) watch
будильник, alarm-clock
часы идут, the clock goes
часы спешат, the clock is fast
часы отстают, the clock is slow
мой часы остановились, my clock
[watch] has stopped
автобусы идут, buses go
поезда идут, trains go
поезд отходит, train starts [leaves]

| | |
|--|---|
| пóезд приходит [прибывáет], train arrives | товáрный пóезд, goods train |
| скóрый пóезд, express, fast train | почтóвый пóезд, mail train |
| курьéрский пóезд, express train | вагóн } carriage, compartment, |
| пассажíрский пóезд, passenger train | отделéние } для курящих, for smokers для некурящих, for non-smokers |

Notes

Use of the dative case :

- (a) The dative case serves as an indirect object in the meaning of : where to ? to whom ? to what ? (see §§ 16, 138) :

я дал ему́ кнѳгу, I gave him the book
он купѳл мне подáрок, he bought me a present

- (b) The dative is much used in impersonal constructions where the logical subject (inverted grammatical object) is usually in the dative :

мне скúчно, I feel bored
мне нельзѳ, I cannot, I am not allowed
мне нúжно, I need

(For fuller statement on the use of the Dative, see § 138.)

- (c) After the prepositions enumerated in § 96a.

- (d) In many idiomatic and adverbial expressions. (See Vocabulary to this lesson.)

Exercises

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Он не знáет, что ему́ дѳлать. | He does not know what he is to do. |
| Мне бýло óчень скúчно [гру́стно] вчерá. | I felt very bored [sad] yesterday. |
| Мне стáло вдруг вѳсело. | Suddenly I felt cheerful. |
| Тепѳрь мне совѳём хорошó. | I now feel quite all right. |
| Вам врѳдно курѳть. | It is harmful for you to smoke. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Ему нельзя курить. | He must not smoke. |
| Мне можно курить; мне уже восемнадцать лет. | I can smoke; I am already 18 years (old). |
| Мне нужно [надо] поговорить с вами. | I must [I have to] talk to you. |
| Нам пора [время] было ехать. | It was time for us to go. |
| Ему было четырнадцать лет. | He was 14 years (old). |
| Мне минуло пятнадцать лет. | I am past 15 (years). |
| Я ему подарил свою палку. | I gave him my stick as a present. |
| Он мне сказал, что он очень рад этому. | He told me that he was glad of it [about it]. |
| Ваш брат оказал мне большую услугу. | Your brother has rendered me a great service. |
| Они нам всегда верят. | They always trust [believe] us. |
| Я им иногда помогаю. | I help them occasionally. |
| Прогулка мне всегда полезна. | A walk is always useful [beneficial] to me. |
| Он писал мне, что не поедет в Советский Союз. | He wrote to me that he would not go to U.S.S.R. |
| Я вам всегда рад. | I am always glad to see you [you are always welcome]. |
| Мне приятно слышать это. | I am glad to hear this. |
| Я поеду к брату после обеда. | I shall go to my brother's after dinner. |
| Я подъезжаю к его дому. | I am driving up to his house. |
| Мы обратимся к вам с просьбой. | We shall approach you with a request. |
| Я не буду дома к обеду. | I shall not be in for dinner [to dinner]. |

- Мы вернёмся к пяти ча- We shall be back by five
сам, как раз к чаю. o'clock just in time
[exactly] for tea.
- Собачка бежит к дому. The little dog runs towards
the house.
- Я вам дам по яблоку. I shall give you an apple
each.
- Сколько ему лет? How old is he ?
- Ему [минуло] двадцать He is [past] 20 years.
[лет].
- Ему пошёл двадцать He has turned 20. [He is in
первый год. his 21st year.]
- Я поеду в Ливерпуль по I shall go to Liverpool by
железной дороге. rail.
- Я всегда еду домой по I always go home by [along]
этой дороге. this road.
- Пишите по новому адресу, Write to [at] the new ad-
не по старому. dress, not to the old one.
- Я вам позвоню по теле- I shall ring you up (on the
фону. phone).
- Я с вами поговорю по I shall speak to you on the
телефону. telephone.
- По нашим часам теперь By our clock it is now only
только два часа. two o'clock.
- К обеду нам всегда подаёт For dinner we always get
щи [капусту], или борщ [are served] cabbage soup,
с кашей. or borsch with gruel.
- Раньше нам давали к Before we used to get jam
чаю варенье; теперь, к for tea; now, unfortun-
сожалению, нет варенья ately, there is no jam for
к чаю. tea.

LESSON VIII

Vocabulary

случа́-ться, -уюсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to happen

*случ-и́ться, -у́сь, -и́шья, -а́тся
(*impers.* or *c + instr.*), to happen.

знако́м-и́ться [*по-], -люсь, -ишья,
-я́тся, to become acquainted
(*c + instr.*)

здорова́-ться [*по-], -уюсь, -еюсь,
-ются, to greet (*c + instr.*)

проща́-ться, -уюсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to take leave

*прости́-ться, прощу́сь, прости́шья-
ся, прости́тся, to say good-bye
(*c + instr.*)

совета́-ваться [*по-], -уюсь,
-уеюсь, -уются, to take counsel,
advice (*c + instr.*)

дыша́ть [*по-], дышу́, дышишь,
дышат, to breathe (*abs.* or
instr.)

(For other verbs which require the instrumental case see § 140, sub-sections 3, 4.)

за сто́лом, at table

за́ городом, beyond the town

за рабо́той, at work

за обе́дом, at dinner

за ужи́ном, at supper

за за́втраком, at breakfast

за ча́ем, at tea

со вре́менем, in time

за исклю́чением, with the excep-
tion

ме́жду про́чим, among the rest;
by the way

ме́жду тем, in the meantime

ме́жду тем, как, whilst

пе́ред тем [как], before

под усло́вием, on condition

за́тем, after that

за́чем? why?

звать [*на-], зову́, зовёшь, зову́т,
to name, to be known as (*instr.*)

каза́ться [*по-], to appear, to seem
(*abs.* or *instr.*) (see § 64, group 1)

занима́ться, to be occupied with
*зани́яться, to be engaged in (*instr.*)
(see § 64, group 7)

плати́ть [*за-], to pay (*abs.* or
dat. + instr.) (see § 65)

руча́-ться, -уюсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to guarantee (for — + in —)
(*за + acc. + в + loc.*)

*пору́ч-и́ться, -у́сь, -и́шья, -а́тся,
to guarantee (*за + acc. + в + loc.*)

служи́ть [*по-, *у-], служу́, слү-
жишь, слүжат, to serve as (*abs.*
or *instr.*)

счита́-ться [*по-], -уюсь, -еюсь,
-ются, to count, to settle; [*imperf.*],
to be reputed as (*abs.* or *instr.*)

за чем? after what?

вслед за́тем, thereupon, after which
за те́м; что́бы, in order that (with
inf.) (see also adverbial expres-
sions in § 140, sub-section 5)

пред, пе́ред, before, in front of

ками́н, open fireplace

спори́ть [*по-], to argue (*c + instr.*)

ссора́-и́ться [*по-], to quarrel (*c +*
instr.), -уюсь, -ишья, -я́тся

гуверна́нтка, governess

сиде́лка, nurse, sick-nurse

больно́й, -а́я [пацие́нт], patient

сарáй, shed

огоро́д, kitchen-garden

находи́ться, to be (there), to be
situated (see § 63)

рядом, alongside

| | | |
|---|-----------------|--|
| здравствуйте } здравствуй ¹ } | how do you do ? | мы ещё увидимся, we shall see each other [meet] again |
| Customary form of greeting instead of: good morning, good day, good evening (see § 123b (5)). | | да, надеюсь, yes, I hope so. пожалуйста, please спасибо, thanks, thank you |
| прощайте } прощай ¹ } | good-bye | не стоит, you are welcome (literal meaning: not worth the thanks) |
| до свидания, good-bye | | |

Notes

Use of the instrumental case :

- (a) The instrumental case is an adverb case, and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of manner (see §§ 16, 140) ;
- (b) it stands after reciprocal verbs with the preposition с :
я встрѣтился с братом, I met (my) brother
я ссорился [*по-] с ним, I had a quarrel with him ;
- (c) it is used in many adverbial expressions of manner (see § 140, sub-division 5) ;
- (d) it denotes the instrument or means by which, or through which (or person by whom), an action is performed, and the manner in which it is performed (see § 140, sub-section 1) ;
- (e) it is used in passive constructions (Passive voice) after the past passive participle, or after a reflexive verb when it serves the purpose of a past passive participle (see §§ 131, 122, note (e)) :
дом [был] построен моим отцом
the house is [was] built by my father
дом, построенный моим отцом, сгорел
the house built by my father has been burned down
дом строится каменщиками
the house is being built by bricklayers [masons] ;
- (f) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96c.

¹ This form is used only when addressing intimate friends or relations.

Exercises

| | |
|--|--|
| Я сижу́ перед ками́ном. | I sit in front of the fire. |
| Пе́ред ча́ем я всегда́ чита́ю. | Before tea I always read. |
| За обе́дом я о́чень ма́ло ем. | At dinner I eat very little. |
| Мы сиди́м за столо́м. | We sit at table. |
| Кни́га за столо́м. | The book is behind the table. |
| Мой бра́т всегда́ спо́рит со мно́ю. | My brother always argues with me. |
| Приди́те [приходи́те] с ва́шей же́ной. | Come with [and bring] your wife. |
| Что с ним случи́лось ? | What has happened to [with] him ? |
| Мы живём за́ городом. | We live beyond the town. |
| Я не курю́ за рабо́той. | I do not smoke at work. |
| Я его́ заста́л за рабо́той. | I found him at work. |
| Мы посла́ли за до́ктором. | We (have) sent for the doctor. |
| Я вчера́ познако́мился с ва́шим сосе́дом. | I made the acquaintance of your neighbour yesterday. |
| Все бы́ли тут, за исклю́чением ва́шего бра́та. | Everyone was here, with the exception of your brother. |
| Я всегда́ здоро́ваюсь с зна́комыми, когда́ встреча́ю их, и проща́юсь с ни́ми, когда́ оста́вляю их. | I always greet acquaintances when I meet them, and say good-bye to them when I leave them. |
| Мы всегда́ сове́туемся с на́шими друзы́ми. | We always take counsel [advice] with our friends. |
| Со вре́менем вы всё узна́ете. | In time you will learn [know] everything. |
| Ме́жду тем ста́ло темно́. | In the meantime it became dark. |
| Пе́ред те́м, ка́к он пришёл [пе́ред его́ прихо́дом], мы игра́ли в ка́рты. | Before he came [arrived], [before his arrival], we played cards. |
| Э́то, ме́жду про́чим, не так легко́. | This is, by the way, not very easy. |

- Гувернантка смóтрит за
детьми; сиделка смóтрит
[хóдит] за больными [па-
циентами]. The governess looks after
the children; the nurse
looks after the patients.
- Над столóм висит лампа;
над кроватью висит кар-
тина. Over the table hangs a
lamp; over the bedstead
hangs a picture.
- Дети игра́ют ме́жду до́мом
и сара́ем. The children play between
the house and the shed.
- За сара́ем нахо́дится ого-
ро́д. Behind the shed there is a
kitchen garden.
- Под столóм ле́жит соба́ка;
ря́дом с не́й ле́жит кот
[ко́шка]. Under the table lies the
dog; alongside it lies the
tom-cat [cat].
- Она́ хоро́ша собо́й, высо́ка
ро́стом и кротка́ нра́вом. She is good-looking, tall [of
tall stature], and of gentle
disposition.
- Он дово́лен собо́ю, гор-
ди́тся сво́им бога́тством,
но бо́лен чем-то [слаб
здо́ровьем]. He is satisfied with himself,
is proud of his wealth, but
is suffering from something
[ailing with something],
[in delicate health].
- Мы ды́шим во́здухом. We breathe air.
- Его́ зову́т Петро́м. He is called Peter.
- Мы занима́емся де́лом. We are occupied with
business.
- Он смóтрит [вы́глядит]
больны́м.¹ He looks [appears] ill.
- Он счита́ется [его́ счита́ют]
бога́тым. He is considered rich.

¹ But: Он, ка́жется, бо́лен (ка́жется is here used parenthetically).
It seems (to me) he is ill.

LESSON IX

Vocabulary

| | |
|--|--|
| вполнѣ, entirely | на лекции, at the [a] lecture |
| накануне, on the eve | на станции, at the station |
| внизу, at the bottom ; downstairs | на концерте, at the [a] concert |
| наверху, at the top ; upstairs | на рынке, at the market |
| при чём, by which ; at the same time ; besides which | на собрании [митинге], at the meeting |
| притом, besides | у моря, at the sea |
| в виду, in view of, in consideration of | морской бѣре, the seaside |
| в такомъ случаѣ, in this case | на берегу моря } at the seaside |
| во всякомъ случаѣ, in any case | на морскомъ берегу } |
| в скорости } shortly | овощи, vegetables |
| вскорѣ } | приходъ } arrival |
| в скоромъ времени, very soon | прибытие } |
| в чёмъ дѣло ? what is the matter ? | уходъ, departure, leave ; care, nursing |
| в томъ то и дѣло, and it is just this | ковѣр, carpet |
| не в томъ дѣло, that is not the thing [trouble] | ковры, carpets |
| на моихъ глазахъ, under my very eyes | коврик[и], mat[s] |
| при мнѣ, in my presence | деревянный, of wood, wooden |
| на самомъ дѣлѣ } in fact, in reality, | каменный, of stone |
| в самомъ дѣлѣ } indeed | письмо, letter |
| на почтѣ, at the post office | заказное письмо, registered letter |
| | послать заказнымъ [письмомъ], to send by registered letter |

Notes

Use of the Locative (Prepositional) case :

- (a) The locative case is the 'adverb-case' which mostly expresses place, and is used in adverbial expressions of place (see § 141).
- (b) It is used also after the prepositions enumerated in § 96d.

Exercises

Мы живѣмъ в Англіи.

We live in England.

Я всегда сижу в своей
комнатѣ и читаю.I always sit in my room and
read.

- Кни́га у меня́ в ко́мнате на столе́.
На полу́ лежа́т ко́вры [ко́врики].
Я живу́ в го́роде в ка́менном до́ме, а о́ни живу́т в дере́вне в дере́янном до́ме.
Мы вчера́ бы́ли на кон-це́рте [на собра́нии], [на ле́кции].
Он бы́л всё вре́мя на ста́нции.
По прибы́тии [прихо́де] по́езда он поше́л домо́й.
Я ско́ро [вско́ре], [в ско́ром вре́мени] по́еду в Ло́ндон.
В Ло́ндоне я пробу́ду пять неде́ль.
В на́шем до́ме спа́льни наверху́, а столо́вая, го-сти́ная и ку́хня внизу́.
Э́то случи́лось на мо́их гла́зах [при мне].
[В] На са́мом де́ле я не знал, в че́м [бы́ло] де́ло.
Мы все́гда покупа́ем ово́щи на ры́нке, а хлеб, са́хар и дру́гие ко́лониальны́е това́ры в ла́вке.
- The book is in my room on the table.
On the floor lie carpets [mats].
I live in town in a stone [brick] house, but they live in the country [village] in a wooden house.
Yesterday we were at a concert [at a meeting], [at a lecture].
He was all the time at the station.
On the train's arrival [after the arrival of the train] he went home.
I will soon [shortly] go to London.
In London I shall stay [remain] five weeks.
In our house the bedrooms are upstairs, and the dining-room, drawing-room [sitting-room], and kitchen downstairs.
This happened in my presence.
In fact I did not know what was [had been] the matter.
We always buy vegetables at the market, and [but] bread, sugar and other groceries at the shop.

LESSON X

Vocabulary

| | |
|--|---|
| заку́рива-ть, -ю, ешь, -ют, to start smoking | покрыва́ть[ся] } to cover [oneself] |
| *закур-и́ть, -ю, -ишь, -ят, to light a pipe, cigarette, etc. | *покры́ть[ся] } *по-, моюсь, моешься, моются, to wash [oneself] |
| пока́зывать } to show (see § 64, | бры́ться [*по-], бреюсь, бреешься, бреются, to shave oneself |
| *показа́ть } group 1) | братъ ва́нну } to take [have] a bath |
| отвеча́-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют | *вяза́ть ва́нну } |
| *отве́-тить, -чу, -тишь, -тят } | одева́ть[ся] } to dress oneself |
| сиде́ть[*по-], сижу́, сидишь, сидят, to be sitting | *оде́ть[ся] } |
| стоя́ть [*по-], to stand | надева́ть to put on |
| стои́ть, to cost (has no perfective aspect) | *наде́ть } |
| лежа́ть [*по-], to lie, to lie down | встава́ть to get up |
| *вы́спаться, to have enough sleep | *вста́ть } |
| | устава́ть to get tired |
| | *уста́ть } |

(For conjugation-patterns, see §§ 63-68.)

| | |
|--|---|
| зе́ркало, mirror | те́плый, -ая, -ое, -ые, warm |
| пе́ред зе́ркалом, in front of the mirror | дорого́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, dear, expensive |
| холодо́ный, -ая, -ое, -ые, cold | дешёвый, -ая, -ое, -ые, cheap |
| горя́чий, -ая, -ее, -ие, hot | |

(For short forms and comparatives, see § 45.)

| | |
|--|---|
| прислу́га, servants (<i>collective noun</i>) | таба́к, tobacco |
| куха́рка, cook | тру́бка, pipe |
| повар, cook (man) | папи́роса, cigarette |
| го́рничная, chambermaid | сига́ра, cigar |
| бри́тва, razor | спи́чка, match |
| о́страя бри́тва, sharp razor | корбо́бка спи́чек, box of matches |
| ту́пая бри́тва, blunt razor | руба́ха } shirt |
| квас, home-brewed beer | руба́шка } |
| вино́, wine | но́чная руба́ха, night-shirt |
| пи́во, beer | ве́рхняя руба́ха, top-shirt |
| ко́фе, coffee | ни́жняя руба́ха, under-shirt |
| во́дка, vodka | брю́ки } trousers (used in plural) |
| шокола́д, chocolate | штаны́ } only (<i>masc.</i>), see § 33) |
| ко́ньяк, brandy | жиле́т, vest |

пиджа́к, jacket
 ку́ртка, short jacket
 шу́ба, fur coat
 шарф, scarf
 шля́па, hat
 ша́пка, cap
 полушубо́к, short fur coat
 причёсыва-ться, -юсь, }
 -ешься, -ются } to comb
 *приче-са́ться, -шу́сь, } one's hair
 -шешь, -шутся }
 вытира́-ться } -юсь, -ешься, -ются,
 утира́-ться } to wipe [dry] one-
 self }
 *вы-тере́ться } -трусь, -трешься,
 *у-тере́ться } -трутся, }
 to dry [wipe] one-
 self }
 постё́ль, bedding
 поду́шка, pillow
 одея́ло, blanket
 просты́ня, sheet
 дрова́, firewood (used in plural
 only) (*neut.*)
 уго́ль (*m.*), coal (used in singular
 only in sense of fuel)
 чуло́к, stocking
 чулка́, stockings
 носо́к, sock
 носки́, socks
 подтя́жки, braces (used only in
pl., fem.)
 сапо́г, boot
 сапоги́, boots (top boots)
 ту́фля, slipper
 ту́фли, slippers
 боти́нок }
 [боти́нка] } half-boot [shoe]
 боти́нки, half-boots
 кало́ши }
 гало́ши } goloshes
 воротни́к }
 воротничо́к } collar
 плато́к [носово́й], handkerchief
 ве́жливо, courteously

из ве́жливости, out of courtesy
 фа́брика, factory
 заво́д, works
 я́рко, brightly
 во́лос }
 волоса́ } hair
 годя́ться [*при-], to be of use (see
 § 68)
 лицо́, face
 ше́я, neck
 мыть[ся] [*у-], мо́ю, мо́ешь, мо́ют,
 to wash [oneself]
 мы́ло, soap
 полотё́нце, towel
 га́лстук, tie
 завя́зыва-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют }
 *завя́заты́, завяжу́, завя́- } to tie
 жешь, завя́жут } up
 печь (*fem.*) }
 печа́ } stove
 грё́ться [*по-], to warm oneself
 уста́лый, -ая, -ые, tired
 пешко́м, on foot
 трамва́ем, by tram
 нра́в-иться [*по-], -люсь, -ишься,
 -ятся, to please, to be pleas-
 ing
 и́зредка, occasionally
 отды́ха-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют }
 *отдохн-у́ть, -у́, -ёшь, } to rest
 -у́т }
 умыва́льник, wash-basin, wash-
 stand
 умыва́льный прибо́р, toilet-set
 шка́ф, wardrobe
 этаже́рка, shelf, whatnot
 матра́ц, mattress
 ро́дственник, relation
 друг, friend
 друзы́я, friends (see § 20, sub-
 section (6))
 знако́мый [-ые], acquaintance
 абажу́р, shade
 просто́, simply
 лимон, lemon

болта́ть [*по-], -ю, -ешь, -ют, to
chatter

у́ютный, -ая, -ое, -ые, cosy

удобный, -ая, -ое, -ые, comfort-
able

обста́новка, set out ; equipment

Exercises

Я встаю́ очень ра́но.

Я одева́юсь. Я снимаю́
ночную руба́шку и наде-
ваю штаны́ [брю́ки], ве́рх-
нюю руба́шку и жиле́т.

Я брею́сь пе́ред зёркалом
острой брита́вой.

Брита́вы у меня́ всегда́
острые ; тупа́я брита́ва не
годится ; с тупо́й брита́-
вой брита́е продол́жается
до́льше.

Пото́м я мою́ лицо́, шею́ и
ру́ки горя́чей и холо́д-
ной водо́й и мы́лом ; я
вытира́юсь [вытира́ю ли-
цо́, шею́, ру́ки] [ути-
ра́юсь] полотё́нцем.

Иногда́ я беру́ горя́чую
[или холо́дную] ванну́.

Я причёсываю́ [причёсы-
ваю, зачёсываю волоса́],
надева́ю ве́рхнюю ру-
ба́шку [руба́ху], пиджа́к
[ку́ртку], воротничо́к, за-
вязываю га́лстук и идú
вниз в столо́вую [спу-
ска́юсь по ле́стнице].

В столо́вой печь уже́ зато́-
плена́ [зимо́й и осе́нью],
[ка́мин уже́ затоплен ;
уже́ то́пится].

I get up very early.

I dress. I take off (my)
night-shirt and I put on
(my) trousers, (my) top-
shirt and vest.

I shave in front of the mirror
with a sharp razor.

My razors are always sharp ;
a blunt [dull] razor is no
use ; it takes long to shave
with a blunt razor [shaving
with a blunt razor].

Then I wash my face, neck,
and hands with hot and
cold water and soap ; I
[dry] wipe myself [I dry
my face, neck, and hands]
with a towel.

Sometimes I take a hot [or
cold] bath.

I comb my hair, I put on
my top-shirt, jacket, collar,
tie up my tie, and I go
downstairs into the dining-
room [go down the stair-
case], [stairs].

In the dining-room the stove
is already lit [in winter
and autumn].

- В каміне [в печі], [в пѣчке] In the open fireplace [stove]
вѣсело и ярко горят cheerfully and brightly
дрова [горит уголь]. burns the wood [coal].
- Я стою перед камином и I stand in front of the fire-
грѣюсь. place and warm my-
self.
- Я грѣюсь у огня [у камина], I warm myself near the fire,
и читаю газету [просма- and read the newspaper
триваю газету]. [look through the news-
paper].
- Мне приносят [подают] My breakfast is brought
завтрак. [served].
- Прислуга [кухарка или The servant [cook or maid]
горничная] подаёт мне serves my breakfast
завтрак.
- Я сажусь к столу [за стол] I sit down to table and
и начинаю завтракать begin breakfast.
[завтрак].
- Кончив завтрак [позавтра- Having finished [after]
кав], [после завтрака] я breakfast I light a cigar-
закуриваю папиросу [си- ette, [cigar], [pipe] and
гару], [трубку] и курю. smoke.
- Я набиваю трубку [таба- I fill my pipe [with tobacco];
ком]; я люблю крепкий I like strong [expensive]
[дорогой] табак. tobacco.
- Слабый или дешёвый табак Weak or cheap tobacco is
мне не нравится. [Я не not to my liking. [I do
люблю слабого табаку.] not like weak tobacco.]
- Покурив, я надеваю паль- Having finished smoking, I
то [а зимою шубу], беру put on my overcoat [and in
зонтик [или палку] и winter my fur coat], I take
отправляюсь [иду, еду] в my umbrella [or stick],
контóру, [на фабрику, на and set out [go, drive] to
завод]. the office [to the factory,
to the works].

Я еду поездом [трамваем],
[автобусом], [в автомо-
биле] или же идущим пешком.

I go by train [by tram], [by
bus] [in a car], or else I
walk [go on foot].

Я работаю весь [целый]
день.

I work the whole day.

К концу дня [к вечеру] я
всегда устаю [чувствую
себя усталым] и рад
ехать, [итти], [пойти]
домой обедать.

By [towards] the end of the
day [towards evening] I al-
ways get tired [I feel tired]
and I am glad to drive [to
go] home to dinner.

Придя домой, я сажусь за
обед.

Having arrived home I sit
down to dinner.

К обеду мне подадут суп,
рыбу, щи или борщ, се-
лянку, жаркое, котлеты,
кашу, пирожки, пирожное,
фрукты.

For dinner I am served with
soup, fish, cabbage soup
or borsch, stew, roast,
cutlets, gruel, pies, pastry,
fruit.

Перед обедом я выпиваю
рюмку водки и закусываю
огурцом, селедкой,
анчоусом, икрой или
какой-нибудь другой за-
куской.

Before dinner I drink a
wine-glass of vodka, and
eat (after it) some cucum-
ber, herring, anchovy,
caviar, or any other bit
of snack.

За обедом я пью воду или
квас; иногда я пью пиво,
изредка также вино.

At dinner I drink water or
kvas [home-brewed beer];
sometimes I drink beer,
now and then also wine.

Потом я пью кофе, иногда
с коньяком.

Afterwards I drink coffee,
occasionally with brandy.

После обеда [пообедавши]
я отдыхаю или читаю
книгу.

After dinner [having dined]
I rest or read a book.

Отдохнувши я идущим к
знакомым [в театр], [в
оперу], [в кинемато-
граф], [на митинг].

Having had a rest I go to
see friends [to the theatre],
[to the opera], [to the
cinema], [to a meeting].

Иногда ко мне [к нам] приходят друзья [приятели], [знакомые], [родственники], и мы играем в карты, в шахматы, в шашки.

Иногда кто-нибудь играет на рояле и мы все слушаем.

А то просто сидим у камина и разговариваем [болтаем], пьем чай с лимоном или с вареньем.

В одиннадцать часов [в половине двенадцатого] я иду спать [ложусь спать].

Я сплю на [в] просторной кровати, на которой постлана постель: [подушки, матрац, простыни, одеяло].

Зимой я накрываюсь [покрываюсь] двойным одеялом [двумя одеялами].

Мебель в моей комнате простая: кровать, комод для белья, стул [два стула], столик, кресло, шкаф для платья, этажерка [полка], [полочка] для книг, зеркало и умывальник [умывальный прибор].

С потолка висит электрическая лампа под абажуром.

Occasionally come to me [to us] friends [acquaintances], [relatives], and we play cards, chess, draughts.

Occasionally someone plays the piano and we all listen.

Or else we simply sit at the [near the] fireplace and talk [chatter], drink tea with lemon or jam [preserves].

At eleven o'clock [at half-past eleven] I go to sleep [I go to bed].

I sleep on [in] a spacious bedstead, on which there is laid bedding [pillows, mattress, sheets, a blanket].

In winter I cover myself with a double blanket [two blankets].

The furniture in my room is simple: a bedstead, a chest of drawers for linen, a chair [two chairs], a little table, an arm-chair, wardrobe for clothes, set of shelves [whatnot] for books, a mirror and wash-stand [toilet-set].

From the ceiling hangs an electric lamp with a shade.

| | |
|--|--|
| Над комо́дом висит кар- тина. | Over the chest of drawers hangs a picture [painting]. |
| Пол у́стлан ко́вриками [на полу́ лежит кове́р]. | The floor is covered with mats [on the floor lies a carpet]. |
| В о́бщем обста́новка про- ста́я, но удо́бная и ую́тная. | In general the set-out is simple, but comfortable and cosy. |

LESSON XI

Vocabulary

NOTE. A number of words in everyday use are given in the list below which are not necessarily included in the exercises to this lesson.

| | |
|--|---|
| да́ма, lady | пла́тье, clothing, wearing apparel |
| да́мы, ladies | о́бувь (<i>fem.</i>), footwear |
| для дам, for ladies | да́мское [же́нское] пла́тье и о́бувь, |
| да́мский, -ая, -ое, -ие, for, pertain- ing to, ladies | ladies' [women's] clothing and footwear |
| же́нщина [ы], woman [women] | пла́тье и о́бувь для дам, для же́н- |
| деви́ца [ы], maiden[s], girl[s], miss[es] | щин, для деви́ц, для де́вочек, clothing [dresses] and footwear |
| деву́шка [и], girl, maiden, servant girl | for ladies, women, maidens, and girls |
| ба́рышня [и], young lady | ко́фточка } woman's jacket |
| де́вочка [и], little girl | ко́фта } |
| же́нѣх, bridegroom, suitor | ю́бка, petticoat, skirt |
| неве́ста, bride, engaged girl | пла́тье, dress |
| же́на [же́ны], wife [wives] | да́мское пальто́, lady's coat |
| вдова́ [вдо́вы], widow[s] | пу́ба, fur coat |
| вдовец́ [вдовцы́], widower | корса́ж, bodice |
| мужѣ́на [ы], man, male | ша́ляпка, hat |
| муж, husband | блу́зка, blouse |
| мужско́й, for, pertaining to, men | сарафа́н, lady's sleeveless garment |
| для мужѣ́и, for men | боти́нки, half-boots |
| ма́льчик [и], boy | [боти́нка] } half-boot |
| ю́ноша [и], youth | боти́нок } |
| па́рень [па́рни], lad[s], youth[s] (used only colloquially) | ту́фли [я], slippers |
| | полу́сапо́жки, half-boots |

| | |
|---|---|
| башма́к } lady's boot[s] | в носу́, in the nose |
| башма́ки } | [бровь] (<i>fem.</i>) } eyebrow |
| фа́ртук } apron, pinafore | бро́ви } |
| пе́редник } | ресни́цы, eyelashes |
| чуло́к, чулки́, stocking[s] | [скула́] } cheek-bone[s] |
| шёлковые чулки́, silk stockings | ску́лы } |
| шёлк, silk | рот, mouth |
| шёлковая ма́терия, silk material | во рту́, in the mouth |
| шерстя́ная ма́терия, woollen material | грудь (<i>fem.</i>), chest |
| шерсть (<i>fem.</i>), wool | спина́, spine, back |
| носово́й плато́к } | плечо́ } shoulders |
| платки́ } | плечи́ } |
| носовы́е платки́ } | [ло́коть] (<i>m.</i>) } elbows [forearms] |
| полотно́, linen, linen-cloth | ло́кти } |
| полотня́ный, -ая, -ое, -ые, of linen | [рука́] } hands, arms |
| сукно́, cloth (woollen-cloth) | ру́ки } |
| суконный, -ая, -ое, -ые, made of (woollen) cloth | [нога́] } leg[s], foot [feet] |
| хлопча́тая бума́га, cotton | но́ги } |
| из хлопча́той бума́ги, made of cotton | се́рдце, heart |
| те́ло, body | лёгкое, lung |
| челове́ческое те́ло, human body | лёгкие, lungs |
| член, member, limb | пе́чень (<i>fem.</i>), liver |
| часть (<i>fem.</i>), part | желу́док, stomach |
| чле́ны [ча́сти] челове́ческого те́ла, members [parts] of the human body | живо́т, belly |
| голова́, head | [жи́ла] } veins |
| волоса́ } hair | жи́лы } |
| во́лос } | кровь, blood |
| у́хо, ear | [па́лец] } fingers |
| у́ши, ears | па́льцы } |
| глаза́, eyes | [коле́но] } knees |
| глаз, eye | коле́ни } |
| лоб, forehead | ко́жа, skin |
| гу́бы, lips | [кость] (<i>fem.</i>) } bones |
| губа́, lip | ко́сти } |
| подборо́док, chin | [но́готь] (<i>m.</i>) } nails |
| борода́, beard | но́гти } |
| усы́ } moustache (usually used in the plural) | язы́к, tongue (also language) |
| ус } | [зуб] } teeth |
| нос, nose | зубы́ } |
| | [десна́] } gums |
| | десны́ } |

нёбо, palate (not to be confused
with небо, sky)
глóтка, gullet, throat
пóяс, waist
пояснiца, waist, loins
сла́бые глаза́, weak eyes
слаб, -а, -ы глаза́ми, weak in the
eyes

близору́кость (*f.*), short-sightedness
близору́к-ий, -ая, -ие; -а, -и, short-
sighted

очки, spectacles
пенснá, eye-glasses

шкóла } school
учи́лище } school

ходить в шкóлу } to go to school
ходить в учи́лище }

учи́ться в шкóле } to learn at
учи́ться в учи́лище } school

учи́ться (*requires dat.*) рýсскому
языкú, to learn the Russian
language

учи́ться мýзыке, to learn music

уче́бник, text-book, study book

учи́тель, teacher

учи́тельница, woman teacher

чтéние, reading

рисовáние, drawing (painting)

пéние, singing

изучá-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют }
*изуч-и́ть, -ý, -ишь, -ат } to study
(*trans. verb*)

учи́ть [*на-], to teach

черни́ла (*in pl. only*), ink

черни́льница, ink-pot

сло́во, word

словáрь (*m.*), dictionary

дом, house

кóмната, room

кры́ша, roof

стенá, wall

стéны, walls

окно́, window

óкна, windows

стеклó, glass, pane

стéкла, panes

дверь (*fem.*), door

двор, yard

на двóре, outside, out of doors

камин, open fireplace

пол, floor

потолóк, ceiling

лéстница, stairs, staircase; ladder

столóвая, dining-room

кúхня, kitchen

спáльня, bedroom

приёмная, reception-room

гости́ная, sitting-room

дéтская, nursery

кабинéт, study

прихóжая } entrance-hall
передняя }

ва́нная [кóмната], bathroom

ва́нна, bath

ба́ня, bath-house

сарáй, shed

метлá, broom

зástуп, spade

пи́лá, saw

молотóк, hammer

тарéлка, plate

ми́ска, tureen

ча́шка, cup

стакáн, glass, tumbler

блóдечко, saucer

ча́йник, tea-pot

сáхарница, sugar basin

самовáр, tea urn

нож, knife

ножи́, knives

лóжка [и], spoon[s]

ви́лка [и], fork[s]

блéдо, dish

скáтерть [и] (*fem.*), tablecloth

салфéтка [и], serviette[s]

графин, decanter

судóк, cruet, cruet-stand

солóнка, salt-cellar

кувшин, jug

жева́ть [*раз-], жу́ю, жуёшь, жу́ют, to chew
 дыша́ть [*по-], to breathe
 осяза́-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют, to feel
 течь [*по-], теку́, течёшь, течёт, to flow
 пи́ща, food
 портно́й, tailor
 портни́ха, tailoress
 сапо́жник, shoemaker
 бельё, linen
 пра́чка, laundress

пра́чечная, laundry
 котёл, boiler
 котелёк, kettle, pot
 рю́мка, small wine-glass
 пе́рец, pepper
 хрен, horse-radish
 горчи́ца, mustard
 деся́ток, a set of ten
 дю́жина, dozen
 фунт, pound
 кило́, kilogram
 полфу́нта, half a pound
 полки́ло, half a kilo

Exercises

Мы ви́дим [смóтрим] гла́з-
 зами ; мы ку́шаем [едим]
 ртом ; разже́вываем
 [жуём] пи́щу зубáми ;
 мы слы́шим [слу́шаем]
 уша́ми ; рабо́таем ру-
 ка́ми ; хо́дим или бе́гаем
 нога́ми ; осяза́ем па́ль-
 цами [ко́жей] ; ню́хаем
 [обоня́ем] но́сом.

Мы узнаём [различáем]
 вкус пи́щи нёбом и
 языко́м.

Мы имее́м пять вне́шних
 чувств : зрёние, слух,
 обоня́ние, осяза́ние и
 вкус.

В на́ших жи́лах течёт
 кровь.

Близору́кие люди́ и те,
 у кото́рых сла́бые глаза́,
 но́сят очки́ или пенсне́.

We see [look] with (our)
 eyes ; we eat with (our)
 mouth ; we chew food
 with our teeth ; we hear
 [listen] with our ears ; we
 work with our hands ; we
 walk or run with our legs ;
 we feel [touch] with our
 fingers [skin] ; we smell
 with our nose.

We learn [distinguish] the
 taste of food by our palate
 and tongue.

We have five external
 senses : sight, hearing,
 smell, touch, and taste.

In our veins flows blood.

Short-sighted people and
 those who have weak eyes
 wear spectacles or glasses
 (pince-nez).

- Мужчины, взрослые и мальчики, носят пальто, брюки [штаны], куртки [пиджаки], жилеты, шубы, полушубки, сапоги, ботинки, воротнички, галоши, шляпы, шапки. Men, grown-ups, and boys, wear overcoats, trousers, jackets, vests, fur coats, short fur coats, top-boots, shoes, collars, goloshes, hats, and caps.
- Женщины [дамы] и девушки носят платья, корсажи, кофты, юбки, сарафаны, башмаки, ботинки, полусапожки, шляпки. Women [ladies] and girls wear dresses, bodices, jackets, skirts, [petticoats], sarafans, boots, shoes, half-boots, hats.
- Деревенские женщины и девушки носят на голове платки вместо шляпок. Village women and girls wear kerchiefs on their head instead of hats.
- Мужское платье шьёт портной. Men's clothing is sewn by a tailor.
- Дамское платье также шьёт портной, а иногда портниха. Ladies' clothing is also sewn by a tailor, and sometimes by a tailoress.
- Мужскую и дамскую обувь шьёт сапожник. Men's and women's footwear is sewn by a shoemaker.
- Бельё шьёт портниха [бе-лошвейка]. Linen is sewn by a tailoress [seamstress].
- Бельё стирает прачка. Linen is washed by a laundress.
- Лучшее бельё отсылается в прачечную. Better linen is sent to the laundry.

LESSON XII

Vocabulary

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| пого́да, weather | лес, forest |
| хоро́шая пого́да, fine weather | в лесу́, in the forest |
| плоха́я пого́да, bad weather | река́, river |
| дождь (<i>m.</i>), rain | о́зеро, lake |
| идёт дождь, it rains | в реке́, in the river |
| шёл дождь, it rained | в о́зере, in the lake |
| пошёл дождь, it started raining | на реке́, on the river |
| о́блако [а] | на о́зере, on the lake |
| ту́ча [и] } cloud[s] | мо́ре, the sea |
| снег, snow | в мо́ре, in the sea |
| па́дает снег, it snows [snow falls] | на мо́ре, on the sea |
| снег па́дал, it snowed [snow fell] | чело́век, man |
| град, hailstones | лю́ди, men, people |
| мо́лния, lightning | зверь (<i>m.</i>), beast |
| сверка́ет мо́лния, lightning is flash- ing | живо́тное, animal |
| бу́ря, storm | ло́шадь (<i>fem.</i>), horse, mare |
| гром, thunder | ко́нь (<i>m.</i>), horse |
| греми́т гром, it thunders | ко́рова, cow |
| греме́л гром, it thundered | соба́ка, dog |
| ле́д, ice | ко́шка, cat |
| вода́, water | ко́т, tom-cat |
| ле́д та́ет, ice melts | пти́ца, bird |
| ле́д раста́ял, ice has melted away | ры́ба, fish |
| ве́тер, wind | домо́шняя пти́ца, domestic bird |
| возду́х, air | ку́рица, hen |
| не́бо, sky | пету́х, cock, cockerel |
| о́блачно, cloudy | у́тка, duck |
| па́смурно, rainy | гу́сь (<i>m.</i>), goose |
| ве́трено, windy | индю́к, turkey-cock |
| я́сно, clear | индю́шка } turkey |
| те́пло, warm | инде́йка } |
| хо́лодно, cold | де́рево, tree |
| о́город, kitchen garden | де́ревья, trees |
| в [на] о́ро́де, in the kitchen garden | плодо́вые дере́вья, fruit trees |
| сад, garden, orchard | ку́ст, bush, shrub |
| в саду́, in the garden | ку́сты, shrubs |
| по́ле, field | в ку́стах, in the shrubs |
| в по́ле, in the field | трава́, grass |
| | гриб [ы], mushroom[s] |

ягода [ы], berry [ies]
 ди́кие я́годы, wild berries
 я́блоня, apple tree
 ви́шня, cherry tree [cherry]
 гру́ша, pear tree [pear]
 сли́ва, plum tree [plum]
 мали́на, raspberry
 клубни́ка, strawberry
 сморо́дина, currant

земляни́ка, wild (small) strawberry
 крыжовни́к, gooseberry
 ре́па, turnip[s]
 морко́вь, (*fem.*) carrot[s]
 капу́ста, cabbage
 ре́дька } radish
 реды́ска }
 карто́фель (*m.*), potato[es]
 лук, onion[s]

(The above vegetables and fruits are not used in the plural, they have a collective singular only.)

бура́к [ы], beetroot[s]
 ботви́ня (*sing. only*), beetroot-tops
 огуре́ц, cucumber
 огурца́, cucumbers
 сала́т (*sing. only*), salad [lettuce]
 сади́ть [*по-], сажу́, сади́шь, са́дят,
 to plant
 се́ять [*по-], -ю, -ешь, -ют, to sow

хлеба́, cereals
 рожь (*fem.*), rye
 пше́ница, wheat
 ячме́нь (*m.*), barley
 овёс, oats
 кукуру́за, maize
 гречи́ха, buckwheat
 горо́х, peas

(The above cereals have no plural, they have a collective singular only.)

боб[ы], bean[s]
 ды́ня [и], pumpkin[s], melon[s]
 са́ни (*pl. only*), sleigh
 теле́га, cart, waggon
 каре́та, carriage, coach
 дро́жки, droshky
 коля́ска, open carriage
 в са́нях, in a sleigh
 в теле́ге, in a cart
 в каре́те, in a carriage
 в коля́ске, in an open carriage
 в дро́жках, in a droshky
 разво́д-и́ть, -жу́, -ишь, } to culti-
 -ят } vate, to
 *разви́-сти́, -ду́, -дёшь, } rear
 -дут

нево́д [а], big fishing net
 се́ть [и] (*fem.*), smaller fishing net
 уда́ } fishing rod
 удо́чка }
 охота́, desire, inclination; hunt,
 chase
 охот-и́ться, -чусь, -ти́шься, -тя́тся,
 to hunt, to chase (за + *inst.*, or
 на + *acc.*)
 охотни́к, volunteer; hunter
 охотный́, -ая, -ое, -ые, willing
 охот́но, willingly
 лов-и́ть, -лю́, -и́шь, } to catch (see
 -ят } § 60, sub-
 *пойма́-ть, -ю, -ешь, } section 3)
 -ю́т

Exercises

Зимо́ю в Росси́и доро́ги,
 луга́ и поля́ покры́ты
 сне́гом; лю́ди е́здят в
 са́нях.

In winter the roads, mea-
 dows, and fields in Russia
 are covered with snow;
 people travel in sleighs.

- Лéтом лúди éздят в тe-
лéгах, дрóжках, карéтах
и коля́сках.
- Зимóю рéки и озéра за-
мерза́ют.
- В течéние [в продолжéние]
трéх и́ли четырёх мéся-
цев он́и покрýты тол-
стым слóем льда.
- По льду éздят и ката́ются
на конькáх.
- Дорóга по льду глáдная,
рóвная. Ёхать легкó.
- Мáльчики и дéвочки лúбят
ката́ться [с горы́] по
снéгу и по льду на сáн-
ках.
- Лéтом он́и лúбят гуля́ть
в лесу́ и в по́ле. Он́и
собира́ют [набира́ют]
грибы́ и я́годы в лесу́
и рвут [нарыва́ют] цветы́
в по́ле.
- Зимóю на сéвере Росси́и
всегда́ о́чень хóлодно. На
ю́ге да́же зимóю иногдá
бывáет теплó.
- К востóку от Ура́льских
гор нахóдится [лежит]
Сибирь.
- К зáпаду от Ура́льских
гор ле́жит Европéйская
Росси́я.
- In summer people travel in
carts, droshkies, coaches,
and open carriages.
- In winter the rivers and
lakes freeze up.
- For the duration of three or
four months they are
covered with a thick layer
of ice.
- On the ice people travel and
skate [on skates].
- The road over the ice is
smooth and even. Travel-
ling is easy.
- Boys and girls like to slide
[downhill] over the snow
and ice in little sledges.
- In the summer they like to
stroll in the woods and in
the field. They gather
mushrooms and berries
and gather [pluck] flowers
in the field.
- In the north of Russia it is
always very cold in winter.
In the south even in
winter it is sometimes
warm.
- To the east of the Ural
mountains lies Siberia.
- To the west of the Ural
mountains lies European
Russia.

- Пого́да всё вре́мя сто́яла
плоха́я : шёл дождь,
ча́сто с гро́мом и мо́л-
нией.
- Не́бо было́ покрýто ту́-
чами [облака́ми].
- Дул си́льный ве́тер.
- Подня́лась [начала́сь] бу́ря
- Па́дал снег с гра́дом [и
град].
- Шёл дождь с гра́дом.
- К но́чи начала́сь метель.
- Вода́ в бо́чках и ча́нах за-
ме́рзла и преврати́лась
в лёд.
- К весне́ [весно́ю] лю́ди ко-
па́ют о́город [зе́млю на
о́городах] за́ступом.
- Распа́хивают [па́шут] поля́
сохо́й и плу́гом.
- На о́городах са́дят карто́-
фель, капу́сту, и се́ют
ре́пу, морко́вь, ре́дьку,
реды́ску, огу́рцы, бу́раки,
сала́т и лук ; та́кже раз-
во́дят ды́ни и ты́квы.
- Из бу́рако́в и ботви́ньи в
дере́внях ва́рят борщ ;
из капу́сты ва́рят щи.
- The weather was [stood] bad
all the time : rain, often
with thunder and light-
ning.
- The sky was covered [over-
cast] with clouds.
- A strong wind was blowing.
- A storm began.
- Snow fell with hailstones.
- Rain fell with hailstones.
- Towards the night a snow-
storm began.
- Water in barrels and tanks
got frozen and turned to
ice.
- Towards [in] spring people
dig (their) gardens [the
soil in the kitchen gardens]
with spades.
- They plough up the fields
with hand-plough and
plough.
- In the kitchen garden people
plant potatoes and cab-
bage, and sow turnips,
carrots, radishes, black
radishes, cucumbers, beet-
root, lettuce, and onions ;
they also cultivate melons
and pumpkins.
- From beetroots and beetroot-
tops they cook borsch in
the villages ; from cab-
bage—cabbage soup.

- На полях сеют хлебá : [разные хлебá] : рожь, пшеницу, ячмень, овёс, гречи́ху, кукуру́зу. In the fields they sow [are being sown] corn-crops [cereals] : rye, wheat, barley, oats, buckwheat, maize.
- В саду́ расту́т разны́е плоды́ : я́блоки, гру́ши, сли́вы, ви́шни, на я́блонях, гру́шах, сли́вах и ви́шнях. In the orchard grow various fruits : apples, pears, plums, cherries, on apple trees, pear trees, plum trees, and cherry trees.
- В сада́х та́кже есть кусты́, на кото́рых расту́т : смо́родина, мали́на, крыжов-ник. In the orchards there are also bushes on which grow : currants, raspberries, gooseberries.
- В цветника́х расту́т цветы́ [цвето́к]. In the flower beds grow flowers.
- В лесу́ расту́т разны́е дере́вья : со́сны [сосна́], ёли́ [ель] (*fem.*), дубы́ [дуб], берёзы [а], осины́ [а]. In the forest grow various trees : pines, fir trees, oak trees, birch trees, aspen trees.
- В траве́ под дере́вьями расту́т гри́бы и я́годы : черни́ка, брусни́ка, зем-ляни́ка. In the grass under the trees grow mushrooms and berries : bilberries, red bilberries, wild straw-berries.
- В лесу́ всегда́ прохладно́ и поко́йно. In the forest it is always cool and restful.
- На лугу́ растёт трава́. On the meadow grows grass.
- Траву́ [се́но] ко́сят ко́сами, су́шат и собира́ют в сто́га. The grass [hay] is mown with scythes, dried and gathered into haystacks.
- Се́ном ко́рмят скот : коро́в, быко́в, лошаде́й, ове́ц и коз. With hay are fed cows, oxen, horses, sheep, and goats.
- Коро́вы, быки́, ло́шади, о́вцы, и ко́зы — это́ дома́шние живо́тные. Cows, oxen, horses, sheep, goats—these are domestic animals.

- В деревнях в хозяйстве
люди разводят кур [ку-
рица], уток [утка], гусей
[гусь], нидеек [нидейка].
Это домашние птицы.
Куры, утки, гуси и ни-
дейки кладут яйца.
В каждом хозяйстве есть
собаки и кошки.
В России во многих мес-
тах, особенно на севере,
в лесах водятся [живут]
дикие звери: медведи,
волки, лисы [лисы].
На зверей люди охотятся
[устраивают охоты] с
ружьями и собаками.
В реках и озерах России
много рыбы.
Рыбу ловят неводами, се-
тями и удочками.
- In the village households
they rear chickens [hens],
ducks, geese, turkeys.
These are domestic birds.
Hens, ducks, geese, and
turkeys lay eggs.
In every household there are
dogs and cats.
In Russia in many places,
particularly in the north,
in the forests there are
[live] wild beasts: bears,
wolves, foxes.
People hunt these beasts
[arrange hunts] with gun
and hounds.
In the rivers and lakes of
Russia there is much fish.
The fish is caught with large
and small nets, and fishing-
rods.

APPENDIX I

Formation of the Conditional Mood

The conditional mood (see §§ 106, 132) is formed by the addition of the conditional particle **БЫ** [**б**] (a survival in modern Russian of an Old Slavonic verbal form) to any person of the past tense of the indicative mood of both imperfective and perfective verbs (see § 83). Although the conditional mood is expressed in the form of the past tense (with **БЫ**), it can refer to *any tense*, in accordance with the meaning of the sentence. The particle **БЫ** can either precede or follow the verb. **БЫ** is often used with the conditional conjunction **ЕСЛИ**: **если бы**, if . . . had; if . . . did, etc. It can also be merged in the conjunction **ЧТОБЫ** (see § 97), which is followed by a verb in the past tense if it introduces a subordinate clause of 'wish' or 'request.' When used in the sense of a conditional mood **БЫ** means: should, would, might; should have, would have, might have. **ЧТОБЫ** means: that . . . might, that . . . should, that . . . would. But when **ЧТОБЫ** is used as a conjunction of purpose (in the meaning of: in order to . . .), it is followed by an infinitive.

The conditional mood often serves the purpose of the subjunctive mood, for which there is no specific form in Russian:

Если бы я знал [знай я] это раньше, я бы не продал коня.

Had I known this before I would not have sold the horse.

Я просил, чтобы мне дали разрешение ехать в Советский Союз.

I asked that a permit might be given me to go [travel] to the Soviet Union.

Я хочу, чтобы вы оставались здесь.

I wish that you should remain here.

Если бы я знал, что он поедет в Лондон, я бы послал с ним книги.

Had I known that he was going [would go] to London I would have [might have] sent the books with him.

Ты бы что нибудь[с]делал.

You should [might] do [have done] something.

APPENDIX II

Attributive [Long] Adjectives as Predicate

(Refers to §§ 103-104, pp. 184-185)

An attributive adjective can be used as the predicate of a sentence if the quality expressed by the adjective is a permanent one :

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| дóм был старýй, | the house was an old one |
| сапоги́ были совсе́м но́вые, | the top-boots were perfectly new (ones) |

The adjective in these sentences is the name-part of a compound predicate. The long adjective as predicate is frequently used in popular speech. It is also in use in literary language, particularly when the adjective expresses an essential quality, such as colour, etc. :

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| кры́ша была́ зелёная, | the roof was green [a green one] |
| де́нь был па́смурный, | the day was dull [overcast] |

APPENDIX III

Notes left out in the body of the book

N.B.—The student is advised to insert cross-references in the pages to which these notes refer.

Note to § 63 (pp. 111-117).

The verb **идти** [идти́], when preceded by a prefix, is contracted into **йти́** (dropping the **т** of the stem). Prefixes ending in a consonant take a euphonic **о**. In the conjugation of the present form the dropped **т** reappears as a **д**.

Note to § 64, Group 3 (p. 120).

In the past tense of **выбрать**, **разобрать**, the accent is *not shifted* to the last syllable in the feminine; it remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive:

выбрала, разобрала.

Note to § 64, Group 5 (p. 121).

In the past tense of **добыть** the accent can also fall on the vowel of the stem (**ы**) in masculine, neuter, and plural:

добыл, добыло, добыли (but: добыла́ for feminine).

Note to § 64, Group 7 (pp. 122-124).

The imperative mood of the verbs in this group is formed by adding the terminations **и́**, **ите́**, respectively for singular and plural, to the stem of the perfective, and **и́**, **ите́** to the stem of the imperfectives.

Note to § 70 (p. 136).

If the first person singular of the present tense ends in **у**, the third person plural will end in **ут**; if the first person singular ends in **ю**, the third person plural will end in **ют**.

Note to § 78 (p. 146).

To this category belong also the verbs :

| | | | |
|---|------------|--------------|-----|
| лиз-ать, to lick, | лиж-у́, | ли́ж-ешь, | -ут |
| пах-ать, to plough, | паш-у́, | па́ш-ешь, | -ут |
| прят-ать, to hide, | пряч-у, | пря́ч-ешь, | -ут |
| скак-ать, to gallop, | скач-у́, | ска́ч-ешь, | -ут |
| хлопот-ать, to hustle, to busy oneself, | хлопоч-у́, | хлопо́ч-ешь, | -ут |
| хохот-ать, to laugh (loudly), | хохоч-у́, | хохо́ч-ешь, | -ут |

Note to § 81 (p. 150).

To this category belong also the verbs :

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|------------|------|
| (a) гляд-еть, to look (upon), | гляж-у́, | гляд-и́шь, | -ят |
| терп-еть, to suffer, | терп-лю́, | те́рп-ишь, | -ят |
| (b) держ-ать, to hold, to keep, | держ-у́, | де́рж-ишь, | -ат |
| дрож-ать, to shiver, to tremble, | дрож-у́, | -и́шь, | -а́т |
| ворч-ать, to growl, to grumble, | ворч-у́, | -и́шь, | -а́т |
| стуч-ать, to knock, | стуч-у́, | -и́шь, | -а́т |
| звуч-ать, to sound, | звуч-у́, | -и́шь, | -а́т |

(See also § 65.)

Note to § 123a (p. 203).

The infinitive of verbs used as an object-complement stands in the *imperfective aspect* if the preceding verb has the meaning of *starting, beginning, ceasing, finishing* :

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|--|
| он {стал на́чал} | проси́ть, | he began to ask |
| я {ко́нчу ко́нчил} | пи́сать, | { I shall finish I finished } writing |
| он {переста́л переста́нет} | чита́ть, | { he stopped he will stop } reading |

Стать often serves as a substitute for the auxiliary verb **быть** for the formation of the compound future tense of an imperfective verb. (See § 57.)

APPENDIX IV

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

Auxiliary Verb **быть**

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

я есмь
ты еси
он, она, оно есть

мы есмя
вы есте
они суть

Singular

Past Tense

я
ты
он, она, оно } был, -а, -о

Plural

мы
вы
они } были

Future Tense

я буду
ты будешь
он, она, оно будет

мы будем
вы будете
они будут

IMPERATIVE MOOD

будь (ты)
пусть он, она, оно будет

я
ты
он, она, оно } был бы, была бы, было бы

PARTICIPLE (ACTIVE)

Present : сущий, -ая, -ее ; -ие
Past : бывший, -ая, -ее ; -ие
Future : будущий, -ая, -ее ; -ие¹

¹ Used as an adjective.

² being.

будьте (вы)
пусть они будут

мы
вы
они } были бы

GERUND (VERBAL ADVERB)

будучи²
быв [бывши]³

³ having been.

FIRST CONJUGATION

| IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT читать (to read) | | PERFECTIVE ASPECT прочитать (to read through) | |
|---|----------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Singular | | Plural | |
| я читаю | мы читаем | я читаю | мы прочитали |
| ты читаешь | вы читаете | ты читаешь | вы прочитали |
| он, -а, -о читает | они читают | он, -а, -о читает | они прочитали |
| Indicative Mood | | Indicative Mood | |
| Present Tense | | Past Tense | |
| я читаю | мы читаем | я читал, -а, -о | мы прочитали |
| ты читаешь | вы читаете | ты читал, -а, -о | ты прочитал, -а, -о |
| он, -а, -о читает | они читают | он, -а, -о читал, -а, -о | он, -а, -о прочитал, -а, -о |
| Future Tense | | Future Tense | |
| я буду читать | мы будем читать | я прочитаю | мы прочитаем |
| ты будешь читать | вы будете читать | ты прочитаешь | вы прочитаете |
| он, -а, -о будет читать | они будут читать | он, -а, -о прочитает | они прочитают |
| Imperative Mood | | Imperative Mood | |
| читай (ты) | читайте (вы) | прочитай (ты), -йте (вы) | прочитайте (вы) |
| пусть он, -а, -о читает | пусть они читают | пусть он, -а, -о прочитает | пусть они прочитают |
| Conditional Mood | | Conditional Mood | |
| я читал бы | мы читали бы | я прочитал бы | мы прочитали бы |
| ты читал бы | ты читали бы | ты прочитал бы | ты прочитали бы |
| он, -а, -о читал бы | он, -а, -о читали бы | он, -а, -о прочитал бы | он, -а, -о прочитали бы |

| PARTICIPLE (ACTIVE) | | | |
|---|---|----------------|---|
| <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> |
| чита́ющий, -ая, -ее; -ие | чита́вший, -ая, -ее; -ие | (none) | прочита́вший, -ая, -ее; -ие |
| PARTICIPLE (PASSIVE) | | | |
| <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> |
| чита́емый, -ая, -ое; -ые вита́ем, -а, -о; -ы | чита́нный, -ая, -ое; -ые чита́н, -на, -но; -ны | (none) | прочита́нный, -ая, -ое; -ие прочита́н, -на, -но; -ны |
| GERUND (VERBAL ADVERB) | | | |
| <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> | <i>Present</i> | <i>Past</i> |
| чита́я | чита́в [-вши] | (none) | прочита́в [-вши] |
| PASSIVE | | | |
| бу́дучи чита́ем, ¹ -ема, -емо; -емы | бу́в чита́н ² | (none) | бу́в прочита́н, ³ -на, -но; -ны |

SECOND CONJUGATION

For the present tense (form) see § 70. The other moods and tenses are formed on the same pattern as verbs of the first conjugation. (See §§ 82, 83, 86a, 86b.)

¹ being read.

² having been read.

³ having been read through.

RUSSIAN INDEX

N.B.—All references are made to pages.

а, in nom. pl. of masc. nouns, 33
-ата [-ата] (pl. of nouns ending in
онок, ёнок), 42-3
-ать, of infinitive, dropped in the
present tense, 141, 145-7, 150

Б

более (with positive adjective as
comparative), 69-70, 76
болеть, 258
будто [бы], 215-16
бы, 181, 186-7, 204, 216-18, 226
бывало, 202, 256
быва́ть, 255
было (adv.), 171
быть, 190, 219-22, 236, 242, 245-6;
as auxiliary verb, 102, 246; used
as a copula, 185, 190, 201, 236,
242; replacing иметь, 221-2, 256

В

-ва-, suffix dropped in present tense,
143-4

говора́т (parenthetic), 215-16
го́ды [ле́та], 259

Д

де, де́ска́ть, 171, 215
дол́жен, дол́жна, 78-9
дол́жно бы́ть, 78-9, 220, 274
друг-дру́га, etc., 222

Е

-ев [-ов], changing into ю [y] in
the present tense, 147
-ёнок [-онок], nouns ending in,
42-3
ё́сли [ё́сли бы], 216-17, 308
е́сть, as predicate expressing plural-
ity, 197, 221; used for emphasis,
219
е́сть [ку́шать], 257-8
-е́ть, of infinitive, dropped in the
present tense, 150

Ж

жа́ль, 220, 274
же, used with pronouns, 87-9;
with adverbs, 170

И

и́ (accented), in locative of feminine
nouns after в, на, 52
и́меть, 219-22, 256

К

ко́е [ко́й], 169; used with pro-
nouns or adverbs, 83, 90, 223
ку́шать [е́сть], 257-8

Л

л, euphonic after labials, 20, 146,
149-50; dropped after conson-
ants in the past tense, 20, 152-5
ле́нь, 220
ле́та́ [го́ды], 259
ли, 180, 216, 243

ли́бо, **180** ; used with pronouns or adverbs, **90, 223**
лю́ди (plural of челове́к), **36, 93**

М

ма́ло, **198, 232-3**
ме́нее (with positive adjective as comparative), **67-70**
мно́гие, **84**
мно́го, **198, 232-3**
мно́гое, **84**
мо́жет быть, **171**
мо́л, **215, 271**

Н

на́до [на́добно], **78, 233, 274**
наи- (in superlative adjectives), **72**
не, in negative sentences, **30, 188, 202-3, 231, 245, 248-9**
не́ [нет], as negative predicate, **226-228, 245, 249**
не́-, не́где, не́зачем, не́когда, не́куда, не́откуда, не́чего, **226-7, 249**
не́льзя, **220, 274, 282**
не́сколько, **198, 232-3**
нет, **202, 274, 282**
ни (negative), with pronouns and adverbs, **89, 224-6**
ни (*no matter . . .*), after relative pronouns and adverbs, **225-6**
нибу́дь, with pronouns and adverbs, **83, 90, 223-4**
ниче́го, **224-5**
ниче́го себе́, **230**
ну́жно, ну́жный, **78**
-ну́ть, of infinitive, dropped in the past tense of inchoative verbs, **148, 154**

О

-ов [-ев], changing into у [ю] in the present tense, **147**
-о́нок [-ёнок], nouns ending in, **42-3**

П

пре- (in superlative adjectives), **72**

С

са́мый, **72, 88-9**
сво́й, **86, 228**
себе́, себя́, **229-30**
сде́латься (as auxiliary verb), **185, 190, 201, 236**
ско́лько, **83-4** ; with нибу́дь, **223**
стано́виться (as auxiliary verb), **185, 190, 201, 236**
ста́ть (as auxiliary verb and copula), **185, 190, 201, 236**
сто́лько, **83-4**

Т

то (particle), with pronouns and adverbs, **83, 90, 222-4**
тому́ наза́д, **254**

У

у [ю], in gen. pl. of masc. nouns, **32** ; in loc. sing. of masc. nouns (after в, на), **33**

Х

хва́тит [хвати́ть], **231**

Ч

чело́век, qualified by numerals, **36, 92-3** ; plural of, **36, 93**
что́бы [чтоб], with infinitive (of purpose), **181, 207, 212, 218** ; with past tense in subordinate clauses of wish, **181, 218, 308-9**

Ь; Я

-ья, in nom. pl. of masc. nouns, **34** ; of neuter nouns, **41**
-я́ть, of infinitive, dropped in the present tense, **141, 147, 150**

PREPOSITIONS

The literal English translations of Russian prepositions (see §§ 96-96e) will not always be the best guide for the student as to how they will fit into a Russian expression. Some prepositions have more than one English equivalent. The same can be said about English prepositions. Those Russian prepositions which are liable to some modification of meaning in the sentence are set out below with their respective English equivalents, as illustrated in phrases appearing in the Lessons-Section.

| | |
|---|---|
| в, <i>at</i> , 254, 263-5, 271, 287, 294 ; в, <i>at</i> (<i>games</i>), 296 ; в, <i>in</i> , 244, 254-5, 264, 289, 302 ; в, <i>on</i> , 247, 263 ; в, <i>to</i> , 265, 271 . | на, <i>at</i> , 255, 265, 289 ; на, <i>by</i> , 276 ; на, <i>in</i> [<i>during</i>], 262-3 ; на, <i>for</i> , 278 ; на, <i>on</i> , 244, 302 ; на, <i>to</i> , 265, 276-7, 294 ; на, <i>up</i> , 278 |
| для, <i>for</i> (<i>intended for</i>), 271 | по, <i>after</i> , 279 ; по, <i>along</i> , 281 ; по, <i>at</i> , 281, 284 ; по, <i>by</i> , 281, 284 ; по, <i>in</i> , 281 ; по, <i>on</i> , 264, 272, 276, 279, 281 ; по, <i>to</i> , 276, 284 |
| за, <i>at</i> , 247, 250, 285 ; за, <i>by</i> , 276 ; за, <i>during</i> , 280 ; за, <i>for</i> , 280 ; за, <i>to</i> , 279, 294-5 | под, <i>on</i> , 285 с, <i>about</i> , 264, 278-9 ; с, <i>from</i> . . . <i>on</i> , 264 |
| из, <i>of</i> , 271 | у, <i>at</i> , 260-1, 269 ; у, <i>by</i> , 255 ; у, <i>from</i> , <i>of</i> , 272 ; у, <i>near by</i> , 269 |
| к, <i>by</i> , 261, 263-4, 284 ; к, <i>for</i> , 247, 250, 263, 284 ; к, <i>to</i> , 247, 294-5 ; к, <i>towards</i> , 254, 264, 283 | |

The English prepositions given in the above list can be roughly translated as :

about, с ; *after*, по ; *at*, в, за, на, по, у ; *by*, за, к, на, по, у ; *during*, за, на ; *for*, для, за, к, на ; *from*, с, у ; *in*, в, на, по ; *near*, у ; *of*, из, у ; *on*, в, на, по, под ; *to*, в, за, к, на, по ; *towards*, к ; *up*, на.

ENGLISH INDEX

N.B.—All references are made to pages.

A

Accent (stress), 7, 8, 15, 36; in declension of masculine nouns, 37; of neuter nouns, 44; of feminine nouns, 53; in adjectives, 73; in verbs (present tense), 138-54; in past tense, 139-51, 155; in the imperative, 150-1; in participles, 157-62; shifted to prepositions, 176-9

Accusative case, 28; of animate masculine nouns, 30; of animate feminine nouns, 46; uses of, 234-5, 277; in expressions of time, 253, 259, 263-4

Adjective-clauses, 207, 209-10

Adjectives, declension of, 61-2; lacking short form, 65, 81; lacking comparative degree, 81; adverbs from, 72, 164-7; participles as, 81; short adjective as predicate, 184, 185, 256; as qualifiers, 191

Adverb-clauses, 207, 210-12

Adverbial expressions: of place, 193, 237, 255, 265, 277, 289; of time, 193, 235, 237, 253-4, 259, 263-4, 267, 277, 281; of manner, 193, 236-7, 286; of cause, 194; of purpose, 194, 207, 212, 218

Adverbs, 164-71; from adjectives, 72, 164-7; comparative, 165, 273; in complex sentences, 210-213; in impersonal sentences, 165-6, 273-4; in negative sentences, 202-3; with *то*, *либо*,

нибۇдь, *ко́е*, 222-4; with *ни* (negative), 224-6; with *ни* (*no matter . . .*), 225-6; with *не* [*нет*] (as predicate), 226-8

ago, 254

anyone, anything, anybody, 83, 90, 233

Apposition, 192

Aspect of verbs, imperfective and perfective, 102-8, 111-16, 117-32; iterative, 103, 110-11

Augmentative masculine nouns, 41

Auxiliary verbs: *быть*, *иметь*, 219-222, 256

B

because, 211-12, 275

become, to, 185, 189-90, 201, 273-6

Capital letters, 259, 266

Cases: functions of, 27-8; oblique, of nouns, 27-9, 39, 46; of adjectives, 61-2; of pronouns, 84-9; of numerals, 93-9

Clauses (subordinate), 205-13

Clothing, dresses, etc., 292, 297-8

Collective (group) numerals, 97

Commutation of sounds, 19

Comparative adverbs, 165, 273

Comparative degree of adjectives, 67-71, 74-80

Comparison, expressed by genitive, 72, 231, 256

Complex sentences, 204-13

Concord, of words, 184, 191, 195

Conditional mood, 186-7, 216, 308

Conjunctions, 180-1; in complex sentences, 208-13

Co-ordination, in sentences, 184, 194-5, 197; of clauses, 205-6

Consonants: hard (non-palatalized), 3-4, 8, 12, 21-2; palatalized, 3, 6, 10, 13, 23; voiced, 16; voiceless, 16; assimilation of, 16-18

Copula, verbs used as, 185, 190, 201, 219, 236, 242

Countries, names of, 255

D

Dates (days), 96-7, 232, 266

Dative case, 28; uses of, 233-4, 282; as logical subject in impersonal sentences, 199-201, 226, 233-4, 282; in impersonal constructions with *нѣ* [нѣт], 226-8

Days of the week, 263-4

Days and dates (see Dates)

Declension: of masculine nouns, 29-36; of neuter nouns, 39-43; of feminine nouns, 46-52; of adjectives, 61-2; of pronouns, 84-9; of numerals, 93-5

Degrees of comparison of adjectives, 67-70, 74-80

Diminutives: of nouns, 57; of adjectives, 58; of personal names, 48

Diphthongs, 2, 4, 9, 26, 47

Dishes (food), 248, 250, 295

Dresses, etc., 298

E

Euphonic л after labials, 20, 111, 132, 146, 149-50

F

Fleeting o, e, in declension of masculine nouns, 31; of neuter nouns, 40; of feminine nouns, 47, 50, 51, 56; in adjectives, 66

Food, 248-50, 295

Functions of cases, 27-8

G

Genders of nouns, 27-8

Genitive case, as adjunct, 28; uses of, 230-3; expressing comparison, 72, 231, 256; after negative predicate, 188, 231, 245; nouns, having gen. pl. in same form as nom. sing., 35-6

Gerunds (verbal adverbs), 162-3; in complex sentences, 213

get, to, 107, 121, 200, 276, 281, 284, 296

get (got), 196

get (up), to, 121, 144, 205, 291, 293

getting, 274-6

Governance [subordination], of words, 184, 196-7

I

if, 216-17, 243; as if, 216

Imperative mood, formation of, 150-2; in conditional clauses, 186-7, 204; use of, 203; accent in, 150-1

Impersonal sentences, 199-202; dative in (as logical subject), 199-201; predicate of, 200; omission of *есть* in, 220; impersonal constructions with *нѣ* [нѣт] (as predicate), 226-8, 245; with *нужно*, *надо*, 78-9, 282; with reflexive verbs, 100; expressing a passive, vague state, 101; adverbs in, 165-6, 273-4; negative, 202-3, 216, 226-8, 231, 245, 248-9

Indirect narration, 215-16

Indirect sentences, 217

Infinitive: used as imperative, 187; as future tense, 187; as object, 188, 203; as subject, 184;

followed by noun-complement in the instrumental, 190; as qualifier, 191; as an adverbial expression of purpose (in constructions with *чтобы*, *in order to*), 194, 207, 212, 218; in constructions with *не* [нет], 228-8

Instrumental case, 28; uses of, 189-90, 235-7, 286; in adverbial expressions of manner, 193, 236-237; in passive constructions, 202, 214-15

Interjections, 182

Intonation (sentence), 21

L

let, 151-2, 171, 204, 211

let us, 186, 204

like, 100, 211, 233, 294

Locative case, 28; uses of, 237; in expressions of time, 254, 264; of place, 255, 265, 289

M

Masculine nouns, with *а* in nom. pl., 33; with *я* in nom. pl., 34; with suffix *-ин*, 35; with gen. pl. in nom. sing. form, 35-6

Meals, 247-8, 250, 285, 295

might, might have, 186, 217, 220, 308-9

Months, 264

Moods: use of, 186-7, 216; indicative, 102; imperative, formation of, 150-2; accent in, 150-1; use of, 186, 203-4; conditional, 186-7; subjunctive, 214-15

must, 79, 283

must not, 233, 283

N

Nationalities, 254-5

Negative particle *не*, with direct object in genitive, 30, 188, 202-3, 248-9

Negative predicate *не* [нет], 228-8

Negative sentences, 202-3, 216, 228-8, 231, 245, 248-9

no matter, 225-6

Nominative (pl.) as accusative, 189-190

Noun-clauses, 207

Nouns, declension of: masculine, 29-36; neuter, 39-43; feminine, 46-52; animate and inanimate, accusative of, 30, 46; ending in *онок*, *енок*, 42-3; in *мя*, 43; used only in plural, 55; used only in singular, 55; of common gender, 56; derivation-suffixes in, 59; with terminations of adjectives, 62-3

Numerals: used with nouns, 92-3, 197-8, 232-3; with nouns and adjectives, 96; declension of, 93-5; gender of dates (days, etc.), 96-7, 232; collective (group), 97; fractional, 98; as subject, 184; as predicate (name-part), 185; as qualifier, 191; peculiar co-ordination of, with predicate, 197; not in conformity with case of noun, 197-8, 233

O

Object-clauses, 209

Object, direct, 28, 187-8, 277; in genitive with negative predicate, 30, 188, 231, 256; in genitive when used in a partitive sense, 189, 231; indirect object in dative, 28, 234; in other cases, 188, 232; in nominative plural (as accusative), 189-90; subject as inverted object, 100, 199-201, 222, 226, 233-4, 245, 256, 282

Oblique cases, uses of, 230-7, 266-7, 277, 288

P

Participles: active, 156-7; passive, 157-62; as subject, 184; past passive as predicate, 184; as qualifier, 191; in complex sentences, 212; in passive constructions, 214-15, 235, 286; used as adjectives, 81-2

Passive constructions, 214-15, 235, 286

Passive sentences, with reflexive verbs, 135-6, 200-2

Passive voice, 214-15, 286; expressed by transitive verb, 215

Patronymics, 239-40

Predicate: simple, 184-5; compound (with *быть*, *стать*, etc.), 185, 190, 201, 219-22, 236, 242, 246; name-part of, 185; past passive participle as, 184; negative, with object in genitive, 30, 188, 245; negative, with *нѣ* [*нет*], 226-8; concord of, with subject, 195

Predicate-clauses, 208

Predicative [short] adjectives, formation of, 66-7; comparative adjectives, 67-80

Prefixes (prepositional): in verbs, 105, 111-32; which do not alter meaning of perfective verb, 128-130; when attached to nouns, 117

Prepositions, 171-9; which take the accent, 176-9; cases which they govern, 174-6

(NOTE.—Russian prepositions and their corresponding English equivalents in colloquial speech will be found at the end of the Russian index, p. 318.)

Pronouns: declension of, 84-9; in negative sentences, 202-3, 248-9; adverbial, 83; as conjunctions in

complex sentences, 207-13; denoting quantity as qualifiers to nouns, 191, 197-8, 202, 233; as subject, 184; as predicate (name-part), 185; with *то*, *либо*, *нибѹдь*, *кѹе*, 222-4; with *ни* (negative), 224-6; with *ни* (*no matter . . .*), 225-6; with *нѣ* [*нет*] as predicate, 226-8; reflexive-possessive *своѹ*, 86, 228; reflexive *себѹ*, use of, 229-30

Punctuation, 237-8

put, to, 107, 122, 127, 129

put (on), to, 122, 127, 160, 291, 293-4

Q

Qualifier [qualifying word], 190

Qualifier-clauses, 209

Qualifiers, concord of, 191

R

Reflexive verbs, in passive constructions, 214-15

Reported speech (sentences), 216-17

S

Seasons, 168, 254, 264

Sentence, the, 183-4

Sentences: personal, 199; impersonal, 78-9, 100-1, 165-6, 199-202, 226-8, 245; negative, 202-3, 216, 226-8, 231, 245, 249; complex, 204-13; interrogative, 216, 243

some, someone, something, 83, 90, 223

Sounds, commutation of, 19

Stress: word, 7, 8, 15, 20; sentence, 20

Subject, the, 183-4; concord of, with predicate, 195

Subject-clauses, 208

Subjunctive mood, 215-16, 308

Subordinate clauses, 205-9
 Subordination: in sentences, 184, 194-6; of clauses, 205-6
 Suffixes: derivation, in nouns, 59-60; termination, in nouns, 57-8; iterative, in verbs, 110, 117, 130
 Superlative degree of adjectives, 71-72, 74-80
 Surnames, ending in ов, ев, ин, ич, declension of, 64

T

Tenses (of indicative mood) of verbs, 102; irregular use of, in sentences, 186
 Time of day, 168, 247, 254, 264, 274-5, 281

V

Verbal adverbs [gerunds]: in complex sentences, 213; replacing verbal predicate, 213
 Verb, as predicate (in any tense), 184
 Verb-groups, 118-27
 Verbs: transitive [active], 99; intransitive [neuter], 99; neuter ending in -ся, 134; reflexive, 99, 101-2, 133; in impersonal sen-

tences, 100; used in a passive sense, 135-6, 214-15; reciprocal, 100, 133, 286; tenses of the indicative mood of, 102; aspects: imperfective, perfective, 102-8; iterative, 103, 110-11; definite, 108-9; indefinite, 108-9; prefixes in, 104-5, 111-16; conjugation of, 136-7; types of conjugation of, 137-52; personal terminations of, 136-7; past tense, formation of, 152-5; imperative mood, formation of, 150-2

Vocative case, 27

Vowels: open, 13-14, 21, 23; close, 13-14, 23; stressed, 7; unstressed, 7, 22; hard, 21-2; soft 4, 6, 7, 10, 13, 23, 24; retaining 'jot' element, 4, 7, 13

W

want, to, 100, 130, 190, 257
 want (wish), to, 218
 Weather, 305
 whether, 216, 243
 Word order, 218
 Word subordination, use of oblique cases, 230-7, 266-7, 277, 282, 286
 would [should], 186-7, 217-18, 220, 308-9

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी, पुस्तकालय
Lal Bahadur Shastri National Academy of Administration Library

मसूरी
MUSSOORIE

अवाप्ति सं०

Acc. No.....

कृपया इस पुस्तक को निम्न लिखित दिनांक या उससे पहले वापस कर दें।

Please return this book on or before the date last stamped below.

[illegible]

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मसूरी

MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय

LIBRARY

110193

अवाप्ति संख्या

Accession No.

~~14316~~

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

491.7

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

Sie